

Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund  
Form N-2  
August 01, 2014

As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 1, 2014

Securities Act File No. 333-☐

Investment Company Act File No. 811-22485

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

---

**FORM N-2**

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT**

**UNDER**

**THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933 ☒**

**Pre-Effective Amendment No.**

**Post Effective Amendment No.**

**and/or**

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER**

**THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 ☒**

**Amendment No. 9**

## **Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund**

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Charter)

**399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor**

**New York, NY 10022**

(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

**(212) 878-3500**

(Registrant's Telephone Number, Including Area Code)

**Sonia E. Gardner**

**Avenue Capital Group**

**399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor**

**New York, NY 10022**

**(212) 878-3500**

(Name and Address of Agent for Service)

---

**Copies to:**

**Stuart M. Strauss**

**Dechert LLP**

**1095 Avenue of the Americas**

**New York, New York 10036**

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Approximate Date of Proposed Public Offering: **As soon as practicable after the effective date of this registration statement.**

If any of the securities being registered on this form will be offered on a delayed or continuous basis in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933 (the "Securities Act"), other than securities offered in connection with a dividend reinvestment plan, check the following box. ☐

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If delivery of the prospectus is expected to be made pursuant to Rule 434 under the Securities Act, please check the following box. ☐

### CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

| Title of Securities<br>Being Registered                                    | Amount<br>Being<br>Registered(1) | Proposed Maximum Offering<br>Price per Unit(1) | Proposed Maximum Aggregate<br>Offering Price(1) | Amount of<br>Registration<br>Fee(1) |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Common Shares, \$0.001 par<br>value<br>Rights to Purchase Common<br>Shares | (2)                              |                                                | \$ 1,000,000                                    | \$ 128.80                           |

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee.

(2) No separate consideration will be received by the registrant.

**The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until this registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to Section 8(a), may determine.**

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. The Fund may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**Subject to Completion**

**Preliminary Prospectus dated August 1, 2014**

**Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund**

**[ ] Common Shares**

**Issuable Upon Exercise of Transferable Rights to Subscribe for Common Shares**

Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund (the Fund) is issuing transferable rights (Rights) to its shareholders of record as of the close of business on [ ] 2014 (the Record Date) entitling the holders of these Rights to subscribe (the Offer) for an aggregate of [ ] common shares of beneficial interest, par value \$0.001 per common share (the Common Shares). The holders of Common Shares (the Common Shareholders) of record will receive one Right for each outstanding Common Share owned on the Record Date. The Rights entitle the holders to purchase one new Common Share for every [ ] Rights held (1 for [ ]), and Common Shareholders of record who fully exercise their Rights will be entitled to subscribe, subject to certain limitations and subject to allotment, for additional Common Shares covered by any unexercised Rights. Any Record Date Common Shareholder issued fewer than [ ] Rights is entitled to subscribe for one full Common Share in the Offer. The Fund's outstanding Common Shares are listed and the Common Shares issued pursuant to the exercise of the rights will be listed on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE). The Fund's Common Shares trade under the symbol ACP. The Rights are transferable and will be admitted for trading on the NYSE under the symbol [ACP RT] during the course of the Offer. See The Offer for a complete discussion of the terms of the Offer. [The subscription price per Common Share (the Subscription Price) will be determined based upon a formula equal to [ ]% of the average of the last reported sales price of a Common Share on the NYSE on the date on which the Offer expires, as such date may be extended from time to time (the Expiration Date) and each of the four (4) preceding trading days (the Formula Price). If, however, the Formula Price is less than [ ]% of the net asset value per Common Share (NAV) of the Fund's Common Shares at the close of trading on the NYSE on the Expiration Date, then the Subscription Price will be [ ]% of the Fund's NAV at the close of trading on the NYSE on that day.] The Fund will pay a sales load on the Subscription Price.

**The Offer will expire at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014, unless extended as described in this prospectus.**

The NAV of the Fund's Common Shares at the close of business on [ ], 2014 (the date of this prospectus) was \$[ ] and the last reported sale price of a Common Share on the NYSE on that date was \$[ ].

*Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy; Leverage.* The Fund is a non-diversified, closed-end management investment company whose primary investment objective is to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation.

***Investing in Rights and/or in the Common Shares involves risks, including the risk that you may receive little or no return on your investment or that you may lose part or all of your investment. Before buying any Common Shares,***

***you should read the discussion of the principal risks of investing in the Fund, including that the Fund may invest all or a substantial portion of its assets in below investment grade securities which are often referred to as high yield or junk securities. The principal risks of investing in the Fund are summarized in Prospectus Summary Risk Factors beginning on page [ ] of this prospectus and further described in Risk Factors beginning on page [ ] of this prospectus.***

Upon completion of the Offer, Common Shareholders who do not fully exercise their Rights will own a smaller proportional interest in the Fund than they owned prior to the Offer. The completion of the Offer will result in immediate voting dilution for such Common Shareholders. In addition, if the Subscription Price is less than the NAV as of the Expiration Date, the completion of the Offer will result in an immediate dilution of NAV for all Common Shareholders (i.e., will cause the NAV of the Fund to decrease) and may have the effect of reducing the market price of the Fund's Common Shares. It is anticipated that the existing Common Shareholders will experience immediate dilution even if they fully exercise their Rights. Such dilution is not currently determinable because it is not known how many Common Shares will be subscribed for, what the NAV or market price of our Common Shares will be on the Expiration Date or what the subscription price per Common Share will be. However, assuming full exercise of the Rights being offered at the Subscription Price and assuming that the Expiration Date was [ ], 2014 it is estimated that the per share dilution resulting from the Offer would be \$[ ]. Any such dilution will disproportionately affect nonexercising Common Shareholders. If the Subscription Price is substantially less than the current NAV, this dilution could be substantial. The distribution to Common Shareholders of transferable Rights, which themselves have intrinsic value, will afford non-participating Common Shareholders of record on the Record Date the potential of receiving cash payment upon the sale of the Rights, receipt of which may be viewed as partial compensation for any dilution of their interests that may occur as a result of the Offer. There can be no assurance that a market for the Rights will develop or, if such a market develops, what the price of the rights will be. See The Offer Dilution and Effect of Non-Participation in the Offer beginning on page [ ] of this prospectus. Except as described herein, Rights holders will have no right to rescind their subscriptions after receipt of their payment for Common Shares by the subscription agent for the Offer.

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission (the SEC) nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

|                                              | Per Common Share | Total(5) |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------|----------|
| Estimated subscription price(1)              | \$               | \$       |
| Sales load(2)                                | \$               | \$       |
| Proceeds, before expenses, to the Fund(3)(4) | \$               | \$       |

(footnotes on next page)

[Dealer Manager]

(continued from previous page)

(1) Estimated on the basis of [ ]% of the average of the last reported sales price per Common Share at the close of trading on the NYSE on [ ], 2014 and each of the [four (4)] preceding trading days. See The Offer Subscription Price.

(2) In connection with the Offer, [ ], the dealer manager for the Offer (the Dealer Manager ), will receive a fee from the Fund for its financial structuring and solicitation services equal to [ ]% of the Subscription Price for each Common Share issued pursuant to the Offer, which is estimated to be \$[ ] in total and \$[ ] per Common Share (assuming the Rights are fully exercised at the estimated subscription price). The Dealer Manager will reallocate a part of its fees to other broker-dealers that have assisted in soliciting the exercise of Rights. The Fund has also agreed to pay the Dealer Manager up to \$[ ] (up to \$[ ] per Common Share (assuming the Rights are fully exercised)) as reimbursement for its expenses incurred in connection with the Offer. The Fund will also pay expenses relating to the printing or other production, mailing and delivery expenses incurred in connection with materials related to the Offer, including all reasonable out-of-pocket fees and expenses, if any and not to exceed \$[ ], incurred by the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members (as defined below), Soliciting Dealers (as defined below) and other brokers, dealers and financial institutions in connection with their customary mailing and handling of materials related to the Offer to their customers. The Fund and the Adviser have also agreed to indemnify the Dealer Manager against certain liabilities under the Securities Act. See Distribution Arrangements and Compensation to Dealer Manager.

(3) Before deduction of expenses associated with the Offer incurred by the Fund, estimated at \$[ ], including an aggregate of up to \$[ ] to be paid to the Dealer Manager as reimbursement for its expenses and up to \$[ ] of expenses paid by the Fund relating to the printing or other production, mailing and delivery expenses incurred in connection with materials related to the Offer by the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members, Soliciting Dealers and other brokers, dealers and financial institutions in connection with their customary mailing and handling of materials related to the Offer to their customers, and other expenses of issuance and distribution (including registration, filing and listing fees and legal and accounting fees and expenses) estimated to be \$[ ]. After deduction of such expenses, the per share and total dollar amount of proceeds to the Fund are estimated at [\$ ] and \$[ ], respectively. Both the sales load and the expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund will immediately reduce the NAV of each outstanding Common Share.

(4) Funds received by check or money order prior to the final due date of the Offer will be deposited into a segregated account pending proration and distribution of Common Shares. The Subscription Agent may receive investment earnings on the funds deposited into such account.

(5) Assumes all Rights are exercised at the estimated Subscription Price. All of the Rights offered may not be exercised.

The Fund announced the terms of this Offer after the close of trading on the NYSE on [ ], 2014.

Depending on current market conditions and the Fund's outlook over time, the Fund seeks to achieve its investment objectives by opportunistically investing primarily in loan and debt instruments (and loan-related or debt-related instruments, including repurchase and reverse repurchase agreements and derivative instruments) of issuers that operate in a variety of industries and geographic regions. The Fund expects to emphasize high current income, with a secondary emphasis on capital appreciation, by investing generally in senior secured floating rate and fixed rate loans ( Senior Loans ) and in second lien or other subordinated loans or debt instruments, including non-stressed and stressed credit obligations, and related derivatives. The Fund is permitted to obtain leverage using any form or combination of financial leverage instruments, including reverse repurchase agreements, credit facilities such as bank loans or commercial paper, and the issuance of preferred shares or notes. Following the completion of the Offer, and subject to prevailing market conditions, the Fund intends to have financial leverage representing up to approximately 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets (including the assets subject to, and obtained with the proceeds of, such leverage). See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy and Leverage below and Investment Restrictions in the Statement of Additional Information.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

This prospectus sets forth concisely information about the Fund you should know before investing. Please read this prospectus carefully before deciding whether to invest and retain it for future reference. A Statement of Additional Information dated [ ], 2014 (the SAI ) has been filed with the SEC. A table of contents for the SAI is located on page [ ] of this prospectus. This prospectus incorporates by reference the entire SAI. The SAI is available along with other Fund-related materials at the SEC's public reference room in Washington, DC (call 1-202-551-8090 for information on the operation of the reference room), on the EDGAR database on the SEC's internet site (<http://www.sec.gov>), upon payment of copying fees by writing to the SEC's Public Reference Section, 100 F Street, N.E. Washington, DC 20549-0102, or by electronic mail at [publicinfo@sec.gov](mailto:publicinfo@sec.gov).

You may also request a free copy of the SAI, annual and semi-annual reports to shareholders, and additional information about the Fund, and may make other shareholder inquiries, by calling 1-877-525-7330, by writing to the Fund or visiting the Fund's website (<http://www.avenuecapital.com>).

The Fund's Common Shares do not represent a deposit or obligation of, and are not guaranteed by or endorsed by, any bank or other insured depository institution, and are not federally insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Federal Reserve Board or any other government agency.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|                                                                |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Prospectus summary                                             | 5  |
| Fund expenses                                                  | 27 |
| Financial highlights                                           | 29 |
| The Offer                                                      | 30 |
| The Fund                                                       | 40 |
| Use of proceeds                                                | 41 |
| Description of Common Shares                                   | 41 |
| Investment objectives and principal investment strategy        | 42 |
| Risk factors                                                   | 59 |
| Management of the Fund                                         | 73 |
| Net asset value of Common Shares                               | 74 |
| Distributions                                                  | 75 |
| Tax matters                                                    | 75 |
| Closed-end fund structure                                      | 78 |
| Dividend reinvestment plan                                     | 78 |
| Description of capital structure                               | 80 |
| Distribution arrangements                                      | 84 |
| Compensation to Dealer Manager                                 | 86 |
| Custodian, dividend paying agent, transfer agent and registrar | 86 |
| Legal opinions                                                 | 86 |
| Independent registered public accounting firm                  | 86 |
| Additional information                                         | 87 |
| Table of contents for the statement of additional information  | 87 |

**You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. The Fund has not, and the Dealer Manager has not, authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. The Fund is not, and the Dealer Manager is not, making an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**



(This page intentionally left blank)

Prospectus summary

The following summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to the more detailed information appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. This prospectus summary may not contain all of the information that is important to each Common Shareholder. Accordingly, to understand the Offer fully, Common Shareholders are encouraged to read the entire prospectus carefully. Unless otherwise indicated, the information in this prospectus assumes that the Rights issued are all exercised. As used in this prospectus, the terms the Fund, our, and us refer to the Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund, a non-diversified, closed-end management investment company organized as a statutory trust under the laws of the State of Delaware and the issuer of the Rights, unless the context suggests otherwise.

**THE OFFER AT A GLANCE**

**Purpose of the Offer**

The board of trustees of the Fund (the Board), based on the recommendations and presentations of Avenue Capital Management II, L.P., the Fund's investment adviser (the Adviser), and others, has determined that it is in the best interests of the Fund and its Common Shareholders to increase the assets of the Fund available for investment and thereby to conduct the Offer. In making this determination, the Board considered a number of factors, including potential benefits and costs. In particular, the Board considered the Adviser's belief that the Offer would better enable the Fund to take advantage more fully of existing and future investment opportunities that may be or may become available, consistent with the Fund's primary investment objective to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation.

In making its determination that the Offer is in the best interests of the Fund and its Common Shareholders, the Board considered (in addition to the Adviser's belief as to the potential investment opportunity) various factors, including (i) the size, pricing and structure of the Offer, (ii) that the Offer, if it is well-subscribed, could increase the liquidity of the Common Shares on the NYSE, where the Fund's Common Shares are traded; (iii) the opportunity the Offer represents for current shareholders to buy shares at a discount to net asset value or market price, or, in many cases, both; (iv) the costs of the Offer, including dilution of Common Shareholders' interests through the Offer and fees paid to the Dealer Manager; and (v) the possible negative effect on the market price of Common Shares the Offer may have. The Board also considered the Fund's prior 2012 rights offering (the 2012 Prior Offer) and 2013 rights offering (the 2013 Prior Offer) (the 2013 Prior Offer and the 2012 Prior Offer being referred to herein collectively as the Prior Offers), including: (i) the percentage of existing shareholders that exercised the rights; (ii) the size of the offering and net proceeds to the Fund; (iii) the dilutive effect of the Prior Offers; (iv) the offering expenses incurred; and (v) the investments made by the Fund with the proceeds and the Fund's subsequent performance. In the 2012 Prior Offer, Common Shareholders of record on February 24, 2012 were issued one transferable right for each Common Share held, and [each Common Shareholder holding rights was entitled to subscribe for one Common Share for every three rights held for a subscription price based on substantially the same formula as the current Formula Price]. The 2012 Prior Offer expired on March 23, 2012. The Board noted that the 2012 Prior Offer was fully subscribed, resulting in the Fund issuing 2,450,466 additional Common Shares. In the 2013 Prior Offer, Common Shareholders of record on April 22, 2013 were issued one transferable right for each Common Share held, and [each Common Shareholder holding rights was entitled to subscribe for one Common Share for every three rights held for a subscription price based on substantially the same formula as the current Formula Price]. The 2013 Prior Offer expired on May 17, 2013. The Board noted that the 2013 Prior Offer was fully subscribed, resulting in the Fund issuing 3,268,518 additional Common Shares. Although the Fund has no present intention to do so, the Fund may, in the future and in its discretion, choose to make additional rights offerings from time to time for a number of shares and on terms which may or may not be similar to the Offer. Any such future rights offering will be made in accordance with the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder (the 1940 Act), and will result in an immediate dilution of net asset value (NAV) for all Common Shareholders if the subscription price for such offering is less than the NAV. There can be no assurance that the Offer (or the investment of the proceeds of the Offer) will be successful or that the level of trading of our Common Shares on the NYSE will increase. For a discussion of the potential impact of the Offer on current Common Shareholders, such as dilution, see Risk Factors.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Adviser believes that a variety of factors indicate that there may continue to be a robust opportunity to invest in U.S. and European high yield and leveraged loan instruments. Due to a combination of macroeconomic developments in the United States and Europe and the Adviser's credit analysis of companies in those underlying geographies, the Adviser believes that now may be an opportune time for the Fund to raise additional assets and to seek attractive investment opportunities which may enhance the Fund's prospective risk-adjusted returns. In addition, the Adviser expects that a number of upcoming U.S. high yield bond and institutional maturities in a less than favorable capital markets environment may create investment opportunities for the Fund. Further, the Adviser expects that the European sovereign debt crisis and potential European bank deleveraging may force these institutions to sell assets and enable the Fund to take advantage of such opportunities. Using the proceeds of the Offer, the Fund will seek to capitalize on these developments and enhance its returns by making investments in companies the Adviser believes offer attractive opportunities for yield enhancement and/or net asset value appreciation potential. In making such investments, the Fund will seek to capitalize on market inefficiencies and to reallocate the portfolio of the Fund to opportunistically emphasize those investments, geographies and categories of investments believed to be best suited to the current investment and interest rate environment and market outlook.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Adviser expects that the Offer will provide an opportunity to increase the assets of the Fund available for investment, thereby better enabling the Fund to take advantage more fully of existing and future investment opportunities that may be or may become available, consistent with the Fund's primary investment objective to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation. The Adviser has an inherent conflict of interest in recommending the Offer because the Fund pays fees to the Adviser based on a percentage of the Fund's Managed Assets (the greater the Managed Assets of the Fund, the greater the compensation paid to the Adviser). Managed Assets are the total assets of the Fund (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes, including proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes) minus the sum of the Fund's accrued liabilities (other than Fund liabilities incurred for the purpose of leverage).

The Offer seeks to provide an opportunity to existing Common Shareholders to purchase Common Shares at a discount to market price. The distribution to Common Shareholders of transferable Rights, which may themselves have intrinsic value, also will afford non-participating Common Shareholders of record on the Record Date, the potential of receiving cash payment upon the sale of the Rights, receipt of which may be viewed as partial compensation for any dilution of their interests that may occur as a result of the Offer. There can be no assurance that a market for the Rights will develop or, if such a market does develop, what the price of the Rights will be.

There can be no assurance that the Offer (or the investment of the proceeds of the Offer) will be successful. See "The Offer" Purpose of the Offer.

Upon completion of the Offer, Record Date Common Shareholders who do not fully exercise their Rights will own a smaller proportional interest in the Fund than they owned prior to the Offer. The completion of the Offer will result in immediate voting dilution for such Common Shareholders. Further, both the sales load and the expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund will immediately reduce the net asset value of each outstanding Common Share. In addition, if the Subscription Price is less than the NAV as of the Expiration Date, the completion of the Offer will result in an immediate dilution of NAV for all Common Shareholders (i.e., will cause the NAV of the Fund to decrease) and may have the effect of reducing the market price of the Fund's Common Shares. It is anticipated that the existing Common Shareholders will experience immediate dilution even if they fully exercise their Rights. Such dilution is not currently determinable because it is not known how many Common Shares will be subscribed for, what the NAV or market price of our Common Shares will be on the Expiration Date or what the subscription price per Common Share will be. Any such dilution will disproportionately affect nonexercising Common Shareholders. If the Subscription Price is substantially less than the Fund's current NAV, this dilution could be substantial. For example, assuming that the Expiration Date was [ ], 2014 and all of the Common Shares are sold at the estimated Subscription Price (which includes a sales load) and after deducting all expenses related to the issuance of the Common Shares, the per share NAV would be reduced by approximately \$[ ] or [ ]%. Record Date Common Shareholders will experience a decrease in the NAV of the Common Shares held by them, irrespective of whether they exercise all or any portion of their Rights. The distribution to Common Shareholders of transferable Rights, which may themselves have intrinsic value, also will afford non-participating Common Shareholders of record on the Record Date, the potential of receiving cash payment upon the sale of the Rights, receipt of which may be viewed as partial compensation for any dilution of their interests that may occur as a result of the Offer. There can be no assurance that a market for the Rights will develop or, if such a market does develop, what the price of the Rights will be. See "The Offer" Dilution and Effect of Non-Participation in the Offer.

### Example of Dilution to NAV Resulting from the Offer

|     |                                                                                                                       |     |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| (a) | Net asset value per Common Share (as of [ ]/2014)                                                                     | [ ] |
| (b) | Total net assets (as of [ ]/2014)                                                                                     | [ ] |
| (c) | Estimated reduction in current net asset value per Common Share resulting from the Offer ( per share dilution )(1)(2) | [ ] |
| (d) | Estimated percentage reduction in current net asset value per Common Share resulting from the Offer(1)(3)             | [ ] |

---

(1)

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Assumes full exercise of the Rights being offered, that the Expiration Date was [ ], 2014, and that all of the Common Shares are sold at the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] and deducts all expenses related to the issuance of the Common Shares in the Offer. The Fund, not investors, pays the sales load, which is ultimately thus borne by all Common Shareholders.

- (2) Item (c) was calculated by subtracting (A) the Fund's estimated net asset value per Common Share immediately following the completion of the Offer from (B) the Fund's net asset value per Common Share (as of [ ], 2014). The Fund's estimated net asset value per Common Share immediately following the completion of the Offer was estimated (using the assumptions described in note (1) above) by dividing (X) the estimated net asset value of the Fund immediately following the Offer by (Y) the estimated total number of Common Shares outstanding immediately following the completion of the Offer.
- (3) Item (d) was calculated by dividing Item (c) by Item (a).

There can be no assurance that the dilution will be limited to the amounts shown in the table above. The final amounts of such dilution may be greater than those estimated due to many factors, including the Fund's market price and NAV at the time of completion of the Offer and the level of participation in the Offer.

The number of Common Shares outstanding as of [ ], 2014 was [ ]. The number of Common Shares adjusted to give effect to the Offer, assuming that all Rights are exercised and the applicable Common Shares issued, would be [ ]. The percentage

increase in Common Shares outstanding that will occur if all the Rights are exercised is [ ]%.

All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights.

### **Important terms of the Offer**

The Fund is issuing to Common Shareholders of record at the close of business on [ ], 2014 (the Record Date) one transferable Right for each whole Common Share held. Each Common Shareholder on the Record Date that continues to hold Rights and each other holder of the Rights is entitled to subscribe for one Common Share for every [ ] Rights held (1 for [ ]). The Fund will not issue fractional shares of its Common Shares upon the exercise of Rights; accordingly, Rights may be exercised only in multiples of [ ], except that any Record Date Common Shareholder who is issued fewer than [ ] Rights will be able to subscribe for one Common Share. Record Date Common Shareholders who hold two or more accounts may not combine their fractional interests across accounts. Rights are evidenced by subscription certificates that will be mailed to Record Date Common Shareholders, except as described under The Offer Foreign Common Shareholders. We refer to a Rights holder's right to acquire during the subscription period at the Subscription Price one additional Common Share for every [ ] Rights held (or in the case of any Record Date Common Shareholder who is issued fewer than [ ] Rights, the right to acquire one Common Share), as the Primary Subscription.

Rights holders may exercise Rights at any time during the subscription period, which commences on [ ], 2014 and expires at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014 unless otherwise extended by the Fund. See The Offer Expiration of the Offer. The Rights are transferable and will be admitted for trading on the NYSE under the symbol [ACP RT] during the course of the Offer. See The Offer Transferability and Sale of Rights.

Record Date Common Shareholders who fully exercise the Rights they obtained in the Primary Subscription (other than those Rights that cannot be exercised because they represent the right to acquire less than one Common Share) will be entitled to an over-subscription privilege under which they may subscribe for additional Common Shares at the Subscription Price. Any Common Shares made available pursuant to the over-subscription privilege are subject to allotment. See The Offer Over-Subscription Privilege.

In this prospectus, we use the terms Common Shareholders to refer to any person that holds Common Shares, Record Date Common Shareholders to refer to those Common Shareholders that held their Common Shares on the Record Date and Existing Rights Holders to refer to those persons (i) that are Record Date Common Shareholders to whom the Rights were issued initially to the extent that a Record Date Common Shareholder continues to hold Rights and (ii) any subsequent transferees of the Rights that continue to hold the Rights.

### **Subscription Price**

[The subscription price per Common Share (the Subscription Price) will be determined based upon a formula equal to [ ]% of the average of the last reported sales price of a Common Share on the NYSE on the date on which the Offer expires, as such date may be extended from time to time (the Expiration Date), and each of the four (4) preceding trading days (the Formula Price). If, however, the Formula Price is less than [ ]% of the NAV per Common Share of the Fund's Common Shares at the close of trading on the NYSE on the Expiration Date, then the Subscription Price will be [ ]% of the Fund's NAV at the close of trading on the NYSE on that day.] Since the Subscription Price will be determined on the

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Expiration Date, Rights holders who decide to acquire Common Shares in the Primary Subscription or pursuant to the over-subscription privilege will not know when they make such decisions the purchase price of those Common Shares. See The Offer Subscription Price. The Fund will pay a sales load on the Subscription Price.

### Over-Subscription Privilege

Record Date Common Shareholders who fully exercise all Rights issued to them (other than those Rights to acquire less than one Common Share, which cannot be exercised) are entitled to subscribe for additional Common Shares which were not subscribed for by other Record Date Common Shareholders, subject to certain limitations and subject to allotment. This is known as the over-subscription privilege (the

Over-Subscription Privilege). Investors who are not Record Date Common Shareholders, but who otherwise acquire Rights to purchase our Common Shares pursuant to the Offer, are not entitled to subscribe for any of our Common Shares pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege. If sufficient Common Shares are available, all Record Date Common Shareholders over-subscription requests will be honored in full. If these requests for Common Shares exceed the Common Shares available, the available Common Shares will be allocated pro rata among Record Date Common Shareholders who over-subscribe based on the number of Rights originally issued to them by the Fund. See The Offer Over-Subscription Privilege.

### Transferability and sale of Rights

The Rights are transferable until the close of business on the last business day prior to the Expiration Date of the Offer. The Rights will be admitted for trading on the NYSE under the symbol [ACP RT] during the course of the Offer. Trading in the Rights on the

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

NYSE is expected to be conducted on a when-issued basis beginning on [ ], 2014 through [ ], 2014; thereafter, the Rights will trade the regular way through [ ], 2014 (one (1) business day prior to the Expiration Date (including any extensions)). We will seek to ensure that an adequate trading market for the Rights will exist, by requesting that the Rights trade on the NYSE and by retaining the dealer manager for the Offer (the Dealer Manager ), subscription agent for the Offer (the Subscription Agent ) and the information agent for the Offer (the Information Agent ), but we cannot assure you that a market for the Rights will develop. Assuming a market does exist for the Rights, you may purchase and sell the Rights through the usual brokerage channels or sell the Rights through the Subscription Agent.

Record Date Common Shareholders who do not wish to exercise any or all of their Rights may instruct the Subscription Agent to try to sell any Rights they do not intend to exercise themselves. Subscription certificates evidencing the Rights to be sold by the Subscription Agent must be received by the Subscription Agent on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014 (or, if the subscription period is extended, on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, two (2) business days prior to the extended Expiration Date). The Rights evidenced by a subscription certificate may be transferred in whole by endorsing the subscription certificate for transfer in accordance with the accompanying instructions. A portion of the Rights evidenced by a single subscription certificate (but not fractional Rights) may be transferred by delivering to the Subscription Agent a subscription certificate, properly endorsed for transfer, with instructions to register such portion of the Rights evidenced thereby in the name of the transferee and to issue a new subscription certificate to the transferee evidencing the transferred Rights. See The Offer Transferability and Sale of Rights.

### Use of proceeds

The net proceeds of the Offer, assuming all Common Shares offered hereby are sold, are estimated to be approximately \$[ ], after deducting expenses associated with the Offer, including the sales load. The Adviser anticipates that investment of the net proceeds of the Offer in accordance with the Fund's investment objectives and policies will take approximately thirty (30) to sixty (60) days after completion of the Offer. The Fund intends to use the proceeds of the Offer to make investments consistent with its investment objectives. However, the investment of the net proceeds may take up to three months from completion of the Offer, depending on market conditions and the availability of appropriate securities. Pending such investment, it is anticipated that the net proceeds will be invested in fixed income securities and other permitted investments. See Use of Proceeds.

### How to obtain subscription information

- Contact your broker-dealer, trust company, bank or other nominee, or
- Contact the Information Agent toll-free at [ ].

### How to subscribe

Rights may be exercised by either:

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

- sending a completed subscription certificate together with payment of the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] per Common Share ([ ]% of the average last reported sales price per Common Share on [ ], 2014 and each of the four (4) preceding trading days) for the Common Shares subscribed for in the Primary Subscription and for any additional Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege to the Subscription Agent, the completed subscription certificate and payment must be received by the Subscription Agent prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date, or
- having a bank, trust company or NYSE member deliver a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery to the Subscription Agent guaranteeing delivery of (i) payment of the full estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] per Common Share for the Common Shares subscribed for in the Primary Subscription and for any additional Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege and (ii) a completed subscription certificate, such Notice of Guaranteed Delivery must be received by the Subscription Agent prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date.

For additional information on exercising your Rights, see The Offer Methods for Exercising Rights and The Offer Payment for Common Shares.

Except as described herein, Rights holders will have no right to rescind their subscriptions after receipt of their payment for Common Shares by the Subscription Agent.

### Subscription Agent

The Subscription Agent for the Offer is:

[ ]

### **Restrictions on foreign Common Shareholders**

The Fund will not mail subscription certificates to Record Date Common Shareholders whose record addresses are outside the United States (for these purposes, the United States includes its territories and possessions and the District of Columbia), but such Common Shareholders will receive written notice of the Offer. The Subscription Agent will hold the Rights to which those subscription certificates relate for such Common Shareholders' accounts until instructions are received to exercise, sell or transfer the Rights, subject to applicable law. If no instructions have been received by 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014, three (3) business days prior to the Expiration Date (or, if the subscription period is extended, on or before three (3) business days prior to the extended Expiration Date), the Subscription Agent will ask the Dealer Manager if it will purchase the Rights. If the Dealer Manager declines to purchase the Rights, the Subscription Agent will attempt to sell such Rights in the open market. The net proceeds, if any, from the sale of those Rights will be remitted to these Common Shareholders. See The Offer Foreign Common Shareholders.

### **Distribution arrangements**

[ ] will act as Dealer Manager for the Offer. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in a Dealer Manager Agreement among the Fund, the Adviser and the Dealer Manager, the Dealer Manager will provide financial structuring and solicitation services in connection with the Offer and will solicit the exercise of Rights and participation in the Over-Subscription Privilege by Record Date Common Shareholders. The Offer is not contingent upon any number of Rights being exercised. The Fund has agreed to pay the Dealer Manager a fee for financial structuring and solicitation services equal to [ ]% of the Subscription Price for each Common Share issued pursuant to the exercise of Rights and the Over-Subscription Privilege. The Dealer Manager will reallocate a part of its fees to other broker-dealers that have assisted in soliciting the exercise of Rights. The Fund has also agreed to pay the Dealer Manager up to \$[ ] as a partial reimbursement for its reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with the Offer. The Fund will also pay expenses relating to the printing or other production, mailing and delivery expenses incurred in connection with materials related to the Offer, including all reasonable out-of-pocket fees and expenses, if any and not to exceed \$[ ], incurred by the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members (as defined below), Soliciting Dealers (as defined below) and other brokers, dealers and financial institutions in connection with their customary mailing and handling of materials related to the Offer to their customers. The Fund and the Adviser have also agreed to indemnify the Dealer Manager against certain liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the Securities Act). The fees paid to the Dealer Manager will be borne by the Fund and indirectly by all of its Common Shareholders, including those who do not exercise the Rights. All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights. See The Offer Distribution Arrangements and Compensation to Dealer Manager.

Prior to the expiration of the Offer, the Dealer Manager may independently offer for sale Common Shares of the Fund acquired through exercising the Rights at prices that may be different from the market price for such Common Shares or from the price to be received by the Fund upon the exercise of Rights. See The Offer Distribution Arrangements.

### **Subscription Agent**

The Subscription Agent is [ ]. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in a Subscription Agent Agreement between the Fund and the Subscription Agent, the Subscription Agent in connection with the Offer will provide services related to the distribution of the subscription certificates and the issuance and exercise of Rights to subscribe as set forth therein. The Fund has also agreed to indemnify the Subscription Agent and its nominees against all liability and reasonable expense which may arise out of the services described in the Subscription Agent Agreement, except for any liability or expense arising out of negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct of the Subscription Agent or its nominees. See The Offer Subscription Agent.

**Information Agent**

The Information Agent is [ ]. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in an Information Agent Agreement between the Fund and the Information Agent, the Information Agent will provide communication, dissemination and other related services in connection with the Offer. The Fund has also agreed to indemnify the Information Agent and its stockholders, officers, directors, employees, agents and affiliates against any and all claims, costs, damages, liabilities, judgments and expenses, including the fees, costs and expenses of counsel retained by the Information Agent, which directly relate to or arise out of the Information Agent's performance of services under the Information Agent Agreement, except for costs, damages, liabilities, judgments or expenses resulting directly from the Information Agent's gross negligence or intentional misconduct. See The Offer Information Agent.

**How to obtain information**

You may obtain information with respect to the Offer by contacting your bank, broker or nominee or the Information Agent, toll-free at [ ].

## Important dates to remember

|                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Record Date                                                          | [ ] |
| Subscription Period                                                  | [ ] |
| Expiration Date                                                      | [ ] |
| Deadline for Subscription Certificates and Payment for Common Shares | [ ] |
| Deadline for Notice of Guaranteed Delivery                           | [ ] |
| Deadline for Payment Pursuant to Notice of Guaranteed Delivery       | [ ] |
| Confirmation Mailed to Exercising Rights Holders                     | [ ] |
| Final Payment for Common Shares**                                    | [ ] |

\* Unless the Offer is extended

\*\* Additional amount due (in the event the Subscription Price exceeds the estimated Subscription Price).

A person exercising Rights must deliver either (i) a subscription certificate and payment for Common Shares, or (ii) a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery by the Expiration Date, unless the Offer is extended.

## THE FUND AT A GLANCE

### Information regarding the Fund

The Fund is a non-diversified, closed-end management investment company registered under the 1940 Act. The Fund was organized as a statutory trust under the laws of the State of Delaware on October 12, 2010. As of [ ], 2014 the Fund's NAV per share was \$[ ]. See The Fund.

### NYSE listed

As of [ ], 2014, the Fund had [ ] Common Shares outstanding. The Fund's Common Shares are traded on the NYSE under the symbol ACP. As of [ ], 2014, the last reported sales price of a Common Share of the Fund was \$[ ]. The Rights are transferable and will be admitted for trading on the NYSE under the symbol [ACP RT] during the course of the Offer. See Description of Common Shares.

### Who may want to invest

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Investors should consider their investment goals, time horizons and risk tolerance before investing in the Fund. An investment in the Fund is not appropriate for all investors, and the Fund is not intended to be a complete investment program. The Fund is designed as a long-term investment and not as a trading vehicle. The Fund may be an appropriate investment for investors who are seeking:

- a closed-end fund that seeks attractive risk adjusted returns with a high level of current income by investing generally in senior secured floating rate and fixed rate loans ( Senior Loans ) and in second lien or other subordinated loans or debt instruments, including non-stressed and stressed credit obligations, and related derivatives;
- a fund that seeks a balance between credit risk and interest rate risk and investment returns;
- exposure to Senior Loans for an overall portfolio that lacks such exposure; and
- a portfolio that may be invested globally with professional selection and active management by the Adviser.

### **Investment objectives and principal investment strategy**

The Fund's primary investment objective is to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation. There can be no assurance that the Fund will achieve its investment objectives.

Depending on current market conditions and the Fund's outlook over time, the Fund seeks to achieve its investment objectives by opportunistically investing primarily in loan and debt instruments (and loan-related or debt-related instruments, including repurchase and reverse repurchase agreements and derivative instruments) (collectively, credit obligations) of issuers that operate in a variety of industries and geographic regions.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund's investment objectives and principal investment strategy are not considered to be fundamental by the Fund and can be changed without the vote of the Fund's shareholders by the Board with at least sixty (60) days written notice provided to shareholders.

### Strategy rationale

The Adviser believes that changing investment and interest rate environments over time offer attractive investment opportunities in the markets for credit obligations, as well as varying degrees of investment risk. To both capitalize on attractive investments and effectively manage potential risk, the Adviser believes that the combination of a thorough and continuous credit analysis (including an analysis of an issuer's ability to make loan or debt payments when due) and the ability to reallocate the portfolio of the Fund among different categories of investments at different points in the credit cycle (i.e., the cycle between overall positive economic environments and less positive economic environments for credit obligations) is critical to achieving higher risk-adjusted returns, including higher current income and/or capital appreciation, relative to other high-yielding investments. The Adviser seeks to emphasize high current income, with a secondary emphasis on capital appreciation, by investing generally in Senior Loans, and in second lien or other subordinated loans or debt instruments, including non-stressed and stressed credit obligations, and related derivatives. The Fund seeks to capitalize on market inefficiencies and reallocate the portfolio of the Fund to opportunistically emphasize those investments, geographies and categories of investments best suited to the current investment and interest rate environment and market outlook.

The Fund's portfolio turnover rate may vary from year to year. The Fund believes that, under normal market conditions, its portfolio turnover may exceed 100%. Because it is difficult to predict accurately portfolio turnover rates, actual turnover may be higher or lower. A high portfolio turnover rate increases a fund's transaction costs (including brokerage commissions and dealer costs), which would adversely impact a fund's performance. Higher portfolio turnover may result in the realization of more short-term capital gains than if a fund had lower portfolio turnover.

### Portfolio

*Portfolio Construction Guidelines.* Under normal market conditions, the Fund will invest at least 80% of its Managed Assets in any combination of the following credit obligations and related instruments: (i) Senior Loans (including those that, at the time of investment, are rated below investment grade by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization (a NRSRO) or are unrated but deemed by the Adviser to be of comparable quality; these types of below investment grade instruments are commonly known as "junk" securities and are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay interest and repay principal); (ii) second lien or other subordinated or unsecured floating rate and fixed rate loans or debt (including those that, at the time of investment, could be considered "junk" securities as described above); (iii) other debt obligations, including high-yield, high-risk obligations (i.e., instruments that are commonly known as "junk" securities as described above); (iv) structured products, including collateralized debt and loan obligations (collectively, "structured products") that provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; (v) swaps and other derivative instruments (including credit default, total return, index and interest rate swaps, options, forward contracts, futures contracts and options on futures contracts) that provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; and (vi) short-term debt securities such as U.S. government securities, commercial paper and other money market instruments and cash equivalents (including shares of money market funds). Certain types of structured products, swaps and other derivative instruments provide short exposure to other credit obligations because the value of such instruments is inversely related to the value of one or more other credit obligations. Managed Assets are the total assets of the Fund (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes, including proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes) minus the sum of the Fund's accrued liabilities (other than Fund liabilities incurred for the purpose of leverage).

The Fund will not invest in credit obligations or related instruments that, at the time of investment, are in default. The Fund may invest in credit obligations or related instruments that, at the time of investment, are likely to default. The credit obligations and related instruments in which the Fund may invest include mortgage-backed and asset-backed securities and securities whose value depends on the value of mortgage-backed or

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

asset-backed securities. These types of investments present special risks. See Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Asset-Backed and Mortgage-Backed (or Mortgage-Related) Instruments Risk. The Fund may act as a lender originating a Senior Loan.

Under normal market conditions, the Fund may also invest up to 20% of its Managed Assets in any combination of the following: (i) structured products that do not provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; (ii) swaps and other derivative instruments (including total return, index and interest rate swaps, options, warrants, forward contracts, futures contracts and options on futures contracts) that do not provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; (iii) foreign currencies and foreign currency derivatives (including foreign currency related swaps, futures contracts and forward contracts) acquired for the purpose of hedging the currency risk arising from the credit obligations in the Fund's portfolio; and (iv) equity securities obtained through the conversion or exchange of convertible or exchangeable instruments, debt restructurings or bankruptcy proceedings and hedges on such positions. Structured products, swaps and other derivative instruments that do not provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations are those instruments whose reference or underlying assets or indices are not credit obligations or indices of credit obligations. Examples of such instruments include equity- and commodity-linked notes, total return swaps based on the value of an

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

equity security and commodity futures contracts. The Fund may invest in such instruments in order, for example, (i) to seek current income or capital appreciation or (ii) to reduce the Fund's exposure solely to credit obligations. The Adviser believes that the flexibility afforded by being able to invest in such instruments may benefit the Fund by (i) allowing the Fund to invest in potentially attractive investment opportunities that are not credit obligations and (ii) increasing the mix of instruments in the Fund's portfolio which could reduce the overall risk of the Fund's portfolio (although the Fund intends to remain a non-diversified investment company). There can be no assurance that these benefits will be realized and such instruments may expose the Fund to risks not presented by credit obligations.

If the Fund receives equity securities in a debt restructuring or bankruptcy proceeding in an amount that would cause it to exceed the foregoing 20% limitation, the Fund will not be required to reduce its positions in such securities, or in any related hedges or any other investment, if the Adviser believes it would not be in the best interest of the Fund to do so.

Percentage limitations described in this prospectus are as of the time of investment by the Fund and may be exceeded after such time because of changes in the market value of the Fund's assets.

The Fund may not invest in a derivative (other than a credit default swap or a currency hedging instrument) if, immediately after the investment, derivatives (other than credit default swaps and currency hedging instruments) would represent more than 30% of the Fund's Managed Assets on a marked-to-market basis. The Fund may use derivative instruments for hedging, as well as speculative, purposes.

The Fund's policy of investing, under normal market conditions, in accordance with the foregoing portfolio construction guidelines, is not considered to be fundamental by the Fund and can be changed without the vote of the Fund's shareholders by the Board with at least sixty (60) days written notice provided to shareholders.

The types of derivative instruments that the Fund currently invests in (or considers for investment) are: structured products, swaps, futures contracts, forward contracts and options (including options on swaps, futures contracts and foreign currencies). In the future, the Fund may invest in other types of derivative instruments if deemed advisable by the Adviser. The Fund may commence investing in such other types of derivative instruments without notice to Common Shareholders.

*Credit Quality, Liquidity and Geographic Origin of Portfolio Investments.* The Fund may invest, without limitation, in credit obligations that are rated below investment grade by a NRSRO such as Standard & Poor's Ratings Services (S&P) or Moody's Investors Service, Inc. (Moody's), or unrated credit obligations that are deemed by the Adviser to be of comparable quality, commonly known in either case as "junk" securities. Such securities are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay interest and repay principal in accordance with the terms of the obligations and involve significant risk exposure to adverse conditions. Any of the Fund's investments may be issued, at the time of investment by the Fund, by non-stressed or stressed issuers. The Fund may invest in credit obligations of any maturity or duration. See Investment Philosophy below and Management of the Fund Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Adviser in the SAI. Non-stressed issuers generally refers to those issuers that are in compliance with respect to their financial obligations and are not stressed or distressed issuers.

Non-stressed obligations generally refers to credit obligations issued by non-stressed issuers. Stressed issuers generally refers to those issuers that the market expects to become distressed issuers in the near future. Stressed obligations generally refers to credit obligations issued by stressed issuers. Distressed issuers generally refers to those issuers that are unable to service their debt. Distressed obligations generally refers to credit obligations issued by distressed issuers. The Fund does not intend to invest in credit obligations issued by issuers that, at the time of investment, the Adviser believes to be distressed issuers.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

In making investments in accordance with the foregoing portfolio construction guidelines, the Fund may invest globally in U.S. and non-U.S. issuers' obligations and such obligations may be U.S. dollar denominated as well as non-U.S. dollar denominated. The Fund typically seeks to limit its exposure to foreign currency risks by entering into forward transactions and other hedging transactions to the extent practical. There can be no assurance that the Fund's currency hedging strategies will succeed. Under normal market conditions, the Fund expects to continue investing in both U.S. and non-U.S. issuers. The Fund's areas of geographic focus are the United States and, secondarily, developed Europe, Asia and Canada. The Fund may also invest in, among other areas, South Africa. The geographic areas of focus are subject to change from time to time and may be changed without notice to the Fund's shareholders. There is no minimum or maximum limit on the amount of the Fund's assets that may be invested in non-U.S. credit obligations, generally, or in emerging market credit obligations, specifically.

The Fund may invest in loans and bonds issued by issuers of any size. The Fund may invest in credit obligations at all levels of the capital structure. In investing in credit obligations, the Fund focuses on senior secured debt and other senior debt (including senior unsecured debt issued by an issuer that has also issued senior secured debt). The Fund's focus in this regard is subject to change from time to time and may be changed without notice to the Fund's shareholders.

### **Investment philosophy**

The Adviser has expertise in Senior Loans and subordinated debt instruments, including those of stressed and distressed issuers, and is responsible for the overall management of the Fund.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Adviser seeks to maximize risk adjusted returns, including by seeking to manage risk through shorting and other hedging strategies when deemed advisable by the Adviser. There can be no assurance that the Fund's hedging strategies will succeed. The Adviser seeks to achieve the Fund's investment objectives while carefully evaluating risk/return within the capital structure of a company, as well as the industry and asset class. The Adviser looks to maintain trading flexibility and to preserve capital. The Adviser conducts thorough in-depth research and employ a disciplined investment philosophy and a consistent investment approach in their focus on credit opportunities. The Adviser's investment teams use a robust credit process that includes research and analysis using a top-down/bottom-up approach to find mispriced or undervalued opportunities: from the top down, they consider macroeconomic themes of the overall credit market and industries, and from the bottom up, they conduct detailed fundamental analysis related to credit obligations of specific issuers, including examining issuers' financials and operations, including sales, earnings, growth potential, assets, debt, management and competition. The Adviser also seeks to understand historic and prospective industry trends affecting an investment opportunity. The Adviser seeks to ensure that the Fund's portfolio will not consist of a large number of issuers to permit a more thorough analysis of each issuer and to focus on the investments the Adviser believes to be most attractive. The non-diversified/focused nature of the Fund's portfolio creates risk. See Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Non-Diversification Risk. The Fund typically seeks to balance interest rate risk with investment performance by investing, when deemed advisable by the Adviser, in both floating rate credit obligations, which are more likely to maintain their value in changing interest rate environments, and fixed rate credit obligations, which are more likely to lose value in rising interest rate environments but may pay higher rates of interest than floating rate credit obligations. See Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Market Risk. The Fund typically seeks to balance credit risk with investment performance by investing, when deemed advisable by the Adviser, in both Senior Loans, which may pose less credit risk, and other credit obligations, which may offer the prospect of higher returns with more credit risk. See Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Credit Risk. The Adviser's investment process is subject to change in its discretion.

When investing in credit obligations, the Fund may invest in the same securities or other credit obligations in which other accounts managed by the Adviser, including private funds, also invest. In order, among other things, to attempt to mitigate potential conflicts and seek to maintain a portfolio with the risk/return characteristics that the Fund believes to be appropriate for closed-end investment company investors, the Fund will adhere to a policy pursuant to which, at the time an investment is made by the Fund, the Fund's portfolio will have no more than 20% overlap, on a market value basis, at the investment specific level with the portfolio investments held by the private funds (in the aggregate) advised by the Adviser or its affiliates (the Avenue private funds) (*i.e.*, no more than 20% of the Fund's portfolio investments will be identical to the investments held by the Avenue private funds in the aggregate) (the 20% overlap limit). The 20% overlap limit will be measured as the percentage of:

- (a) the aggregate market value of the specific investments in the Fund that are owned by, and overlap at the investment specific level with, the Avenue private funds (in the aggregate), divided by
- (b) the market value of the Fund's Managed Assets.

Investment opportunities appropriate for both the Fund and the Avenue private funds generally will be allocated between the Fund and the Avenue private funds in a manner that the Adviser believes to be fair and equitable under the circumstances, in accordance with the Adviser's trade allocation policies. The application of the 20% overlap limit may result in the Fund being unable to make investments that it otherwise would have made, which could negatively affect the performance of the Fund.

The following Fund investments will not be included for purposes of calculating the 20% overlap limit:

- (a) investments held only by collateralized loan obligation (CLO) funds, and no other private funds, managed by the Adviser; and

(b) assets that, in the Adviser's determination, are held for hedging purposes.

To the extent that the Fund exceeds the 20% overlap limit other than due to a transaction by the Fund (*e.g.*, appreciation or depreciation of certain assets in the Fund or an acquisition by one or more Avenue private funds), the Fund will not be required to sell any of its holdings but will be precluded from acquiring any additional securities that the Avenue private funds currently hold. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Fund will be permitted to convert, exchange or exercise any security it currently holds and participate in any rights offerings or other offerings available to holders of securities currently held in its portfolio regardless of whether such transaction would be in excess of the foregoing 20% overlap limit. The 20% overlap limit does not limit the amount the Fund may invest in credit obligations of an entity or group of affiliated entities in which the Avenue private funds invest through credit obligations different from those held by the Fund.

To the extent that the Adviser serves as an investment manager to other accounts in the future that have the same investment strategy as the Fund, investment opportunities within such strategy will, to the extent practicable, be allocated among the Fund and such other accounts on a pro rata basis or on such other basis as the Adviser determines to be fair and equitable to the Fund and such other accounts.

Investors should note that the investment advisory fee structure for the Avenue Capital Group's accounts that are not registered investment companies is different and generally higher than the investment advisory fee structure for the Fund. See Management of

the Fund Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Adviser in the SAI for more information on the 20% overlap limit, advisory fees and the Adviser's policies and procedures to address conflicts of interest. The Fund offers an opportunity for its investors to have access to an investment strategy implemented by the Adviser, which normally is not directly available to retail investors, albeit only at the lower risk and return segment of the market.

### Temporary investments

During temporary defensive periods or in order to keep the Fund's cash fully invested, including during the period when the net proceeds of the Offer are being invested, the Fund may deviate from its investment objectives and principal investment strategy. During such periods, the Fund may invest all or a portion of its Managed Assets in certain short-term (less than one (1) year to maturity) and medium-term (not greater than five years to maturity) debt securities or hold cash. The short-term and medium-term debt securities in which the Fund may invest consist of: (i) obligations of the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities; (ii) bank deposits and bank obligations (including certificates of deposit, time deposits and bankers' acceptances) of U.S. or foreign banks denominated in any currency; (iii) floating rate securities and other instruments denominated in any currency issued by various governments or international development agencies; (iv) finance company and corporate commercial paper and other short-term corporate debt obligations of U.S. or foreign corporations; (v) repurchase agreements with banks and broker-dealers with respect to such securities; and (vi) shares of money market funds. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Other Investments Temporary Investments and Use of Proceeds below.

### Leverage

The Fund is permitted to obtain leverage using any form or combination of financial leverage instruments, including reverse repurchase agreements, credit facilities such as bank loans or commercial paper and the issuance of preferred shares or notes. Subject to prevailing market conditions, the Fund intends to use leveraging instruments to add financial leverage to its portfolio representing up to approximately 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets (including the assets subject to, and obtained with the proceeds of, such instruments). The Fund's intention to limit its use of financial leverage to 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets is not a fundamental policy of the Fund and may be changed without notice to the Common Shareholders. The Fund intends to use leverage opportunistically and may choose to increase or decrease its leverage, or use different types or combinations of leveraging instruments, at any time based on the Fund's assessment of market conditions and the investment environment. The Fund is currently a party to a \$122,000,000 senior secured revolving credit facility with The Bank of Nova Scotia (the Credit Facility) and, as of [ ], 2014, had \$[ ] in borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility, which represented [ ]% of the Fund's Managed Assets as of such date (including the proceeds of such leverage). The Credit Facility expires on March 6, 2015 (although, subject to certain conditions including the payment of an additional fee, the Fund may extend the maturity date of its outstanding loans for up to approximately one (1) year following such expiration date). Although the Fund currently intends to renew the Credit Facility, upon its expiration date, there can be no assurance that the Fund will be able to do so or do so on terms similar to the current Credit Facility, which may adversely affect the ability of the Fund to pursue its investment objectives and strategies. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks for more information.

The 1940 Act generally limits the extent to which the Fund may utilize uncovered reverse repurchase agreements and borrowings, together with any other senior securities representing indebtedness, to 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets at the time utilized. In addition, the 1940 Act limits the extent to which the Fund may issue preferred shares to 50% of the Fund's total assets (less the Fund's obligations under uncovered reverse repurchase agreements and other senior securities representing indebtedness). Covered reverse repurchase agreements will not be counted against the foregoing limits under the 1940 Act. A reverse repurchase agreement will be considered covered if the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the Fund's obligations under such reverse repurchase agreement (or segregates such other amounts as may be permitted by the 1940 Act or guidance issued by the SEC from time to time); otherwise, a reverse repurchase agreement will be considered uncovered. The Fund may elect not to cover a reverse repurchase agreement if it does not need to do so to comply with the foregoing 1940 Act requirements and, in the view of the Adviser, the assets that would have been used to cover could be better used for a different purpose.

Use of leverage creates an opportunity for increased income and return for the Common Shareholders but, at the same time, creates risks, including the likelihood of greater volatility in the NAV and market price of, and distributions on, the Common Shares. There can be no assurance that the Fund will continue to use leverage or that its leveraging strategy will be successful during any period in which it is employed. The Fund may be subject to investment restrictions of one or more NRSROs and/or credit facility lenders as a result of its use of financial leverage. These restrictions may impose asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed on the Fund by the 1940 Act. It is not anticipated that these covenants or portfolio requirements will significantly impede the Adviser in managing the Fund's portfolio in accordance with its investment objectives and policies. Nonetheless, if these covenants or guidelines are more restrictive than those imposed by the 1940 Act, the Fund may not be able to utilize as much leverage as it otherwise could have, which could reduce the Fund's investment returns. In addition, the Fund expects that any notes or a credit facility/commercial paper program would contain covenants that, among other things, will likely impose geographic exposure limitations, credit quality minimums, liquidity minimums, concentration limitations and currency hedging requirements on the Fund. These covenants would also likely limit the Fund's ability to pay distributions in certain circumstances, incur additional debt, change fundamental investment policies and engage in certain transactions, including mergers and

consolidations. Such restrictions could cause the Adviser to make different investment decisions than if there were no such restrictions and could limit the ability of the Board and Common Shareholders to change fundamental investment policies. If preferred shares are used, holders of preferred shares will have rights to elect a minimum of two trustees. This voting power may negatively affect Common Shareholders, and the interests of holders of preferred shares may otherwise differ from the interests of Common Shareholders. Any trustees elected by preferred shareholders will represent both Common Shareholders as well as holders of preferred shares. Such trustees may have a conflict of interest when the interests of Common Shareholders differ from those of holders of preferred shares.

The costs of a financial leverage program (including the costs of offering preferred shares and notes) will be borne by Common Shareholders and consequently will result in a reduction of the NAV of the Common Shares. During periods in which the Fund is using leverage, the fees paid by the Fund for investment advisory services will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the investment advisory fees paid will be calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which includes proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes, so that the investment advisory fees payable to the Adviser will be higher when leverage is utilized. This will create a conflict of interest between the Adviser, on the one hand, and Common Shareholders, on the other hand. To monitor this potential conflict, the Board intends periodically to review the Fund's use of leverage, including its impact on Fund performance and on the Adviser's fees. See Management of the Fund Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Adviser in the SAI. Fees and expenses in respect of financial leverage, as well as the investment advisory fee and all other expenses of the Fund, will be borne entirely by the Common Shareholders, and not by preferred shareholders, noteholders or any other leverage providers.

The Fund may enter into other transactions that may give rise to a form of leverage including, among others, swaps, futures and forward contracts, options and other derivative transactions. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks and Risk Factors. To the extent that the Fund covers its obligations under such other transactions, as described in this prospectus, such transactions should not be treated as borrowings for purposes of the 1940 Act. However, these transactions, even if covered, may represent a form of economic leverage and will create risks. The potential loss on derivative instruments may be substantial relative to the initial investment therein. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Portfolio Composition, Structured Products, Swaps and Other Derivative Instruments; and Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Risks of Structured Products, Risks of Swaps and Risks of Other Derivative Instruments.

### **The Adviser**

Under an advisory agreement, the Adviser receives an annual fee, payable monthly by the Fund, in an amount equal to 1.25% of the Fund's average daily Managed Assets, which means the total assets of the Fund (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes, including proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes) minus the sum of the Fund's accrued liabilities (other than Fund liabilities incurred for the purpose of leverage).

### **The administrator**

State Street Bank and Trust Company (State Street), located at State Street Financial Center, 1 Lincoln Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02111, serves as administrator to the Fund. Under the administration agreement, State Street is generally responsible for managing the administrative affairs of the Fund.

For administration related services, State Street is entitled to receive an annual fee of \$[ ], plus certain out-of-pocket expenses.

During periods when the Fund is using leverage, the fee paid to State Street (for various services) will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the fees paid are calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which includes the assets purchased through leverage. See Management of the Fund The Administrator.

### **Legal proceedings**

The Fund is not currently a party to any material legal proceedings.

### **Distributions**

The Fund intends to make regular monthly distributions of all or a portion of the Fund's net interest and other investment company taxable income to Common Shareholders. The Fund expects to pay its Common Shareholders annually all or substantially all of its investment company taxable income. In addition, the Fund intends to distribute, on an annual basis, all or substantially all of any net capital gains to its Common Shareholders.

Various factors will affect the level of the Fund's net interest and other investment company taxable income, of which the Fund intends to distribute all or substantially all on an annual basis to meet the requirements for qualification as a regulated investment

company under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). The Fund may from time to time distribute less than the entire amount of income earned in a particular period. The undistributed income would be available to supplement future distributions. As a result, the distributions paid by the Fund for any particular month may be more or less than the amount of income actually earned by the Fund during that period. Undistributed income will add to the Fund's NAV and, correspondingly, distributions will reduce the Fund's NAV.

An investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer after the record date for a monthly dividend (if any) to be paid by the Fund will not receive such dividend. Therefore, an investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer will not receive the Fund's dividend payable [ ], 2014 to Common Shareholders of record at the close of business on [ ], 2014 and an investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer after the record date for the Fund's May dividend, if declared by the Board, will not receive such dividend.

#### **Dividend reinvestment plan**

The Fund has established a dividend reinvestment plan. A Common Shareholder will automatically have all dividends and distributions reinvested in Common Shares newly issued by the Fund or Common Shares of the Fund purchased in the open market in accordance with the Fund's dividend reinvestment plan unless the Common Shareholder specifically elects to receive cash. See "Distributions" and "Dividend Reinvestment Plan."

#### **Custodian, dividend paying agent, transfer agent and registrar**

State Street serves as custodian (the "Custodian") for the Fund. State Street also provides accounting services to the Fund. State Street also serves as the Fund's dividend paying agent, transfer agent and registrar. See "Custodian, Dividend Paying Agent, Transfer Agent and Registrar."

#### **Closed-end fund structure**

Closed-end funds differ from open-end management investment companies (commonly referred to as mutual funds) in that closed-end funds generally list their shares for trading on a securities exchange and do not redeem their shares at the option of the shareholder. By comparison, mutual funds issue securities redeemable at net asset value at the option of the shareholder and typically engage in a continuous offering of their shares. Mutual funds are subject to continuous asset in-flows and out-flows that can complicate portfolio management, whereas closed-end funds generally can stay more fully invested in securities consistent with the closed-end fund's investment objectives and policies. In addition, in comparison to open-end funds, closed-end funds have greater flexibility in the employment of financial leverage and in the ability to make certain types of investments, including investments in illiquid securities.

However, shares of closed-end funds frequently trade at a discount from their net asset value. In recognition of the possibility that the Common Shares might trade at a discount to NAV and that any such discount may not be in the interest of Common Shareholders, the Board, in consultation with the Adviser, from time to time may review possible actions to reduce any such discount. The Board might consider open market repurchases or tender offers for Common Shares at NAV. There can be no assurance, however, that the Board will decide to undertake any of these actions or that, if undertaken, such actions would result in the Common Shares trading at a price equal to or close to NAV. The Board might also consider the conversion of the Fund to an open-end mutual fund, which would also require a vote of the shareholders of the Fund. Conversion of the Fund to an open-end mutual fund would require approval by both (i) a majority of the Board and (ii) a vote of

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

shareholders representing the lesser of (a) 67% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund at a shareholder meeting, if the holders of more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities are present in person or by proxy, or (b) more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund.

The Fund has no limitation on investments in illiquid securities (closed-end funds are not required to have any such limitation) and may invest all or a portion of its assets in illiquid securities. In order to meet redemptions upon request by shareholders, open-end funds typically cannot have more than 15% of their assets in illiquid securities. Thus, if the Fund were to convert to an open-end fund, it would have to adopt a limitation on illiquid securities and may need to revise its investment objectives, strategies and policies. The composition of the Fund's portfolio and/or its investment policies could prohibit the Fund from complying with regulations of the SEC applicable to open-end management investment funds absent significant changes in portfolio holdings, including with respect to certain illiquid securities, and investment policies. The Board believes, however, that the closed-end structure is desirable, given the Fund's investment objectives, strategies and policies. Investors should assume, therefore, that it is highly unlikely that the Board would vote to convert the Fund to an open-end investment company. Investors should note that the issuance of preferred shares to provide investment leverage could make a conversion to an open-end fund more difficult because of the voting rights of preferred shareholders, the costs of redeeming preferred shares and other factors. See Description of Capital Structure.

### **Risk factors**

You should carefully consider the following factors, as well as the other information in this prospectus, before making an investment in the Fund under this Offer.

**Dilution Risk.** As a result of this Offer, it is anticipated that even if you fully exercise your Rights, you should expect to incur immediate economic dilution and, if you do not exercise all of your Rights, you will incur voting dilution.

Upon the completion of the Offer, Record Date Common Shareholders who do not exercise their Rights fully will own a smaller proportional interest in the Fund than they owned prior to the Offer because there will be more Common Shares issued and outstanding if Rights are exercised. The completion of the Offer will result in immediate voting dilution for such Common Shareholders. Further, both the sales load and expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund will immediately reduce the NAV of each outstanding Common Share. In addition, if the Subscription Price is less than the NAV of our Common Shares as of the Expiration Date, the Offer will result in an immediate dilution of NAV for all Common Shareholders. It is anticipated that the existing Common Shareholders will experience immediate dilution even if they fully exercise their Rights. Such dilution is not currently determinable because it is not known how many Common Shares will be subscribed for, what the NAV or market price of our Common Shares will be on the Expiration Date or what the Subscription Price will be. Any such NAV dilution will disproportionately affect nonexercising Common Shareholders. If the Subscription Price is substantially less than the current NAV, this dilution could be substantial. For example, assuming that the Expiration Date was [ ], 2014 and all of the Common Shares are sold at the estimated Subscription Price (which includes a sales load) and after deducting all expenses related to the issuance of the Common Shares, the per share NAV would be reduced by approximately \$[ ] or [ ]%. Record Date Common Shareholders will experience a decrease in the NAV of the Common Shares held by them, irrespective of whether they exercise all or any portion of their Rights. The distribution of transferable Rights, which may themselves have value, will afford non-participating Common Shareholders the potential of receiving a cash payment upon the sale of Rights, receipt of which may be viewed as partial compensation for the economic dilution of their interests, although there can be no assurance that a market for the Rights will develop or, if such a market does develop, what the price of the Rights will be.

#### Example of Dilution to NAV Resulting from the Offer

|     |                                                                                                                       |     |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| (a) | Net asset value per Common Share (as of [ ]/2014)                                                                     | [ ] |
| (b) | Total net assets (as of [ ]/2014)                                                                                     | [ ] |
| (c) | Estimated reduction in current net asset value per Common Share resulting from the Offer ( per share dilution )(1)(2) | [ ] |
| (d) | Estimated percentage reduction in current net asset value per Common Share resulting from the Offer(1)(3)             | [ ] |

- (1) Assumes full exercise of the Rights being offered, that the Expiration Date was [ ], 2014, and that all of the Common Shares are sold at the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] and deducts all expenses related to the issuance of the Common Shares in the Offer. The Fund, not investors, pays the sales load, which is ultimately thus borne by all Common Shareholders.
- (2) Item (c) was calculated by subtracting (A) the Fund's estimated net asset value per Common Share immediately following the completion of the Offer from (B) the Fund's net asset value per Common Share (as of [ ], 2014). The Fund's estimated net asset value per Common Share immediately following the completion of the Offer was estimated (using the assumptions described in note (1) above) by dividing (X) the estimated net asset value of the Fund immediately following the Offer by (Y) the estimated total number of Common Shares outstanding immediately following the completion of the Offer.
- (3) Item (d) was calculated by dividing Item (c) by Item (a).

There can be no assurance that the dilution will be limited to the amounts shown in the table above. The final amounts of such dilution may be greater than those estimated due to many factors, including the Fund's market price and NAV at the time of completion of the Offer and the level of participation in the Offer.

The number of Common Shares outstanding as of [ ], 2014 was [ ]. The number of Common Shares adjusted to give effect to the Offer, assuming that all Rights are exercised and the applicable Common Shares issued, would be [ ]. The percentage increase in Common Shares outstanding that will occur if all the Rights are exercised is [ ]%.

All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights.

See Risk factors Risks Relating to the Offer Dilution Risk.

*Risks of Investing in Rights.* Shares of closed-end funds such as the Fund frequently trade at a discount to net asset value. Since inception, the Fund's Common Shares have frequently traded at a discount in relation to NAV. See Description of Common Shares. If the Formula Price is less than [ ]% of NAV on the Expiration Date, then the Subscription Price will likely be greater than the market price of a Common Share on that date. In addition, the Formula Price, even if above [ ]% of NAV, may be still above the market price of a Common Share on the Expiration Date. If either event occurs, the Rights will have no value, and a person who exercises Rights will experience an immediate loss of value.

*Market Risk.* Market risk is the possibility that the market values of securities owned by the Fund will decline. The values of fixed income securities tend to fall as interest rates rise, and such declines tend to be greater among fixed income securities with longer remaining maturities. Market risk is often greater among certain types of fixed income securities, such as zero coupon bonds which do not make regular interest payments but are instead bought at a discount to their face values and paid in full upon maturity. As interest rates change, these securities often fluctuate more in price than securities that make regular interest payments and

therefore subject the Fund to greater market risk than a fund that does not own these types of securities. The values of adjustable, variable or floating rate income securities tend to have less fluctuation in response to changes in interest rates, but will have some fluctuation particularly when the next interest rate adjustment on such security is further away in time or adjustments are limited in number or degree over time. The Fund has no policy limiting the maturity of credit obligations it purchases. Such obligations often have mandatory and optional prepayment provisions and because of prepayments, the actual remaining maturity of loans and debts may be considerably less than their stated maturity. Obligations with longer remaining maturities or durations generally expose the Fund to more market risk. When-issued and delayed delivery transactions are subject to changes in market conditions from the time of the commitment until settlement. This may adversely affect the prices or yields of the securities being purchased. The greater the Fund's outstanding commitments for these securities, the greater the Fund's exposure to market price fluctuations. Interest rate risk can be considered a type of market risk.

*Credit Risk.* Credit risk refers to the possibility that the issuer of a security will be unable to make timely interest payments and/or repay the principal on its debt. Because the Fund may invest, without limitation, in securities that are below investment grade, the Fund is subject to a greater degree of credit risk than a fund investing primarily in investment grade securities. Below investment grade securities (that is, securities rated Ba or lower by Moody's or BB or lower by S&P) are commonly referred to as "junk" securities. Generally, lower-grade securities provide a higher yield than higher-grade securities of similar maturity but are subject to greater risks, such as greater credit risk, greater market risk and volatility, greater liquidity concerns and potentially greater manager risk. Such securities are generally regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuers' capacities to pay interest or repay principal in accordance with their terms. Lower-grade securities are more susceptible to non-payment of interest and principal and default than higher-grade securities and are more sensitive to specific issuer developments or real or perceived general adverse economic changes than higher-grade securities. The market for lower-grade securities may also have less information available than the market for other securities, further complicating evaluations and valuations of such securities and placing more emphasis on the experience, judgment and analysis of the Adviser.

Credit obligations of stressed issuers (including those that are in covenant or payment default) are subject to a multitude of legal, industry, market, economic and governmental forces each of which make analysis of these companies inherently difficult. The Adviser relies on company management, outside experts, market research and personal experience to analyze potential investments. There can be no assurance that any of these sources will provide credible information, or that the Adviser's analysis will produce conclusions that lead to profitable investments. Obligations of stressed issuers generally trade significantly below par and are considered speculative. The repayment of defaulted obligations is subject to significant uncertainties. Defaulted obligations might be repaid only after lengthy workout or bankruptcy proceedings or result in only partial recovery of cash payments or an exchange of the defaulted obligation for other debt or equity securities of the issuer or its affiliates, which may in turn be illiquid or speculative.

There are a number of significant risks inherent in the bankruptcy process. Many events in a bankruptcy are the product of contested matters and adversary proceedings and are beyond the control of the creditors. A bankruptcy court may approve actions that would be contrary to the interests of the Fund. A bankruptcy filing by an issuer may cause such issuer to lose its market position and key employees and otherwise become incapable of restoring itself as a viable entity, and its liquidation value may be less than its value was believed to be at the time of investment. In addition, the duration of a bankruptcy proceeding is difficult to predict and, as such, a creditor's return on investment can be adversely affected by delays while the plan of reorganization is being negotiated, approved by the creditors and confirmed by the bankruptcy court and until it ultimately becomes effective. The administrative costs in connection with a bankruptcy proceeding are frequently high and would be paid out of the debtor's estate prior to any return to creditors. Further, in the early stages of the bankruptcy process it is often difficult to estimate the extent of any contingent claims that might be made and, as such, there is a risk that the Fund's influence with respect to the class of obligations it owns could be lost by increases in the number and amount of claims in that class or by different classification and treatment. A creditor, such as the Fund, can also lose its ranking and priority if it is determined that such creditor exercised domination and control over a debtor and other creditors can demonstrate that they have been harmed by such actions. In addition, certain claims have priority by law, such as claims for taxes, which may be substantial and could affect the ability of the Fund to be repaid.

In any investment involving stressed obligations, there is a risk that the transaction involving such debt obligations will be unsuccessful, take considerable time or will result in a distribution of cash or a new security or obligation in exchange for the stressed obligations, the value of which may be less than the Fund's purchase price of such obligations. Furthermore, if an anticipated transaction does not occur, the Fund may be required to sell its investment at a loss. However, investments in equity securities obtained through debt restructurings or bankruptcy

proceedings may be illiquid and thus difficult or impossible to sell.

*Interest Rate and Income Risk.* The income you receive from the Fund is based in large part on interest rates, which can vary widely over the short and long term. If interest rates drop, your income from the Fund may drop as well. The more the Fund invests in adjustable, variable or floating rate securities or in securities susceptible to prepayment risk, the greater the Fund's income risk. The historically low interest rate environment increases the risks associated with rising interest rates, including the potential for periods of volatility and increased redemptions. The Fund may face a heightened level of risk, especially since the Federal Reserve Board has begun tapering its quantitative easing program and may begin to raise rates. Securities with longer durations are likely to be more sensitive to changes in interest rates, generally making them more volatile than securities with shorter durations. Lower rated fixed income securities have greater volatility because there is less certainty that principal and interest payments will be made as

scheduled.

*Prepayment or Call Risk.* If interest rates fall, it is possible that issuers of fixed income securities with high interest rates will prepay or call their securities before their maturity dates. In this event, the proceeds from the prepaid or called securities would likely be reinvested by the Fund in securities bearing the new, lower interest rates, resulting in a possible decline in the Fund's income and distributions to shareholders.

*Risks of Senior Loans.* There is less readily available and reliable information about most Senior Loans than is the case for many other types of instruments, including listed securities. Senior Loans are not listed on any national securities exchange or automated quotation system and as such, many Senior Loans are illiquid, meaning that the Fund may not be able to sell them quickly at a fair price. To the extent that a secondary market does exist for certain Senior Loans, the market is more volatile than for liquid, listed securities and may be subject to irregular trading activity, wide bid/ask spreads and extended trade settlement periods. The market for Senior Loans could be disrupted in the event of an economic downturn or a substantial increase or decrease in interest rates, resulting in fluctuations in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares and difficulty in valuing the Fund's portfolio of Senior Loans. Although the Adviser believes that the Fund's investments in adjustable rate Senior Loans could limit fluctuations in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares as a result of changes in interest rates, extraordinary and sudden changes in interest rates could nevertheless disrupt the market for such Senior Loans and result in fluctuations in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares and difficulty in valuing the Fund's portfolio of Senior Loans.

Senior Loans, like most other debt obligations, are subject to the risk of default. Default in the payment of interest or principal on a Senior Loan will result in a reduction of income to the Fund, a reduction in the value of the Senior Loan and a potential decrease in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares. The risk of default will increase in the event of an economic downturn or a substantial increase in interest rates. The Adviser relies primarily on its own evaluation of borrower credit quality rather than on any available independent sources. As a result, the Fund is particularly dependent on the analytical abilities of the Adviser.

The Fund may acquire or hold Senior Loans of borrowers that are experiencing, or are more likely to experience, financial difficulty, including Senior Loans issued to highly leveraged borrowers or borrowers that have filed for bankruptcy protection. Borrowers may have outstanding debt obligations, including Senior Loans, that are rated below investment grade. The Fund may invest a substantial portion of its assets in Senior Loans that are rated below investment grade or that are unrated at the time of purchase but are deemed by the Adviser to be of comparable quality. If a Senior Loan is rated at the time of purchase, the Fund may consider the rating when evaluating the Senior Loan but, in any event, does not view ratings as a determinative factor in investment decisions. As a result, the Fund is dependent on the credit analytical abilities of the Adviser. Because of the protective terms of Senior Loans, the Adviser believes that the Fund is more likely to recover more of its investment in a defaulted Senior Loan than would be the case for most other types of defaulted credit obligations. The values of Senior Loans of borrowers that have filed for bankruptcy protection or that are experiencing payment difficulty could be affected by, among other things, the assessment of the likelihood that the lenders ultimately will receive repayment of the principal amount of such Senior Loans, the likely duration, if any, of a lapse in the scheduled payment of interest and repayment of principal and prevailing interest rates. There is no assurance that the Fund will be able to recover any amount on Senior Loans of such borrowers or that sale of the collateral granted in connection with Senior Loans would raise enough cash to satisfy the borrower's payment obligation or that the collateral can or will be liquidated. In the event of bankruptcy, liquidation may not occur and the bankruptcy court may not give lenders the full benefit of their senior position in the capital structure of the borrower.

The Fund may act as an original lender under Senior Loans or may acquire Senior Loans through assignments or participations. The Fund may make Senior Loans to, or acquire Senior Loans of, borrowers that, at the time of the making or acquisition of the loan by the Fund, are experiencing, or are likely to experience, financial difficulty (including highly leveraged borrowers) and such loans may constitute a material amount of the Fund's portfolio. The Fund will not make Senior Loans to, or acquire Senior Loans of, borrowers that, at the time of the making or acquisition of the loan by the Fund, are in bankruptcy.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

If the Fund acquires a Senior Loan through an assignment agreement, it will typically succeed to all the rights and obligations of the assigning institution and become a lender under the credit agreement with respect to the debt obligation purchased; however, its rights can be more restricted than those of the assigning institution, and, in any event, the Fund may not be able to unilaterally enforce all rights and remedies of the lenders under the loan agreement and with regard to any associated collateral. If the Fund acquires an interest in a Senior Loan through a participation agreement, the Fund will enter into a contractual relationship with the institution selling the participation, not with the borrower. In purchasing participations, the Fund generally will have no right to enforce compliance by the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement or any rights of setoff against the borrower, and the Fund may not directly benefit from the collateral supporting the debt obligation in which it has purchased the participation. As a result, the Fund will be exposed to the credit risk of both the borrower and the institution selling the participation. When purchasing a participation, the Adviser will analyze the credit risk posed by the institution selling the participation. The Adviser relies primarily on its own evaluation of the credit quality of such selling institutions rather than on any available independent sources. As a result, the Fund is particularly dependent on the analytical abilities of the Adviser. Because of the nature of its investments, the Fund may be subject to allegations of lender liability and other claims. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares** **Lender Liability Risk**. In addition, the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the **Securities Act**), deems certain persons to be **underwriters** if they purchase a security from an issuer and later sell it to the public. Although it is not believed that the application of this Securities Act

provision would cause the Fund to be engaged in the business of underwriting, a person who purchases an instrument from the Fund that was acquired by the Fund from the issuer of such instrument could allege otherwise. Under the Securities Act, an underwriter may be liable for material omissions or misstatements in an issuer's registration statement or prospectus.

*Below Investment Grade (High-Yield or Junk Bond) Securities Risk.* Fixed income securities rated below investment grade generally offer a higher current yield than that available from higher grade issues, but typically involve greater risk. These securities are especially sensitive to adverse changes in general economic conditions, to changes in the financial condition of their issuers and to price fluctuation in response to changes in interest rates. During periods of economic downturn or rising interest rates, issuers of below investment grade instruments may experience financial stress that could adversely affect their ability to make payments of principal and interest and increase the possibility of default. The secondary market for high-yield securities may not be as liquid as the secondary market for more highly rated securities, a factor which may have an adverse effect on the Fund's ability to dispose of a particular security. There are fewer dealers in the market for high-yield securities than for investment grade obligations. The prices quoted by different dealers may vary significantly, and the spread between the bid and asked price is generally much larger for high-yield securities than for higher quality instruments. Under continuing adverse market or economic conditions, the secondary market for high-yield securities could contract further, independent of any specific adverse changes in the condition of a particular issuer, and these securities may become illiquid. In addition, adverse publicity and investor perceptions, whether or not based on fundamental analysis, may also decrease the values and liquidity of below investment grade securities, especially in a market characterized by a low volume of trading. Unrated instruments involve the risk that the Adviser may not accurately evaluate the instrument's comparative credit rating. As a result, the Fund's investments in unrated instruments depend more heavily on the Adviser's credit analysis than if the Fund invested in comparable rated instruments. Some unrated securities may not have an active trading market or may be difficult to value, and the Fund might have difficulty selling them at an acceptable price.

*Risks of Changes in Fixed Income Market Conditions.* Following the financial crisis that began in 2007, the Federal Reserve Board has attempted to stabilize the U.S. economy and support the U.S. economic recovery by keeping the federal funds rate at or near zero percent. In addition, the Federal Reserve Board has purchased large quantities of securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities on the open market (quantitative easing). As the Federal Reserve tapers or reduces quantitative easing, and when the Federal Reserve raises the federal funds rate, there is a risk that interest rates across the U.S. financial system will rise. These policy changes, along with other economic, political or other factors, may cause the fixed income markets to experience increased volatility and reduced liquidity, causing the value of the Fund's investments and its NAV per share to decline. The Fund may also experience increased portfolio turnover, which will increase the costs that the Fund incurs and may further lower the Fund's performance. Certain Fund investments may also be difficult to value during such periods. In addition, to the extent the Fund invests in derivatives tied to fixed income markets, the Fund may be more substantially exposed to these risks than a fund that does not invest in derivatives.

*Foreign Securities Risk.* The Fund will invest in credit obligations, including loans, of issuers that are organized or located in countries other than the United States, including non-U.S. dollar denominated securities. Investing in non-U.S. issuers involves risks, including that non-U.S. issuers may be subject to less rigorous accounting and reporting requirements than U.S. issuers, less rigorous regulatory requirements, different legal systems and laws relating to creditors' rights, the potential inability to enforce legal judgments, the potential for political, social and economic adversity and currency risk.

Currency risk is the risk that fluctuations in the exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and non-U.S. currencies may negatively affect an investment. The value of investments denominated in non-U.S. currencies may fluctuate based on changes in the value of those currencies relative to the U.S. dollar, and a decline in such relative value could reduce the value of such investments held by the Fund.

The foreign securities in which the Fund may invest may be issued by companies or governments located in emerging market countries. Investing in the securities of issuers operating in emerging markets involves a high degree of risk and special considerations not typically associated with investing in the securities of other foreign or U.S. issuers. Compared to the United States and other developed countries, emerging market countries may have relatively unstable governments, economies based on only a few industries and securities markets that

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

trade a small number of securities. Securities issued by companies or governments located in emerging market countries tend to be especially volatile and may be less liquid than securities traded in developed countries. Securities in these countries have been characterized by greater potential loss than securities of companies and governments located in developed countries. Investments in the securities of issuers located in emerging markets could be affected by risks associated with expropriation and/or nationalization, political or social instability, pervasiveness of corruption and crime, armed conflict, the impact on the economy of civil war, religious or ethnic unrest and the withdrawal or non-renewal of any license enabling the Fund to trade in securities of a particular country, confiscatory taxation, restrictions on transfers of assets, lack of uniform accounting and auditing standards, less publicly available financial and other information, diplomatic development which could affect U.S. investments in those countries, and potential difficulties in enforcing contractual obligations.

Since the Fund may invest in credit obligations of foreign issuers denominated in the local currency, changes in foreign currency exchange rates will affect the value of credit obligations in the Fund's portfolio and the unrealized appreciation or depreciation of investments. In addition to changes in the value of the Fund's portfolio investments resulting from currency fluctuations, the Fund may incur costs in connection with conversions between various currencies. The Fund may also invest directly in currencies for

hedging purposes. The Fund is subject to the risk that those currencies will decline in value relative to the U.S. dollar. For example, the recent debt crisis in certain European countries could cause the value of the Euro to deteriorate. The values of the currencies of the emerging market countries in which the Fund may invest may be subject to a high degree of fluctuation due to changes in interest rates, the effects of monetary policies of the United States, foreign governments, central banks or supranational entities, the imposition of currency controls or due to other national or global political or economic developments. Foreign exchange dealers realize a profit based on the difference between the prices at which they are buying and selling various currencies. Thus, a dealer normally will offer to sell a foreign currency to the Fund at one rate, while offering a lesser rate of exchange should the Fund desire immediately to resell that currency to the dealer. The Fund will conduct its foreign currency exchange transactions either on a spot (i.e., cash) basis at the spot rate prevailing in the foreign currency exchange market, or through entering into forward, futures or options contracts to purchase or sell foreign currencies. Therefore, the Fund's exposure to foreign currencies may result in reduced returns to the Fund. The Fund may, from time to time, seek to protect the value of some portion or all of its portfolio holdings against currency risks by engaging in currency hedging transactions. Such transactions may include entering into forward currency exchange contracts, currency futures contracts and options on such futures contracts as well as purchasing put or call options on currencies, in U.S. or foreign markets. Currency hedging involves risks, including possible default by the other party to the transaction, illiquidity and, to the extent the view as to certain market movements is incorrect, the risk that the use of hedging could result in losses greater than if they had not been used. In addition, in certain countries in which the Fund may invest, currency hedging opportunities may not be available. The use of currency transactions can result in the Fund incurring losses because of the imposition of exchange controls, suspension of settlements or the inability of the Fund to deliver or receive a specified currency. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Foreign Securities.

Investing in Euro-denominated (or other European currency-denominated) securities entails risk of being exposed to a currency that may not fully reflect the strengths and weaknesses of the disparate European economies. In addition, it is possible that the Euro could be abandoned in the future by countries that have already adopted its use. The effects of such an abandonment on the applicable country and the rest of the European Economic and Monetary Union ( EMU ) are uncertain but could be negative and severe. Many European countries rely heavily upon export-dependent businesses and any change in the exchange rate between the Euro and the U.S. dollar can have either a positive or a negative effect upon corporate profits and the performance of investments in the European Union. Moreover, as the European debt crisis has progressed, the possibility of one or more European countries exiting the EMU, or even of the collapse of the Euro as a common currency, has arisen. The effects of the collapse of the Euro, or of the exit of one or more countries from the EMU, on the United States and global economy and securities markets are impossible to predict and any such events could have a significant adverse impact on the value and risk profile of the Fund's portfolio.

The Fund computes and expects to continue to distribute its income in U.S. dollars, and the computation of income is made on the date that the income is earned by the Fund at the foreign exchange rate in effect on that date. If the value of the foreign currencies in which the Fund receives its income falls relative to the U.S. dollar between the date of earning of the income and the time at which the Fund converts the foreign currencies to U.S. dollars, the Fund may be required to liquidate securities in order to make distributions if the Fund has insufficient cash in U.S. dollars to meet distribution requirements. See Distributions and Dividend Reinvestment Plan. The liquidation of investments, if required, may have an adverse impact on the Fund's performance.

*Risks of Second Lien or Other Subordinated or Unsecured Loans or Debt.* Second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt generally are subject to similar risks as those associated with investments in Senior Loans. In addition, because second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt are subordinated in payment and/or lower in lien priority to Senior Loans, they are subject to additional risk that the cash flow of the borrower and property securing the loan or debt, if any, may be insufficient to meet scheduled payments after giving effect to the senior secured obligations of the borrower. This risk is generally higher for subordinated unsecured loans or debt, which are not backed by a security interest in any specific collateral. Second lien or subordinated loans or debt, both secured and unsecured, are expected to have greater price volatility than Senior Loans and may be less liquid. There is also a possibility that originators will not be able to sell participations in second lien loans and subordinated loans or debt, both secured and unsecured, which would create greater credit risk exposure. Second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt of below investment grade quality share risks similar to those associated with investments in other below investment grade securities and obligations.

*Risks of Structured Products.* The Fund may invest in structured products, including collateralized debt obligations ( CDOs ), collateralized bond obligations ( CBOs ), CLOs, structured notes, credit-linked notes and other types of structured products. Holders of structured products bear risks

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

of the underlying investments, index or reference obligation and are subject to counterparty risk. The Fund may have the right to receive payments to which it is entitled only from the issuer of the structured product, and generally does not have direct rights against the issuer of, or the entity that sold, assets underlying the structured product. While certain structured products enable the investor to acquire interests in a pool of securities without the brokerage and other expenses associated with directly holding such securities, investors in structured products generally pay their share of the structured product's administrative and other expenses. When investing in structured products, it is impossible to predict whether the underlying indices or prices of the underlying assets will rise or fall, but prices of the underlying indices and assets (and, therefore, the prices of structured products) will be influenced by the same types of political and economic events that affect particular issuers of securities and capital markets generally. Certain structured products may be thinly traded or have a limited trading market and may have the effect of increasing the Fund's illiquidity to the extent that the Fund, at a particular point in time, may be unable to find qualified

buyers for, and may have difficulty valuing, these securities.

CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs are typically privately offered and sold, and thus, are not registered under the securities laws. As a result, investments in CDOs may be characterized by the Fund as illiquid securities; however, an active dealer market may exist for CDOs allowing a CDO to be considered liquid in some circumstances. In addition to the general risks associated with fixed income securities discussed herein, CDOs carry additional risks including, but not limited to: (i) the possibility that distributions from collateral securities will not be adequate to make interest or other payments; (ii) the quality of the collateral may decline in value or the collateral may go into default; (iii) the possibility that the CDOs are subordinate to other classes of obligations issued by the same issuer; and (iv) the complex structure of the security may not be fully understood at the time of investment and may produce disputes with the issuer or unexpected investment results.

Investments in structured notes involve risks including income risk, credit risk and market risk. Recent market conditions have magnified the risks related to an investment in structured products, including greater volatility, increased lack of liquidity and significant losses in value. Where the return on a structured note held by the Fund is based upon the movement of one or more factors, including currency exchange rates, interest rates, referenced bonds and stock indices, depending on the factor used and the use of multipliers or deflators, changes in interest rates and movement of the factor may cause significant fluctuations in the price of the structured note. Additionally, changes in the reference instrument or security may cause the interest rate on the structured note to be reduced to zero and any further changes in the reference instrument may then reduce the principal amount payable on maturity. Structured notes may be less liquid than other types of securities and more volatile than the reference instrument or security underlying the note.

*Risks of Swaps.* The Fund may enter into swap transactions, including credit default, total return, index and interest rate swap agreements, as well as options thereon, and may purchase or sell interest rate caps, floors and collars. Such transactions are subject to market risk, risk of default by the other party to the transaction (i.e., counterparty risk), risk of imperfect correlation and manager risk and may involve commissions or other costs. Swaps generally do not involve delivery of securities, other underlying assets or principal. Accordingly, the risk of loss with respect to swaps generally is limited to the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually obligated to make, or in the case of the other party to a swap defaulting, the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually entitled to receive. The swap market has grown substantially in recent years with a large number of banks and investment banking firms acting both as principals and as agents utilizing standardized swap documentation. If the Adviser is incorrect in its forecast of market values, interest rates or currency exchange rates, the investment performance of the Fund would be less favorable than it would have been if these investment techniques were not used.

In addition, recent market developments related to swaps have prompted increased scrutiny with respect to these instruments. The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (the "Dodd-Frank Act") and related regulatory developments ultimately will require the clearing and exchange-trading of many over-the-counter derivative instruments that the Commodity Futures Trading Commission ("CFTC") and SEC define as "swaps." Mandatory exchange-trading and clearing is occurring on a phased-in basis based on the type of market participant and CFTC approval of contracts for central clearing. The Adviser will continue to monitor these developments, particularly to the extent regulatory changes affect the Fund's ability to use swaps and increase the cost of using swaps.

*Counterparty Risk.* Changes in the credit quality of the dealers that serve as the Fund's counterparties with respect to derivatives, swaps or other transactions will affect the value of those instruments. In the event of a default by, or the insolvency of, a counterparty, the Fund may sustain losses or be unable to liquidate a derivative or swap position. The Fund and the Adviser seek to deal only with counterparties of high creditworthiness. All of the Fund's bank or dealer counterparties (including bank or dealer derivative counterparties) will be subject to approval by the Adviser's risk and compliance groups. The Adviser evaluates and monitors the creditworthiness of the Fund's counterparties. Specifically, the Adviser's risk and compliance personnel implement processes with respect to pre-approval, ongoing monitoring and parameters with respect to the Fund's counterparty risk exposure. The parameters and limitations that may be imposed depend on the creditworthiness of the Funds' counterparties and the nature of the transactions in which the Fund engages. The counterparty risk for cleared derivatives is generally lower than for uncleared over-the-counter derivative transactions since generally a clearing organization becomes substituted for each counterparty to a cleared derivative contract and, in effect, guarantees the parties' performance under the contract as each party to a trade generally looks to the

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

clearing organization for performance of financial obligations under the derivative contract. However, there can be no assurance that a clearing organization, or its members, will satisfy its obligations to the Fund.

*Financial Leverage Risk.* The Fund is permitted to obtain leverage using any form or combination of financial leverage instruments, including reverse repurchase agreements, credit facilities such as bank loans or commercial paper, and the issuance of preferred shares or notes. The Fund intends to use leverage opportunistically and may choose to increase or decrease its leverage, or use different types or combinations of leveraging instruments, at any time based on the Fund's assessment of market conditions and the investment environment.

There can be no assurance that a financial leveraging strategy will continue to be utilized by the Fund or that, if utilized, it will be successful during any period in which it is employed. Leverage creates risks for Common Shareholders, including the likelihood of greater volatility of NAV of the Common Shares and market price of, and distributions on, the Common Shares and the risk that

fluctuations in the costs to borrow, or in the distribution or interest rates on any preferred shares or notes, may affect the return to Common Shareholders. To the extent the income derived from investments purchased with proceeds received from leverage exceeds the cost of leverage, the Fund's distributions will be greater than if leverage had not been used. Conversely, if the income from the investments purchased with such proceeds is not sufficient to cover the cost of the financial leverage, the amount available for distribution to Common Shareholders will be less than if leverage had not been used. In the latter case, the Fund may nevertheless maintain its leveraged position if such action is deemed to be appropriate based on market conditions. If preferred shares are used, holders of preferred shares will have rights to elect a minimum of two trustees. This voting power may negatively affect Common Shareholders (or the interests of holders of preferred shares may differ from the interests of Common Shareholders). The use of leverage by the Fund may magnify the Fund's losses when there is a decrease in the value of a Fund investment and even totally eliminate the Fund's equity in its portfolio or a Common Shareholder's equity in the Fund. The Fund has substantially increased its use of leverage through the Credit Facility during the past twelve months and intends to use leverage up to the maximum amount permitted by the 1940 Act. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks.

The costs of a financial leverage program (including the costs of offering preferred shares and notes) will be borne by Common Shareholders and consequently will result in a reduction of the NAV of the Common Shares. During periods in which the Fund is using leverage, the fees paid by the Fund for investment advisory services will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the investment advisory fees paid will be calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which includes proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes, so that the investment advisory fees payable to the Adviser will be higher when leverage is utilized. This will create a conflict of interest between the Adviser, on the one hand, and Common Shareholders, on the other hand. Fees and expenses in respect of financial leverage, as well as the investment advisory fee and all other expenses of the Fund, will be borne entirely by the Common Shareholders, and not by preferred shareholders, noteholders or any other leverage providers.

Any lender in connection with a credit facility may impose specific restrictions as a condition to borrowing. The credit facility fees may include, among other things, up front structuring fees and ongoing commitment fees (including fees on amounts undrawn on the facility) in addition to the traditional interest expense on amounts borrowed. The credit facility may involve a lien on the Fund's assets. The Fund is currently a party to the Credit Facility. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks for more information. Similarly, to the extent the Fund issues preferred shares or notes, the Fund currently intends to seek an AAA or equivalent credit rating from one or more NRSROs on any preferred shares or notes it issues and the Fund may be subject to fees, covenants and investment restrictions required by the NRSRO as a result. Such covenants and restrictions imposed by a NRSRO or lender may include asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed on the Fund by the 1940 Act. It is not anticipated that these covenants or restrictions will significantly impede the Adviser in managing the Fund's portfolio in accordance with its investment objectives and policies. Nonetheless, if these covenants or guidelines are more restrictive than those imposed by the 1940 Act, the Fund may not be able to utilize as much leverage as it otherwise could have, which could reduce the Fund's investment returns. See Description of Capital Structure Preferred Shares and Credit Facility/Commercial Paper Program/Notes.

The Fund also expects to enter into other transactions that may give rise to a form of leverage including, among others, swaps, futures and forward contracts, options and other derivative transactions. To the extent that the Fund covers its obligations under such other transactions, as described in this prospectus, such transactions should not be treated as borrowings for purposes of the 1940 Act. However, these transactions, even if covered, may represent a form of economic leverage and will create risks. The potential loss on derivative instruments may be substantial relative to the initial investment therein. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Portfolio Composition , Structured Products , Swaps and Other Derivative Instruments ; and Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Risks of Structured Products , Risks of Swaps and Risks of Other Derivative Instruments.

*Risks of Other Derivative Instruments.* The Fund may utilize options, forward contracts, futures contracts and options on futures contracts. These instruments involve risks, including the imperfect correlation between the value of such instruments and the underlying assets, the possible default by the counterparty to the transaction (*i.e.*, counterparty risk), illiquidity of the derivative instrument and, to the extent the prediction as to certain market movements is incorrect, the risk that the use of such instruments could result in losses greater than if they had not been used. In addition, transactions in such instruments may involve commissions and other costs, which may increase the Fund's expenses and reduce its return. Amounts paid as premiums and cash or other assets held in margin accounts with respect to such instruments are not otherwise available to the Fund for investment purposes.

Further, the use of such instruments by the Fund could create the possibility that losses on the instrument would be greater than gains in the value of the Fund's position. In addition, futures and options markets could be illiquid in some circumstances, and certain over-the-counter options could have no markets. As a result, in certain markets, the Fund might not be able to close out a position without incurring substantial losses. To the extent that the Fund utilizes forward contracts, futures contracts or options transactions for hedging, such transactions should tend to minimize the risk of loss due to a decline in the value of the hedged position and, at the same time, limit any potential gain to the Fund that might result from an increase in value of the position. In addition, the daily variation margin requirements for futures contracts create a greater ongoing potential financial risk than would purchases of call options, in which case the market exposure is limited to the cost of the initial premium and transaction costs. Losses resulting from

the use of hedging will reduce the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares, and possibly income, and the losses can be greater than if hedging had not been used. Forward contracts may limit gains on portfolio securities that could otherwise be realized had they not been utilized and could result in losses. The contracts may also increase the Fund's volatility and may involve a significant amount of risk relative to the investment of cash. The use of put and call options may result in losses to the Fund, force the sale of portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than at current market values, limit the amount of appreciation the Fund can realize on its investments or cause the Fund to hold a security it might otherwise sell. The Fund will be subject to credit risk with respect to the counterparties to any transactions in options, forward contracts, futures contracts or options on futures contracts. If a counterparty becomes bankrupt or otherwise fails to perform its obligations under a derivative contract due to financial difficulties, the Fund may experience significant delays in obtaining any recovery under the derivative contract in bankruptcy or other reorganization proceeding. The Fund may obtain only a limited recovery or may obtain no recovery in such circumstances.

When conducted outside the United States, transactions in options, forward contracts, futures contracts or options on futures contracts may not be regulated as rigorously as in the United States, may not involve a clearing mechanism and related guarantees, and are subject to the risk of governmental actions affecting trading in, or the prices of, foreign securities, currencies and other instruments. The value of such positions also could be adversely affected by: (i) other complex foreign political, legal and economic factors; (ii) lesser availability than in the United States of data on which to make trading decisions; (iii) delays in the Fund's ability to act upon economic events occurring in foreign markets during non-business hours in the United States; (iv) the imposition of different exercise and settlement terms and procedures and margin requirements than in the United States; and (v) lower trading volume and liquidity.

*Non-Diversification Risk.* The Fund is classified as "non-diversified" under the 1940 Act. As a result, it can invest a greater portion of its assets in obligations of a single issuer than a "diversified" fund. The Fund may therefore be more susceptible than a diversified fund to being adversely affected by a single corporate, economic, political or regulatory occurrence. The Fund, however, seeks to satisfy the less stringent diversification requirements of Subchapter M of the Code in order to qualify for the special tax treatment available to regulated investment companies. For a discussion of these diversification requirements, see "Tax Matters—Taxation of the Fund" in the SAI. In addition, because the Fund may invest a high percentage of its assets in a relatively small number of issuers, the Fund is more susceptible to any single economic, market, political or regulatory event affecting those issuers than is a more broadly diversified fund.

*Lender Liability Risk.* A number of U.S. judicial decisions have upheld judgments for borrowers against lending institutions on the basis of various evolving legal theories, collectively termed "lender liability." Generally, lender liability is founded on the premise that a lender has violated a duty (whether implied or contractual) of good faith, commercial reasonableness and fair dealing, or a similar duty owed to the borrower or has assumed an excessive degree of control over the borrower resulting in the creation of a fiduciary duty owed to the borrower or its other creditors or shareholders. Because of the nature of its investments, the Fund may be subject to allegations of lender liability.

In addition, under common law principles that in some cases form the basis for lender liability claims, if a lender or bondholder (a) intentionally takes an action that results in the undercapitalization of a borrower to the detriment of other creditors of such borrower, (b) engages in other inequitable conduct to the detriment of such other creditors, (c) engages in fraud with respect to, or makes misrepresentations to, such other creditors or (d) uses its influence as a stockholder to dominate or control a borrower to the detriment of other creditors of such borrower, a court may elect to subordinate the claim of the offending lender or bondholder to the claims of the disadvantaged creditor or creditors, a remedy called equitable subordination.

Because affiliates of, or persons related to, the Adviser may hold equity or other interests in obligors of the Fund, the Fund could be exposed to claims for equitable subordination or lender liability or both based on such equity or other holdings.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

*Net Asset Value Discount Risk.* Frequently, shares of closed-end investment companies, such as the Fund, trade at a price below their net asset value, commonly referred to as a discount. Historically, shares of closed-end funds have traded at a discount to their net asset value, and the Fund can provide no assurance that its Common Shares will trade at or above their NAV. The Fund's Common Shares frequently trade at a discount to NAV. Immediately following the offering, the NAV will be reduced by expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund (and the NAV will also reflect the fact that the proceeds from the offering were reduced by the sales load). Because the market price of the Fund's Common Shares may be determined by factors such as NAV, there is an increased risk that the Fund will trade below the Subscription Price and its current NAV for a period following the offering. Therefore, there is an added risk to investors who may sell their Common Shares shortly after the offering. Before making an investment decision, a prospective investor should consider the suitability of this investment with respect to the investor's investment objectives and personal situation. See Description of Capital Structure.

*Manager Risk.* As with any managed fund, the Adviser may not be successful in selecting the best-performing investments or investment techniques in managing the Fund's portfolio, and the Fund's performance may lag behind that of similar funds.

*Conflicts of Interest Risk.* Because the Adviser manages assets for other investment companies, pooled investment vehicles and/or other accounts (including institutional clients, pension plans and certain high net worth individuals), certain conflicts of interest are present. For instance, the Adviser receives fees from certain accounts that are higher than the fees received from the Fund, or

receives a performance-based fee on certain accounts. In those instances, the Adviser has an incentive to favor the higher and/or performance-based fee accounts over the Fund. In addition, a conflict of interest exists to the extent the Adviser has proprietary investments in certain accounts or where the portfolio manager or other employees of the Adviser have personal investments in certain accounts. The Adviser has an incentive to favor these accounts over the Fund. Because the Adviser manages accounts that engage in short sales of (or otherwise take short positions in) securities or other instruments of the type in which the Fund invests, the Adviser could be seen as harming the performance of the Fund for the benefit of the accounts taking short positions, if such short positions cause the market value of the securities to fall. The Adviser has adopted trade allocation and other policies and procedures that it believes are reasonably designed to address these and other conflicts of interest. These policies and procedures will have the effect of foreclosing certain investment opportunities for the Fund from time to time. The 20% overlap limit, discussed above, may have the same effect.

The Adviser manages assets for accounts other than the Fund, including private funds. The Adviser also currently serves as investment adviser to a registered, open-end management investment company, Avenue Mutual Funds Trust, including its series, the Avenue Credit Strategies Fund (the Fund, Avenue Mutual Funds Trust, and all other accounts managed by the Adviser or its affiliates, including private funds, are collectively referred to as "Avenue funds"). The expected risk and return profile for the Fund is generally lower than for most of the other Avenue funds. The Fund may invest in the same credit obligations as the Avenue funds, although their investments may include different obligations of the same issuer. For example, the Fund might invest in Senior Loans issued by a borrower and one or more Avenue funds might invest in the borrower's junior debt. In addition, the Adviser also manages certain accounts (including CLOs) that invest in certain types of credit obligations in which the Fund may also invest. Investment opportunities appropriate for both the Fund and another Avenue fund generally will be allocated between the Fund and the other Avenue fund in a manner that the Adviser believes to be fair and equitable under the circumstances, in accordance with the Adviser's trade allocation policies.

Conflicts of interest may arise where the Fund and other Avenue funds simultaneously hold securities representing different parts of the capital structure of a stressed or distressed issuer. In such circumstances, decisions made with respect to the securities held by one Avenue fund may cause (or have the potential to cause) harm to the different class of securities of the issuer held by other Avenue funds (including the Fund). For example, if such an issuer goes into bankruptcy or reorganization, becomes insolvent or otherwise experiences financial distress or is unable to meet its payment obligations or comply with covenants relating to credit obligations held by the Fund or by the other Avenue funds, such other Avenue funds may have an interest that conflicts with the interests of the Fund. If additional financing for such an issuer is necessary as a result of financial or other difficulties, it may not be in the best interests of the Fund to provide such additional financing, but if the other Avenue funds were to lose their respective investments as a result of such difficulties, the Adviser may have a conflict in recommending actions in the best interests of the Fund. In such situations, the Adviser will seek to act in the best interests of each of the Avenue funds (including the Fund) and will seek to resolve such conflicts in accordance with its compliance policies and procedures.

In addition, the 1940 Act limits the Fund's ability to enter into certain transactions with certain affiliates of the Adviser. As a result of these restrictions, the Fund may be prohibited from buying or selling any security directly from or to any portfolio company of a fund managed by the Adviser or one of its affiliates. Nonetheless, the Fund may under certain circumstances purchase any such portfolio company's loans or securities in the secondary market, which could create a conflict for the Adviser between the interests of the Fund and the portfolio company, in that the ability of the Adviser to recommend actions in the best interest of the Fund might be impaired. The 1940 Act also prohibits certain joint transactions with certain of the Fund's affiliates (which could include other Avenue funds), which could be deemed to include certain types of investments, or restructuring of investments, in the same portfolio company (whether at the same or different times). These limitations may limit the scope of investment opportunities that would otherwise be available to the Fund. The Board has approved policies and procedures reasonably designed to monitor potential conflicts of interest. The Board will review these procedures and any conflicts that may arise.

Although the professional staff of the Adviser will devote as much time to the management of the Fund as the Adviser deems appropriate to perform their duties in accordance with the investment advisory agreement and in accordance with reasonable commercial standards, the professional staff of the Adviser may have conflicts in allocating their time and services among the Fund and other Avenue funds. The Adviser and its affiliates are not restricted from forming additional investment funds, from entering into other investment advisory relationships or from engaging in other business activities, even though such activities may be in competition with the Fund and/or may involve substantial time and resources of the Adviser and its professional staff. These activities could be viewed as creating a conflict of interest in that the time and effort of the members of the Adviser and its officers and employees will not be devoted exclusively to the business of the Fund but will be allocated

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

between the business of the Fund and the management of the assets of other clients of the Adviser.

The Adviser or its respective members, officers, directors, employees, principals or affiliates may come into possession of material, non-public information. The possession of such information may limit the ability of the Fund to buy or sell a security or otherwise to participate in an investment opportunity. Situations may occur where the Fund could be disadvantaged because of the investment activities conducted by the Adviser for other clients, and the Adviser will not employ information barriers with regard to its operations on behalf of its registered and private funds, or other accounts. In certain circumstances, employees of the Adviser may serve as board members or in other capacities for portfolio or potential portfolio companies, which could restrict the Fund's ability to trade in the securities of such companies.

*Repurchase Agreements and Reverse Repurchase Agreements Risk.* The Fund may invest in repurchase agreements and reverse repurchase agreements. In its purchase of repurchase agreements, the Fund does not bear the risk of a decline in the value of the underlying security unless the seller defaults under its repurchase obligation. In the event of the bankruptcy or other default of a seller of a repurchase agreement, the Fund could experience both delays in liquidating the underlying securities and losses, including possible decline in the value of the underlying security during the period while the Fund seeks to enforce its rights thereto, possible lack of access to income on the underlying security during this period, and expenses of enforcing its rights. A repurchase agreement effectively represents a loan from the Fund to the seller under the agreement.

The Fund's use of reverse repurchase agreements involve many of the same risks involved in the Fund's use of financial leverage, as the proceeds from reverse repurchase agreements generally will be invested in additional securities. There is a risk that the market value of the securities acquired in the reverse repurchase agreement may decline below the price of the securities that the Fund has sold but remains obligated to repurchase. In addition, there is a risk that the market value of the securities retained by the Fund may decline. If the buyer of securities under a reverse repurchase agreement were to file for bankruptcy or experience insolvency, the Fund may be adversely affected. Also, in entering into reverse repurchase agreements, the Fund would bear the risk of loss to the extent that the proceeds of the reverse repurchase agreement are less than the value of the underlying securities. In addition, due to the interest costs associated with reverse repurchase agreements, the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares will decline, and, in some cases, the investment performance of the Fund would be less favorable than it would have been if the Fund had not used such instruments. A reverse repurchase agreement effectively represents a loan from the buyer to the Fund under the agreement.

*Certain Affiliations Risk.* Certain broker-dealers, including major ones, may be considered to be affiliated persons of the Fund or the Adviser. Absent an exemption from the SEC or other regulatory relief, the Fund is generally precluded from effecting certain principal transactions with affiliated brokers, and its ability to purchase securities being underwritten by an affiliated broker or syndicate including an affiliated broker or to utilize affiliated brokers for agency transactions is subject to restrictions. This could limit the Fund's ability to engage in securities transactions and take advantage of market opportunities.

*Additional Risks.* For a discussion of additional risks, see Risk Factors.

Fund expenses

**Common Shareholder transaction expenses**

|                                                                  |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Sales load (as a percentage of the Subscription Price)(1)        | [ ]     |
| Offering expenses (as a percentage of the Subscription Price)(1) | [ ]     |
| Dividend reinvestment plan fees                                  | None(2) |

**Annual expenses  
(as a percentage of net assets  
attributable to  
Common Shares)(4)**

|                                                      |        |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Advisory fee(4)                                      | [ ]%   |
| Interest expenses on bank borrowings(3)              | [ ]%   |
| Other expenses(5)                                    | [ ]%   |
| Total annual expenses(6)                             | [ ]%   |
| Less: expense reimbursement(7)                       | ([ ])% |
| Total annual expenses after expense reimbursement(5) | [ ]%   |

The purpose of the tables above and the example below is to help you understand the fees and expenses that you, as an investor in the Fund through the exercise of Rights, would bear directly or indirectly. The expenses shown in the table under "Other expenses", are estimated for the Fund's current fiscal year, based on the Fund's expenses during the period from [ ] through [ ] and assume that the Fund issues approximately [ ] Common Shares in this Offer. The expenses shown in the table under "Interest expenses on bank borrowings", "Total annual expenses" and "Total annual expenses after expense reimbursement" are estimated based on the Fund's average net assets for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013 of \$[ ]. The tables also reflect the estimated use of leverage by the Fund through bank borrowings representing in the aggregate 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets (including the assets subject to, and obtained with the proceeds of, such borrowings), and show Fund expenses as a percentage of net assets attributable to Common Shares.

(1) The Fund has agreed to pay the Dealer Manager for its financial structuring and solicitation services a fee equal to [ ]% of the aggregate Subscription Price for the Common Shares issued pursuant to the Offer (i.e., the sales load) and to reimburse the Dealer Manager for its out-of-pocket expenses up to \$[ ]. The Fund will also pay expenses relating to the printing or other production, mailing and delivery expenses incurred in connection with materials related to the Offer, including all reasonable out-of-pocket fees and expenses, if any and not to exceed \$[ ], incurred by the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members (as defined below), Soliciting Dealers (as defined below) and other brokers, dealers and financial institutions in connection with their customary mailing and handling of materials related to the Offer to their customers. In addition, the Fund has agreed to pay a fee to each of the Subscription Agent and the Information Agent estimated to be \$[ ] and \$[ ], respectively, plus reimbursement for their out-of-pocket expenses related to the Offer. Total offering expenses (not including the sales load) are estimated to be \$[ ], which assumes that the Offer is fully subscribed. The fee paid to the Dealer Manager is reflected in the table under "Sales load" and the other fees and expenses described in this note are reflected in the table under "Offering expenses". The sales load and the offering expenses will be borne by the Fund and indirectly by all of the Fund's Common Shareholders, including those who do not exercise their Rights and will result in a reduction of the NAV of the Common Shares. See "Distribution Arrangements."

(2) You will pay a brokerage commission if you direct the Plan Agent (as defined under "Dividend reinvestment plan") to sell your Common Shares held in a dividend reinvestment account.

(3) For the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013, the Fund had approximately \$[ ] in average daily borrowings outstanding under its Credit Facility (representing approximately [ ]% of the average daily value of the Fund's Managed Assets during such period) at an average

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

annual interest rate of [ ]%. For purposes of preparing this table, the Fund has assumed that it will use leverage through bank borrowings representing in the aggregate 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets (including the assets subject to, and obtained with the proceeds of, such borrowings) at terms similar to the existing Credit Facility. There can be no assurances that the Fund will be able to obtain such level of borrowing (or to maintain its current level of borrowing), that the terms under which the Fund borrows will not change, or that the Fund's use of leverage will be profitable. The expenses shown under "Interest expense on bank borrowings" in the table above includes the expected interest expense on the maximum amount to which the Fund intends to borrow during the next twelve months, and the Fund currently intends during the next twelve months (i) to maintain a similar proportionate amount of borrowings but may increase such amount to 33 1/3% of the average daily value of the Fund's total assets and (ii) not to issue preferred shares.

(4) The Adviser receives a monthly fee at an annual rate of 1.25% of the average daily value of the Fund's Managed Assets. The advisory fee percentage calculation assumes the use of leverage by the Fund as discussed in note (3). To derive the annual advisory fee as a percentage of the Fund's net assets (which are the Fund's total assets less all of the Fund's liabilities), the Fund's average Managed Assets for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013 (plus (i) the estimated proceeds of this Offer if fully subscribed as described in note (6) and (ii) leverage in the amount of 33 1/3% of such proceeds (after giving effect to such leverage)) were multiplied by the annual advisory fee rate and then divided by the Fund's average net assets for the same period (plus the estimated proceeds of this Offer if fully subscribed as described in note (6)).

(5) Does not include the sales load or other expenses of the Fund incurred in connection with the Offer, estimated at \$[ ] and \$[ ], respectively. However, these expenses will be borne by all holders of the Common Shares, including those who do not exercise their Rights, and result in a reduction of the NAV of the Common Shares.

(6) The [ ]% expense ratio assumes that the Offer is fully subscribed, yielding estimated net proceeds of approximately \$[ ] (assuming a Subscription Price of \$[ ] as of [ ], 2014), and that, as a result, based on the Fund's average net assets for fiscal year ended October 31, 2013 of \$[ ], the net assets attributable to Common Shareholders would be \$[ ] upon completion of the Offer. It also assumes that net assets attributable to Common Shareholders will not increase or decrease due to currency fluctuations. If the Offer is not fully subscribed, or if the Fund increases the amount of money that it borrows, the amount of expenses

borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders will increase.

(7) The Adviser has contractually agreed to reimburse the Fund so that total other expenses (as a percentage of net assets attributable to Common Shares of the Fund) are limited to 0.50% through February 28, 2015 (excluding (i) interest, taxes, brokerage commissions and expenditures capitalized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, (ii) portfolio transactions and investment related expenses and (iii) extraordinary expenses not incurred in the ordinary course of the Fund's business). The Fund may repay any such reimbursement from the Adviser if, within three years of the reimbursement, the Fund could repay the Adviser without causing the Fund's total other expenses (as a percentage of net assets attributable to Common Shares of the Fund) to exceed 0.50% for the fiscal year in which such repayment would occur when such amount repaid to the Adviser is included in the Fund's total other expenses. During the Fund's first fiscal year (period ending October 31, 2011), the Adviser reimbursed the Fund \$502,176, during the Fund's second fiscal year (period ending October 31, 2012), the Adviser reimbursed the Fund \$414,490, during the Fund's third fiscal year (period ending October 31, 2013), the Adviser reimbursed the Fund \$[ ], and for the Fund's current fiscal year (period ending October 31, 2014), the Adviser, as of [ ], has reimbursed the Fund \$[ ]. Under the terms of such reimbursement agreement, if the Fund's expense ratio declines sufficiently, the Fund may be liable to the Adviser to repay such reimbursed amounts until (i) no later than October 31, 2014] in the case of amounts reimbursed during the first fiscal year, (ii) no later than October 31, 2015, in the case of amounts reimbursed during the second fiscal year, (iii) no later than October 31, 2013, in the case of amounts reimbursed during the third fiscal year and (iii) no later than [ ], 2017, in the case of amounts reimbursed during the current fiscal year, as of [ ], 2014. Thus, until those amounts are repaid, the Fund and the Common Shareholders will not enjoy any benefit of any reduced expenses per Common Share that may result from the Offer. Because interest expenses and investment related expenses are not subject to the reimbursement agreement, interest expenses and investment related expenses are included in the Total annual expenses after expense reimbursement line item.

The Fund's current reimbursement agreement expires on February 28, 2015.

### Example

An investor would directly or indirectly pay the following expenses on a \$1,000 investment in the Fund, assuming a 5% annual return. This example assumes that (i) all dividends and other distributions are reinvested at NAV, (ii) the percentage amounts listed under Annual Expenses above remain the same in the years shown, (iii) the expense reimbursement agreement is only in effect in year 1, and (iv) the Offer is fully subscribed as described in note (6) above. This example reflects all recurring and non-recurring fees, including payment of the [ ]% sales load and other expenses incurred in connection with the Offer. For more complete descriptions of certain of the Fund's costs and expenses, see Management of the Fund Advisory Agreement.

The example should not be considered a representation of future expenses or rate of return and actual Fund expenses may be greater or less than those shown.

| 1 Year | 3 Years | 5 Years | 10 Years |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|
| [ ]    | [ ]     | [ ]     | [ ]      |

# Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

## Financial highlights

The following is the selected financial data per Common Share throughout each period, which have been audited by [ ], the Fund's independent registered public accounting firm. This information should be read in conjunction with the audited financial statements and accompanying notes thereto for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013, which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

|                                                                                                            | Year Ended<br>October 31, 2013 | Year Ended<br>October 31, 2012 | For the period<br>January 27, 2011*-<br>October 31, 2011 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Net asset value, beginning of period</b>                                                                | \$ 18.46                       | \$ 17.22                       | \$ 19.10(1)                                              |
| <b>Income (loss) from investment operations:</b>                                                           |                                |                                |                                                          |
| Net investment income(2)                                                                                   | 1.56                           | 1.51                           | 1.01                                                     |
| Net realized and unrealized gain (loss)                                                                    | 1.02                           | 2.13                           | (1.94)                                                   |
| Total from investment operations                                                                           | 2.58                           | 3.64                           | (0.93)                                                   |
| <b>Distributions to shareholders from:</b>                                                                 |                                |                                |                                                          |
| Net investment income                                                                                      | (1.39)                         | (1.46)                         | (0.91)                                                   |
| Net realized gains                                                                                         | (0.05)                         |                                |                                                          |
| Total distributions                                                                                        | (1.44)                         | (1.46)                         | (0.91)                                                   |
| <b>Capital Share Transactions</b>                                                                          |                                |                                |                                                          |
| Dilutive effect on net asset value as a result of rights offering                                          | (0.93)                         | (0.90)                         |                                                          |
| Offering costs charged to paid-in-capital                                                                  | (0.04)                         | (0.04)                         | (0.04)                                                   |
| <b>Net asset value, end of period</b>                                                                      | \$ 18.63                       | \$ 18.46                       | \$ 17.22                                                 |
| <b>Market value, end of period</b>                                                                         | \$ 17.20                       | \$ 18.22                       | \$ 16.40                                                 |
| <b>Total return on net asset value(3)</b>                                                                  | 9.29%(6)                       | 16.94%(5)                      | (5.12)%(4)                                               |
| <b>Total return on market value(3)</b>                                                                     | 2.23%(6)                       | 21.19%(5)                      | (13.71)%(4)                                              |
| Net assets, end of period (in 000 s)                                                                       | \$ 243,601                     | \$ 180,991                     | \$ 126,587                                               |
| Ratio of expenses to average net assets                                                                    | 2.70%                          | 2.50%                          | 2.50%(7)                                                 |
| Ratio of expenses to average net assets excluding interest expense, commitment fee and loan servicing fees | 2.27%                          | 2.12%                          | 2.09%(7)                                                 |
| Ratio of net investment income to average net assets                                                       | 8.40%                          | 8.61%                          | 7.28%(7)                                                 |
| <b>Ratios before expense limitation:</b>                                                                   |                                |                                |                                                          |
| Ratio of expenses to average net assets                                                                    | 2.62%                          | 2.77%                          | 3.00%(7)                                                 |
| Ratio of net investment income to average net assets                                                       | 8.46%                          | 8.34%                          | 6.78%(7)                                                 |
| Portfolio turnover rate                                                                                    | 89%                            | 60%                            | 56%(4)                                                   |
| Loans Outstanding, End of Year (000s)                                                                      | \$ 95,000                      | \$ 59,000                      | \$ 43,000                                                |
| Asset Coverage per \$1,000 unit of senior indebtedness(8)                                                  | \$ 3,564                       | \$ 4,068                       | \$ 3,944                                                 |

\* Commencement of operations.

(1) Net asset value at beginning of period reflects the deduction of the underwriters discount of \$0.90 per share from the \$20.00 offering price.

(2) Per share amounts have been calculated using average shares outstanding.

(3) Total market value return is computed based upon the New York Stock Exchange market price of the Fund's shares and excludes the effects of brokerage commissions. Total net asset value return measures the changes in value over the period indicated, taking into account dividends as reinvested. Dividends and distributions are assumed for purposes of these calculations to be reinvested at prices obtained under the Fund's dividend reinvestment plan.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

(4) Not annualized.

(5) Includes dilution (net of offering costs) of approximately \$0.94 to N.A.V. per share resulting from the Fund's transferrable rights offering, which expired on March 23, 2012. In connection with such offering, the Fund issued 2,450,466 additional common shares at a subscription price per share below the then-current N.A.V. per share of the Fund.

(6) Includes dilution (net of offering costs) of approximately \$0.97 to N.A.V. per share resulting from the Fund's transferrable rights offering, which expired on May 17, 2013. In connection with such offering, the Fund issued 3,268,518 additional common shares at a subscription price per share below the then-current N.A.V. per share of the Fund.

(7) Annualized.

(8) Calculated by subtracting the Fund's total liabilities (not including borrowings) from the Fund's total assets and dividing by the total number of senior indebtedness units, where one unit equals \$1,000 of senior indebtedness.

Note: Contained above is operating performance for a Common Share outstanding, total investment return, ratios to average net assets of Common Shareholders and other supplemental data for the period indicated. This information has been determined based upon financial information provided in the financial statements and market value data for the Fund's Common Shares.

The Offer

**PURPOSE OF THE OFFER**

The Board, based on the recommendations and presentations of Avenue Capital Management II, L.P., the Fund's Adviser and others, has determined that it is in the best interests of the Fund and its Common Shareholders to increase the assets of the Fund available for investment and thereby to conduct the Offer. In making this determination, the Board considered a number of factors, including potential benefits and costs. In particular, the Board considered the Adviser's belief that the Offer would better enable the Fund to take advantage more fully of existing and future investment opportunities that may be or may become available, consistent with the Fund's primary investment objective to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation.

In making its determination that the Offer is in the best interests of the Fund and its Common Shareholders, the Board considered (in addition to the Adviser's belief as to the potential investment opportunity) various factors, including (i) the size, pricing and structure of the Offer, (ii) that the Offer, if it is well-subscribed, could increase the liquidity of the Common Shares on the NYSE, where the Fund's Common Shares are traded; (iii) the opportunity the Offer represents for current shareholders to buy shares at a discount to net asset value or market price, or, in many cases, both; (iv) the costs of the Offer, including dilution of Common Shareholders' interests through the Offer and fees paid to the Dealer Manager; and (v) the possible negative effect on the market price of Common Shares the Offer may have. The Board also considered the Prior Offers, including: (i) the percentage of existing shareholders that exercised the rights; (ii) the size of the offering and net proceeds to the Fund; (iii) the dilutive effect of the Prior Offers; (iv) the offering expenses incurred; and (v) the investments made by the Fund with the proceeds and the Fund's subsequent performance. In the 2012 Prior Offer, Common Shareholders of record on February 24, 2012 were issued one transferable right for each Common Share held, and [each Common Shareholder holding rights was entitled to subscribe for one Common Share for every three rights held for a subscription price based on substantially the same formula as the current Formula Price]. The 2012 Prior Offer expired on March 23, 2012. The Board noted that the 2012 Prior Offer was fully subscribed, resulting in the Fund issuing 2,450,466 additional Common Shares. In the 2013 Prior Offer, Common Shareholders of record on April 22, 2013 were issued one transferable right for each Common Share held, and [each Common Shareholder holding rights was entitled to subscribe for one Common Share for every three rights held for a subscription price based on substantially the same formula as the current Formula Price]. The 2013 Prior Offer expired on May 17, 2013. The Board noted that the 2013 Prior Offer was fully subscribed, resulting in the Fund issuing 3,268,518 additional Common Shares. Although the Fund has no present intention to do so, the Fund may, in the future and in its discretion, choose to make additional rights offerings from time to time for a number of shares and on terms which may or may not be similar to the Offer. Any such future rights offering will be made in accordance with the 1940 Act, and will result in an immediate dilution of NAV for all Common Shareholders if the subscription price for such offering is less than the NAV. There can be no assurance that the Offer (or the investment of the proceeds of the Offer) will be successful or that the level of trading of our Common Shares on the NYSE will increase. For a discussion of the potential impact of the Offer on current Common Shareholders, such as dilution, see Risk Factors.

The Adviser believes that a variety of factors indicate that there may be a robust opportunity to invest in U.S. and European high yield and leveraged loan instruments. Due to a combination of macroeconomic developments in the United States and Europe and the Adviser's credit analysis of companies in those underlying geographies, the Adviser believes that now may be an opportune time for the Fund to raise additional assets and to seek attractive investment opportunities which may enhance the Fund's prospective risk-adjusted returns. In addition, the Adviser expects that a number of upcoming U.S. high yield bond and institutional maturities in a less than favorable capital markets environment may create investment opportunities for the Fund. Further, the Adviser expects that the European sovereign debt crisis and potential European bank deleveraging may force these institutions to sell assets and enable the Fund to take advantage of such opportunities. Using the proceeds of the Offer, the Fund will seek to capitalize on these developments and enhance its returns by making investments in companies the Adviser believes offer attractive opportunities for yield enhancement and/or net asset value appreciation potential. In making such investments, the Fund will seek to capitalize on market inefficiencies and to reallocate the portfolio of the Fund to opportunistically emphasize those investments, geographies and categories of investments believed to be best suited to the current investment and interest rate environment and market outlook.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Adviser expects that the Offer will provide an opportunity to increase the assets of the Fund available for investment, thereby better enabling the Fund to take advantage more fully of existing and future investment opportunities that may be or may become available, consistent with the Fund's primary investment objective to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation. The Adviser has an inherent conflict of interest in recommending the Offer because the Fund pays fees to the Adviser based on a percentage of the Fund's Managed Assets (the greater the Managed Assets of the Fund, the greater the compensation paid to the Adviser).

The Offer seeks to provide an opportunity to existing Common Shareholders to purchase Common Shares at a discount to market price. The distribution to Common Shareholders of transferable Rights, which may themselves have intrinsic value, also will afford non-participating Common Shareholders of record on the Record Date, the potential of receiving cash payment upon the sale of the Rights, receipt of which may be viewed as partial compensation for any dilution of their interests that may occur as a result of the

Offer. There can be no assurance that a market for the Rights will develop or, if such a market does develop, what the price of the Rights will be.

## STRUCTURE OF THE OFFER

The Board retained [ ], the Dealer Manager for the Offer, to provide the Fund with financial structuring and solicitation services relating to the Offer, including advice with respect to the structure, timing and terms of the Offer. In determining the structure of the Offer, the Board considered, among other things, the extent of dilution and expenses of the Offer (including the fees to be paid to the Dealer Manager), the trading market described by the Dealer Manager, using a fixed pricing versus variable pricing mechanism, the benefits and drawbacks of conducting a non-transferable versus a transferable rights offering, the effect on the Fund and its existing Common Shareholders if the Offer is not fully subscribed and the experience of the Dealer Manager in conducting rights offerings.

**Although the Fund has no present intention to do so, the Fund may, in the future and in its discretion, choose to make additional rights offerings from time to time for a number of shares and on terms which may or may not be similar to the Offer. Any such future rights offering will be made in accordance with the 1940 Act, and will result in an immediate dilution of NAV for all Common Shareholders if the subscription price for such offering is less than the NAV.**

## IMPORTANT TERMS OF THE OFFER

The Fund is issuing to Record Date Common Shareholders transferable Rights to subscribe for an aggregate of [ ] Common Shares. Each Record Date Common Shareholder is being issued one transferable Right for each whole Common Share owned on the Record Date. The Rights entitle each Record Date Common Shareholder to acquire one Common Share at the Subscription Price for every [ ] Rights held (1-for-[ ]). Rights may be exercised at any time during the subscription period, which commences on [ ], 2014, the Record Date, and ends at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014, the Expiration Date, unless extended by the Fund.

The Rights are transferable and will be admitted for trading on the NYSE under the symbol [ACP RT] during the course of the Offer. Trading in the Rights on the NYSE is expected to be conducted until the close of trading on the NYSE on the last business day prior to the Expiration Date. See Transferability and Sale of Rights below. The Fund's outstanding Common Shares are listed and the Common Shares issued pursuant to the exercise of the rights, once issued, will be listed on the NYSE. The Fund's Common Shares trade under the symbol ACP. The Rights will be evidenced by subscription certificates which will be mailed to Record Date Common Shareholders, except as discussed below under Foreign Common Shareholders.

The Fund will not issue fractional Common Shares upon the exercise of Rights; accordingly, Rights may be exercised only in multiples of [ ], except that any Record Date Common Shareholder who is issued fewer than [ ] Rights will be able to subscribe for one Common Share. Record Date Common Shareholders who hold two or more accounts may not combine their fractional interests across accounts.

The Rights are transferable. Rights holders who are not Record Date Common Shareholders may purchase Common Shares as described above (the Primary Subscription), but are not entitled to subscribe for Common Shares pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege. Record Date Common Shareholders and Rights holders who purchase Common Shares in the Primary Subscription and Record Date Common Shareholders who purchase Common Shares pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege are hereinafter referred to as Exercising Rights Holders.

Common Shares not subscribed for during the Primary Subscription will be offered, by means of the Over-Subscription Privilege, to Record Date Common Shareholders who fully exercise the Rights issued to them pursuant to the Offer (other than those Rights to acquire less than one Common Share, which cannot be exercised) and who wish to acquire more than the number of Common Shares they are entitled to purchase pursuant to the exercise of their Rights, subject to certain limitations and subject to allotment. Investors who are not Record Date Common Shareholders are not entitled to subscribe for any Common Shares pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege. See Over-Subscription Privilege below.

For purposes of determining the number of Common Shares a Record Date Common Shareholder may acquire pursuant to the Offer, broker-dealers, trust companies, banks or others whose Common Shares are held of record by Cede & Co. ( Cede ) or by any other depository or nominee will be deemed to be the holders of the Rights that are issued to Cede or the other depository or nominee on their behalf.

Rights may be exercised by completing a subscription certificate and delivering it, together with payment at the estimated Subscription Price, to the Subscription Agent. A Rights holder will have no right to rescind a purchase after the Subscription Agent has received a completed subscription certificate together with payment for the Common Shares offered pursuant to the Offer, except as provided under Notice of NAV Decline. Rights holders who exercise their Rights will not know at the time of exercise the Subscription Price of the Common Shares being acquired and will be required initially to pay for both the Common Shares subscribed for during the subscription period and, if eligible, any additional Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege at the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] per Common Share. The Fund will pay a sales load on

the Subscription Price. For a discussion of the method by which Rights may be exercised and Common Shares paid for, see The Offer Methods for Exercising Rights and The Offer Payment for Common Shares.

There is no minimum number of Rights which must be exercised in order for the Offer to close. The Fund will bear the expenses of the Offer, which will be paid from the proceeds of the Offer. These expenses include, but are not limited to, the expenses of preparing and printing the prospectus for the Offer, the Dealer Manager fee, and the expenses of Fund counsel and the Fund's independent registered public accounting firm in connection with the Offer.

## SUBSCRIPTION PRICE

The Subscription Price for the Common Shares to be issued pursuant to the Offer will be determined based upon the Formula Price. If, however, the Formula Price is less than [ ]% of the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares at the close of trading on the NYSE on the Expiration Date, then the Subscription Price will be [ ]% of the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares at the close of trading on the NYSE on that day. The Fund will pay a sales load on the Subscription Price. For example, assuming the Expiration Date were [ ], 2014, if the average of the last reported sale prices of a Common Share on the NYSE on the Expiration Date and the preceding four (4) trading days is \$[ ], the Subscription Price would be \$[ ] per Common Share ([ ]% of \$[ ]). Since the Expiration Date will be [ ], 2014 (unless the Fund extends the subscription period), Rights holders will not know the Subscription Price at the time of exercise and will be required initially to pay for both the Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Primary Subscription and, if eligible, any additional Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege at the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] per Common Share. See Payment for Common Shares below. Rights holders who exercise their Rights will have no right to rescind a purchase after receipt of their completed subscription certificates together with payment for Common Shares by the Subscription Agent. The Fund does not have the right to withdraw the Rights or cancel the Offer after the Rights have been distributed. All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights.

The Fund announced the terms of the Offer after the close of trading on the NYSE on [ ], 2014. The NAV of the Fund's Common Shares at the close of business on [ ], 2014 (the last trading date on which the Fund publicly reported its NAV prior to the date of the announcement), and on [ ], 2014 (the date of this prospectus) was \$[ ] and \$[ ], respectively, and the last reported sales price of a Common Share on the NYSE on those dates was \$[ ] and \$[ ], respectively.

## OVER-SUBSCRIPTION PRIVILEGE

Common Shares not subscribed for by Rights holders (the Excess Common Shares ) will be offered, by means of the Over-Subscription Privilege, to the Record Date Common Shareholders who have fully exercised the Rights issued to them (other than those Rights that cannot be exercised because they represent the right to acquire less than one Common Share) and who wish to acquire more than the number of Common Shares they are entitled to purchase pursuant to the Primary Subscription. Record Date Common Shareholders should indicate on the subscription certificate, which they submit with respect to the exercise of the Rights issued to them, how many Excess Common Shares they are willing to acquire pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege. If sufficient Excess Common Shares remain, all such Record Date Common Shareholders' over-subscription requests will be honored in full. If requests from such Record Date Common Shareholders for Common Shares pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege exceed the Excess Common Shares available, the available Excess Common Shares will be allocated pro rata among Record Date Common Shareholders who oversubscribe based on the number of Rights originally issued to such Record Date Common Shareholders. The percentage of remaining Common Shares each over-subscribing Record Date Common Shareholder may acquire will be rounded down to result in delivery of whole Common Shares. The allocation process may involve a series of allocations to assure that the total number of Common Shares available for over-subscriptions is distributed on a *pro rata* basis.

Banks, broker-dealers, trustees and other nominee holders of Rights will be required to certify to the Subscription Agent, before any Over-Subscription Privilege may be exercised with respect to any particular beneficial owner, as to the aggregate number of Rights exercised pursuant to the Primary Subscription and the number of Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege by such beneficial owner and that such beneficial owner's Primary Subscription was exercised in full. Nominee Holder Over-Subscription Forms and Beneficial Owner Certification Forms will be distributed to banks, brokers, trustees and other nominee holders of Rights with the subscription certificates.

The Fund will not offer or sell any Common Shares that are not subscribed for pursuant to the Primary Subscription or the Over-Subscription Privilege.

#### **EXPIRATION OF THE OFFER**

The Offer will expire at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [        ], 2014, the Expiration Date, unless extended by the Fund.

Rights will expire without value on the Expiration Date (including any extension); they may not be exercised thereafter. Any extension of the Offer will be followed as promptly as practicable by announcement thereof, and in no event later than 9:00 a.m., New York City time, on the next business day following the previously scheduled Expiration Date. Without limiting the manner in

which the Fund may choose to make such announcement, the Fund will not, unless otherwise required by law, have any obligation to publish, advertise or otherwise communicate any such announcement other than by making a release to the Dow Jones News Service or such other means of announcement as the Fund deems appropriate. The Fund may extend the Offer in its sole discretion for any reason, including as a result of a decline in the Fund's NAV as described below in Notice of NAV Decline.

## TRANSFERABILITY AND SALE OF RIGHTS

**The Rights are transferable until the last business day prior to the Expiration Date, which is [ ], 2014, unless extended. We may, however, extend the expiration of the Offer.**

The Rights are transferable and will be admitted for trading on the NYSE under the symbol [ACP RT] during the course of the Offer. The Rights will be admitted for trading on the NYSE on a when-issued basis from [ ], 2014 through [ ]; thereafter, they will trade the regular way through [ ], 2014 (one (1) business day prior to the Expiration Date (including extensions)). You are encouraged to contact your broker, bank or financial adviser for more information about trading the Rights. We will seek to ensure that an adequate trading market for the Rights will exist by requesting that the Rights be traded on the NYSE and by retaining the Dealer Manager, the Subscription Agent and the Information Agent, but we cannot assure you that a market for the Rights will develop. Assuming a market exists for the Rights, you may purchase and sell the Rights through the usual brokerage channels or sell the Rights through the Subscription Agent.

### Sales through the Subscription Agent

Record Date Common Shareholders who do not wish to exercise any or all of their Rights may instruct the Subscription Agent to try to sell any Rights they do not intend to exercise themselves. Subscription certificates evidencing the Rights to be sold by the Subscription Agent must be received by the Subscription Agent on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014 (or, if the subscription period is extended, on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, two (2) business days prior to the extended Expiration Date). Upon the timely receipt by the Subscription Agent of appropriate instructions to sell Rights, the Subscription Agent will ask the Dealer Manager if it will purchase the Rights. If the Dealer Manager purchases the Rights, the sales price paid by the Dealer Manager will be based upon the then current market price for the Rights. The proceeds from each of such sales to the Dealer Manager will be remitted to the Subscription Agent, which will hold such proceeds in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to each selling Record Date Common Shareholder. It is expected that following each such sale of Rights to the Dealer Manager, the proceeds from each such sale will be received by the Subscription Agent within three (3) business days of the sale and that the proceeds will then be remitted to the selling Record Date Common Shareholder within three (3) business days of receipt by the Subscription Agent.

If the Dealer Manager declines to purchase the Rights of a Record Date Common Shareholder that have been duly submitted to the Subscription Agent for sale, the Subscription Agent will attempt to sell such Rights in the open market. If the Rights can be sold in such manner, all of such sales will be deemed to have been effected at the weighted-average price of all Rights sold by the Subscription Agent in such open market transactions throughout the subscription period. The proceeds from such sales will be held by the Subscription Agent in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to the selling Record Date Common Shareholders. It is expected that the proceeds of such open market sales will be remitted by the Subscription Agent to the selling Record Date Common Shareholders within five (5) business days following the Expiration Date.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Subscription Agent will also attempt to sell (either to the Dealer Manager or in open market transactions as described above) all Rights which remain unclaimed as a result of subscription certificates being returned by the postal authorities to the Subscription Agent as undeliverable as of the fourth (4th) business day prior to the Expiration Date. The Subscription Agent will hold the proceeds from those sales in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds for the benefit of such non-claiming Record Date Common Shareholders until such proceeds are either claimed or revert to the state.

There can be no assurance that the Subscription Agent will be able to sell any Rights, and neither the Fund nor the Subscription Agent has guaranteed any minimum sales price for the Rights. If a Record Date Common Shareholder does not utilize the services of the Subscription Agent and chooses to use another broker-dealer or other financial institution to sell Rights, then the other broker-dealer or financial institution may charge a fee to sell the Rights.

### **Other transfers**

The Rights evidenced by a subscription certificate may be transferred in whole by endorsing the subscription certificate for transfer in accordance with the accompanying instructions. A portion of the Rights evidenced by a single subscription certificate (but not fractional Rights) may be transferred by delivering to the Subscription Agent a subscription certificate properly endorsed for transfer, with instructions to register such portion of the Rights evidenced thereby in the name of the transferee and to issue a new subscription certificate to the transferee evidencing such transferred Rights. In such event, a new subscription certificate evidencing the balance of the Rights, if any, will be issued to the Record Date Common Shareholder or, if the Record Date Common Shareholder so instructs, to an additional transferee. The signature on the subscription certificate must correspond to the name as set forth upon the face of the subscription certificate in every particular, without alteration or enlargement, or any change. A signature

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

guarantee must be provided by an eligible financial institution as defined in Rule 17Ad-15 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the Exchange Act ), subject to the standards and procedures adopted by the Fund.

Record Date Common Shareholders wishing to transfer all or a portion of their Rights should allow at least five (5) business days prior to the Expiration Date for (i) the transfer instructions to be received and processed by the Subscription Agent; (ii) a new subscription certificate to be issued and transmitted to the transferee or transferees with respect to transferred Rights, and to the transferor with respect to retained Rights, if any; and (iii) the Rights evidenced by such new subscription certificate to be exercised or sold by each recipient thereof. Neither the Fund, the Subscription Agent nor the Dealer Manager shall have any liability to a transferee or transferor of Rights if subscription certificates are not received in time for exercise or sale prior to the Expiration Date.

Except for the fees charged by the Subscription Agent and Dealer Manager (which will be paid by the Fund), the transferor of the Rights shall be responsible for all commissions, fees and other expenses (including brokerage commissions and transfer taxes) incurred or charged in connection with the purchase, sale or exercise of Rights. Neither we nor the Subscription Agent nor the Dealer Manager will pay such commissions, fees or expenses. Investors who wish to purchase, sell, exercise or transfer Rights through a broker, bank or other party should first inquire about any fees and expenses that the investor will incur in connection with the transaction.

The Fund anticipates that the Rights will be eligible for transfer through, and that the exercise of the Primary Subscription (but not the Over-Subscription Privilege) may be effected through, the facilities of the Depository Trust Company ( DTC ) or through the Subscription Agent. Eligible Record Date Common Shareholders may exercise the Over-Subscription Privilege in respect of exercised Rights by properly executing and delivering to the Subscription Agent, at or prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date, a Nominee Holder over-subscription certificate or a substantially similar form satisfactory to the Subscription Agent, together with payment of the Subscription Price for the number of Common Shares for which the Over-Subscription Privilege is to be exercised.

### **METHODS FOR EXERCISING RIGHTS**

Rights are evidenced by new subscription certificates that, except as described below under Foreign Common Shareholders, will be mailed to Record Date Common Shareholders or, if a Record Date Common Shareholder's Common Shares are held by Cede or any other depository or nominee on their behalf, to Cede or such depository or nominee. Rights may be exercised by completing and signing the subscription certificate that accompanies this prospectus and mailing it in the envelope provided, or otherwise delivering the completed and signed subscription certificate to the Subscription Agent, together with payment in full for the Common Shares at the Subscription Price by the Expiration Date.

Rights may also be exercised by contacting your broker, trustee or other nominee, who can arrange, on your behalf, (1) to deliver a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date and (2) to guarantee delivery of payment and delivery of a properly completed and executed subscription certificate pursuant to a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery by the close of business on the third (3rd) business day after the Expiration Date. A fee may be charged for this service. Completed subscription certificates and related payments must be received by the Subscription Agent prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on or before the Expiration Date (unless payment is effected by means of a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery as described below under Payment for Common Shares ) at the offices of the Subscription Agent at the address set forth above. Fractional Common Shares will not be issued upon the exercise of Rights.

All questions as to the validity, form, eligibility (including times of receipt and matters pertaining to beneficial ownership) and the acceptance of subscription forms and the Subscription Price will be determined by the Fund, which determinations will be final and binding. No alternative, conditional or contingent subscriptions will be accepted. The Fund reserves the right to reject any or all subscriptions not properly submitted or

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

the acceptance of which would, in the opinion of the Fund's counsel, be unlawful.

### **Common Shareholders who are record owners**

Exercising Rights Holders who are holders of record may choose either option set forth under "Payment for Common Shares" below. If time is of the essence, the Fund or the Adviser, in their sole discretion, may permit delivery of the subscription certificate and payment after the Expiration Date.

### **Record Date Common Shareholders whose Common Shares are held by a nominee**

Record Date Common Shareholders whose Common Shares are held by a nominee, such as a bank, broker or trustee, must contact that nominee to exercise their Rights. In that case, the nominee will complete the subscription certificate on behalf of the Record Date Common Shareholder and arrange for proper payment by one of the methods set forth under "Payment for Common Shares" below.

## Nominees

Nominees, such as brokers, trustees or depositories for securities, who hold Common Shares for the account of others, should notify the respective beneficial owners of the Common Shares as soon as possible to ascertain the beneficial owners' intentions and to obtain instructions with respect to the Rights. If the beneficial owner so instructs, the nominee should complete the subscription certificate and submit it to the Subscription Agent with the proper payment as described under "Payment for Common Shares" below.

Banks, brokers, trustees and other nominee holders of Rights will be required to certify to the Subscription Agent, before any Over-Subscription Privilege may be exercised with respect to any particular beneficial owner who is a Record Date Common Shareholder, as to the aggregate number of Rights exercised during the subscription period and the number of Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege by the beneficial owner, and that the beneficial owner exercised all Rights issued to it pursuant to the Offer.

## FOREIGN COMMON SHAREHOLDERS

Subscription certificates will not be mailed to Record Date Common Shareholders whose record addresses are outside the United States (for these purposes, the United States includes its territories and possessions and the District of Columbia) (the "Foreign Common Shareholders"). Foreign Common Shareholders will receive written notice of the Offer. The Subscription Agent will hold the Rights to which those subscription certificates relate for these Common Shareholders' accounts until instructions are received to exercise, sell or transfer the Rights, subject to applicable law. If no instructions have been received by 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014, three (3) business days prior to the Expiration Date (or, if the subscription period is extended, on or before three (3) business days prior to the extended Expiration Date), the Subscription Agent will ask the Dealer Manager if it will purchase the Rights. If the Dealer Manager purchases the Rights, the sales price paid by the Dealer Manager will be based upon the then current market price for the Rights. The proceeds from each of such sales to the Dealer Manager will be remitted to the Subscription Agent, which will hold such proceeds in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to each Foreign Common Shareholder. It is expected that following each such sale of Rights to the Dealer Manager, the proceeds from each such sale will be received by the Subscription Agent within three (3) business days of the sale and that the proceeds will then be remitted to the Foreign Common Shareholder within three (3) business days of receipt by the Subscription Agent.

If the Dealer Manager declines to purchase the Rights of a Foreign Common Shareholder, the Subscription Agent will attempt to sell such Rights in the open market. If the Rights can be sold in such manner, all of such sales will be deemed to have been effected at the weighted-average price of all Rights sold by the Subscription Agent in such open market transactions throughout the subscription period. The proceeds from such sales will be held by the Subscription Agent in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to the Foreign Common Shareholders. It is expected that the proceeds of such open market sales will be remitted by the Subscription Agent to the Foreign Common Shareholders within five (5) business days following the Expiration Date.

There can be no assurance that the Subscription Agent will be able to sell any Rights, and neither the Fund nor the Subscription Agent has guaranteed any minimum sales price for the Rights.

## NOTICE OF NAV DECLINE

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund, as required by the SEC's registration form, will suspend the Offer until it amends this prospectus if, subsequent to the effective date of this prospectus, the Fund's NAV declines more than 10% from its NAV as of that date. Accordingly, the Expiration Date would be extended and the Fund would notify Record Date Common Shareholders of the decline and permit Exercising Rights Holders to cancel their exercise of Rights.

### DISTRIBUTION ARRANGEMENTS

[ ] will act as Dealer Manager for the Offer. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in the Dealer Manager Agreement, the Dealer Manager will provide financial structuring and solicitation services in connection with the Offer and will solicit the exercise of Rights and participation in the Over-Subscription Privilege. The Offer is not contingent upon any number of Rights being exercised. The Dealer Manager will also be responsible for forming and managing a group of selling broker-dealers (each a Selling Group Member and collectively the Selling Group Members), whereby each Selling Group Member will enter into a Selling Group Agreement with the Dealer Manager to solicit the exercise of Rights and to sell Common Shares purchased by the Selling Group Member from the Dealer Manager. In addition, the Dealer Manager will enter into a Soliciting Dealer Agreement with other soliciting broker-dealers (each a Soliciting Dealer and collectively the Soliciting Dealers) to solicit the exercise of Rights. See Compensation to Dealer Manager for a discussion of fees and other compensation to be paid to the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members and Soliciting Dealers in connection with the Offer. The services provided by the Dealer Manager differ from those provided by the Adviser in that the Adviser acts as the investment adviser for the Fund and manages the investment and reinvestment of the Fund's assets in accordance with the Fund's investment objectives and policies and limitations, and generally manages the day-to-day business and affairs of the Fund. The Adviser has not been retained by the Fund to manage a rights offering; instead, given the complexities of the transaction, the Fund believes that the retention of the Dealer Manager will be

beneficial. See Management of the Fund Advisory Agreement for a more complete description of the Advisory Agreement.

The Fund and the Adviser have agreed to indemnify the Dealer Manager or contribute to losses arising out of certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. The Dealer Manager Agreement also provides that the Dealer Manager will not be subject to any liability to the Fund in rendering the services contemplated by the Dealer Manager Agreement except for any act of willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence of the Dealer Manager in the performance of its duties or reckless disregard by the Dealer Manager of its obligations and duties under the Dealer Manager Agreement.

Prior to the expiration of the Offer, the Dealer Manager may independently offer for sale Common Shares acquired through exercising the Rights at prices that may be different from the market price for such Common Shares or from the price to be received by the Fund upon the exercise of Rights. The Dealer Manager is authorized to buy and exercise Rights (for delivery of Common Shares prior to the expiration of the Offer), including unexercised Rights of Record Date Common Shareholders whose record addresses are outside the United States held by the Subscription Agent for which no instructions are received, and to sell Common Shares to the public or to Selling Group Members at the offering price set by the Dealer Manager from time to time. In addition, the Dealer Manager has the right to buy Rights offered to it by the Subscription Agent from electing Record Date Common Shareholders, and the Dealer Manager may purchase such Rights as principal or act as agent on behalf of its clients for the resale of such Rights.

Record Date Common Shareholders who do not wish to exercise any or all of their Rights may instruct the Subscription Agent to try to sell any Rights they do not intend to exercise themselves. Subscription certificates evidencing the Rights to be sold by the Subscription Agent must be received by the Subscription Agent on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014 (or, if the subscription period is extended, on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, two (2) business days prior to the extended Expiration Date). Upon the timely receipt by the Subscription Agent of appropriate instructions to sell Rights, the Subscription Agent will ask the Dealer Manager if it will purchase the Rights. If the Dealer Manager purchases the Rights, the sales price paid by the Dealer Manager will be based upon the then current market price for the Rights. The proceeds from each of such sales to the Dealer Manager will be remitted to the Subscription Agent, which will hold such proceeds in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to each selling Record Date Common Shareholder. It is expected that following each such sale of Rights to the Dealer Manager, the proceeds from each such sale will be received by the Subscription Agent within three (3) business days of the sale and that the proceeds will then be remitted to the selling Record Date Common Shareholder within three (3) business days of receipt by the Subscription Agent.

If the Dealer Manager declines to purchase the Rights of a Record Date Common Shareholder that have been duly submitted to the Subscription Agent for sale, the Subscription Agent will attempt to sell such Rights in the open market. If the Rights can be sold in such manner, all of such sales will be deemed to have been effected at the weighted-average price of all Rights sold by the Subscription Agent in such open market transactions throughout the subscription period. The proceeds from such sales will be held by the Subscription Agent in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to the selling Record Date Common Shareholders. It is expected that the proceeds of such open market sales will be remitted by the Subscription Agent to the selling Record Date Common Shareholders within five (5) business days following the Expiration Date.

The Subscription Agent will also attempt to sell (either to the Dealer Manager or in open market transactions as described above) all Rights which remain unclaimed as a result of subscription certificates being returned by the postal authorities to the Subscription Agent as undeliverable as of the fourth (4th) business day prior to the Expiration Date. The Subscription Agent will hold the proceeds from those sales in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds for the benefit of such non-claiming Record Date Common Shareholders until such proceeds are either claimed or revert to the state.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

There can be no assurance that the Subscription Agent will be able to sell any Rights, and neither the Fund nor the Subscription Agent has guaranteed any minimum sales price for the Rights. If a Record Date Common Shareholder does not utilize the services of the Subscription Agent and chooses to use another broker-dealer or other financial institution to sell Rights, then the other broker-dealer or financial institution may charge a fee to sell the Rights.

### COMPENSATION TO DEALER MANAGER

Pursuant to the Dealer Manager Agreement, the Fund has agreed to pay the Dealer Manager a fee for its financial structuring and solicitation services equal to [ ]% of the aggregate Subscription Price for Common Shares issued pursuant to the Offer. The Dealer Manager will reallocate to Selling Group Members in the Selling Group to be formed and managed by the Dealer Manager selling fees equal to [ ]% of the Subscription Price for each Common Share issued pursuant to the Offer or the Over-Subscription Privilege as a result of their selling efforts. In addition, the Dealer Manager will reallocate to Soliciting Dealers that have executed and delivered a Soliciting Dealer Agreement and have solicited the exercise of Rights, solicitation fees equal to [ ]% of the Subscription Price for each Common Share issued pursuant to the exercise of Rights as a result of their soliciting efforts, subject to a maximum fee based on the number of Common Shares held by such Soliciting Dealer through DTC on the Record Date. Fees will be paid to the broker-dealer designated on the applicable portion of the subscription certificates or, in the absence of such designation, to the Dealer Manager.

In addition, the Fund has agreed to pay the Dealer Manager an amount up to \$[ ] as a partial reimbursement of its expenses

incurred in connection with the Offer. The fees described above are one-time fees payable on each date on which the Fund issues Common Shares after the Expiration Date with respect to the Dealer Manager, and on or before the tenth business day following the day the Fund issues Common Shares after the Expiration Date with respect to a Selling Group Member or Soliciting Dealer. The Fund will also pay expenses relating to the printing or other production, mailing and delivery expenses incurred in connection with materials related to the Offer, including all reasonable out-of-pocket fees and expenses, if any and not to exceed \$[ ], incurred by the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members, Soliciting Dealers and other brokers, dealers and financial institutions in connection with their customary mailing and handling of materials related to the Offer to their customers. In connection with the purchase of Rights and sale of Common Shares by the Dealer Manager, the Dealer Manager may realize profits or losses in addition to and independent of any fees described above. While such profits or losses are difficult to quantify prior to the commencement of the subscription period, in no event will profits to the Dealer Manager from the purchase of Rights and sale of Common Shares acquired pursuant to the exercise of Rights[ ]% of the gross proceeds of the Offer. No other fees will be payable by the Fund or the Adviser to the Dealer Manager in connection with the Offer. All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights.

## SUBSCRIPTION AGENT

The Subscription Agent is [ ]. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in a Subscription Agent Agreement between the Fund and the Subscription Agent, the Subscription Agent in connection with the Offer will provide services related to the distribution of the subscription certificates and the issuance and exercise of Rights to subscribe as set forth therein. The Subscription Agent will receive for its administrative, processing, invoicing and other services a fee estimated to be approximately \$[ ], plus reimbursement for all out-of-pocket expenses related to the Offer. The Fund has also agreed to indemnify the Subscription Agent and its nominees against all liability and reasonable expense which may arise out of the services described in the Subscription Agent Agreement, except for any liability or expense arising out of negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct of the Subscription Agent or its nominees.

Completed subscription certificates must be sent together with proper payment of the Subscription Price for all Common Shares subscribed for in the Primary Subscription and the Over-Subscription Privilege (for eligible Record Date Common Shareholders) to the Subscription Agent by one of the methods described below. Alternatively, Notices of Guaranteed Delivery may be sent by facsimile to [ ] to be received by the Subscription Agent prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date. Facsimiles should be confirmed by telephone at [ ]. The Fund will accept only properly completed and executed subscription certificates actually received at any of the addresses listed below, prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date or by the close of business on the third (3rd) business day after the Expiration Date following timely receipt of a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery. See Payment for Common Shares below.

### Subscription Certificate

| Delivery Method                                          | Address/Number                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| By Notice of Guaranteed Delivery                         | Contact your broker-dealer, trust company, bank, or other nominee to notify the Fund of your intent to exercise, sell or transfer the Rights. |
| By First Class Mail Only<br>(No Overnight /Express Mail) | Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund<br>c/o [ ]                                                                                               |
| By Express Mail or Overnight Courier                     | Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund<br>c/o [ ]                                                                                               |

**Delivery to an address other than one of the addresses listed above, or transmission via a facsimile number other than as listed above, will not constitute valid delivery.**

**INFORMATION AGENT**

The Information Agent is [ ]. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in an Information Agent Agreement between the Fund and the Information Agent, the Information Agent will provide communication, dissemination and other related services in connection with the Offer. The Fund has also agreed to indemnify the Information Agent and its stockholder, officers, directors, employees, agents and affiliates against any and all claims, costs, damages, liabilities, judgments and expenses, including the fees, costs and expenses of counsel retained by the Information Agent, which directly relate to or arise out of the Information Agent's

performance of services under the Information Agent Agreement, except for costs, damages, liabilities, judgments or expenses resulting directly from the Information Agent's gross negligence or intentional misconduct.

Any questions or requests for assistance concerning the method of subscribing for Common Shares or for additional copies of this prospectus or subscription certificates or Notices of Guaranteed Delivery may be directed to the Information Agent at its telephone number and address listed below:

[     ]

Call toll free: [     ]

Common Shareholders may also contact their brokers or nominees for information with respect to the Offer. The Information Agent will receive a fee estimated to be \$[     ], plus reimbursement for its out-of-pocket expenses related to the Offer.

#### **PAYMENT FOR COMMON SHARES**

Exercising Rights Holders may choose between the following methods of payment:

(1) An Exercising Rights Holder may send the subscription certificate together with payment for the Common Shares acquired in the Primary Subscription and any additional Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege (for eligible Record Date Common Shareholders) to the Subscription Agent based on the estimated Subscription Price of \$[     ] per Common Share ([     ]% of \$[     ], the average of the last reported sales price of a Common Share on the NYSE on [     ], 2014 and each of the four (4) preceding trading days). To be accepted, the payment, together with a properly completed and executed subscription certificate, must be received by the Subscription Agent at one of the Subscription Agent's offices set forth above, prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date.

(2) An Exercising Rights Holder may have a bank, trust company or NYSE member send a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery by facsimile or otherwise guaranteeing delivery of (i) payment of the full Subscription Price for the Common Shares subscribed for in the Primary Subscription and any additional Common Shares subscribed for pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege (for eligible Record Date Common Shareholders) and (ii) a properly completed and executed subscription certificate. The Subscription Agent will not honor a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery unless a properly completed and executed subscription certificate and full payment for the Common Shares is received by the Subscription Agent by the close of business on [     ], 2014 or, if the Offer is extended, on the third (3rd) business day after the Expiration Date).

All payments by an Exercising Rights Holder must be in U.S. dollars by money order or check drawn on a bank or branch located in the United States and payable to [     ]. The Subscription Agent will deposit all funds received by it prior to the final payment date into a segregated account pending proration and distribution of the Common Shares. The Subscription Agent may receive investment earnings on the funds deposited into such account.

**The method of delivery of subscription certificates and payment of the Subscription Price to the Fund will be at the election and risk of the Exercising Rights Holders, but if sent by mail, it is recommended that such Certificates and payments be sent by registered mail, properly insured, with return receipt requested, and that a sufficient number of days be allowed to ensure delivery to the Subscription Agent and clearance of payment prior to 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date or the date guaranteed payments are due under a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery (as applicable). Because uncertified personal checks may take at least five business days to clear, you are strongly urged to pay, or arrange for payment, by means of certified or cashier's check or money order.**

Within ten (10) business days following the Expiration Date (the Confirmation Date), the Subscription Agent will direct the Transfer Agent to send to each Exercising Rights Holder (or, if Common Shares are held by Cede or any other depository or nominee, to Cede or such other depository or nominee) a confirmation showing (i) the number of Common Shares purchased pursuant to the Primary Subscription; (ii) the number of Common Shares, if any, acquired pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege (for eligible Record Date Common Shareholders); (iii) the per Common Share and total purchase price for the Common Shares; and (iv) any additional amount payable to the Fund by the Exercising Rights Holder or any excess to be refunded by the Fund to the Exercising Rights Holder, in each case based on the Subscription Price as determined on the Expiration Date. If any Exercising Rights Holder, if eligible, exercises his right to acquire Common Shares pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege, any excess payment which would otherwise be refunded to him will be applied by the Fund toward payment for Common Shares acquired pursuant to the exercise of the Over-Subscription Privilege. Any additional payment required from an Exercising Rights Holder must be received by the Subscription Agent within ten (10) business days after the Confirmation Date. All payments by Rights holders must be in United States dollars by money order or check drawn on a bank located in the United States of America and payable to [ ]. Any excess payment to be refunded by the Fund to an Exercising Rights Holder will be mailed by the Subscription Agent to the Rights Holder as promptly as practicable.

Whichever of the two methods described above is used, issuance of the Common Shares purchased is subject to collection of checks and actual receipt of payment. The Subscription Agent will deposit all checks it receives prior to the final due date of this Offer into a segregated account pending proration and distribution of the Common Shares. The Subscription Agent may receive

investment earnings on the funds deposited into such account. If an Exercising Rights Holder who subscribes for Common Shares pursuant to the Primary Subscription or Over-Subscription Privilege (for eligible Record Date Common Shareholders) does not make payment of any amounts due by the Expiration Date or the date guaranteed payments are due under a Notice of Guaranteed Delivery, the Subscription Agent reserves the right to take any or all of the following actions: (i) sell subscribed and unpaid-for Common Shares to other eligible Record Date Common Shareholders; (ii) apply any payment actually received by it from the Exercising Rights Holder toward the purchase of the greatest whole number of Common Shares which could be acquired by such Exercising Rights Holder upon exercise of the Primary Subscription and/or the Over-Subscription Privilege; and/or (iii) exercise any and all other rights or remedies to which it may be entitled, including, without limitation, the right to set off against payments actually received by it with respect to such subscribed for Common Shares.

All questions concerning the timeliness, validity, form and eligibility of any exercise of Rights will be determined by the Fund, whose determinations will be final and binding. The Fund or the Adviser, each in its sole discretion may waive any defect or irregularity, or permit a defect or irregularity to be corrected within such time as it may determine, or reject the purported exercise of any Right. Subscriptions will not be deemed to have been received or accepted until all irregularities have been waived or cured within such time as the Fund or the Adviser determines in its sole discretion. The Subscription Agent and the Fund will not be under any duty to give notification of any defect or irregularity in connection with the submission of subscription certificates or incur any liability for failure to give such notification.

**Exercising Rights Holders will have no right to rescind their subscription after receipt of their payment for Common Shares by the Subscription Agent, except as provided above under Notice of NAV Decline.**

#### **DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLAN PARTICIPANTS/BENEFICIAL OWNERS HOLDING THROUGH NOMINEES**

Participants in the Fund's Dividend Reinvestment Plan will have any Common Shares acquired in the Primary Subscription and pursuant to the Over-Subscription Privilege credited to their accounts under the Dividend Reinvestment Plan. Participants in the Fund's Dividend Reinvestment Plan wishing to exercise Rights issued with respect to the Common Shares held in their accounts under the Dividend Reinvestment Plan must exercise such Rights in accordance with the procedures set forth above. Record Date Common Shareholders whose Common Shares are held of record by Cede or by any other depository or nominee on their behalf or their broker-dealer's behalf will have any Common Shares acquired in the Primary Subscription credited to the account of Cede or such other depository or nominee.

#### **U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE OFFER**

See Tax Matters The Offer for a discussion of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences of the Offer.

#### **ERISA CONSIDERATIONS**

Common Shareholders that are employee benefit plans subject to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended ( ERISA ) (including corporate savings and 401(k) plans), Keogh plans of self-employed individuals, Individual Retirement Accounts ( IRAs ) and other plans eligible for special tax treatment under the Code collectively, the Plans ), should be aware that additional contributions of cash to the Plan (other than rollover contributions or trustee-to-trustee transfers from other Plans) in order to exercise Rights would be treated as Plan contributions and, when taken together with contributions previously made, may subject a Plan to excise taxes for excess or nondeductible

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

contributions. In the case of Plans qualified under Section 401(a) of the Code and certain other plans, additional cash contributions could cause the maximum contribution limitations of Section 415 of the Code or other qualification rules to be violated. Plans contemplating making additional cash contributions to exercise Rights should consult with their counsel prior to receiving or using such contributions.

Plans and other tax exempt entities, including governmental plans, should also be aware that if they borrow in order to finance their exercise of Rights, they may become subject to the tax on unrelated business taxable income under Section 511 of the Code. If any portion of an IRA is used as security for a loan, the portion so used is also treated as distributed to the IRA depositor.

ERISA contains fiduciary responsibility requirements, and ERISA and the Code contain prohibited transaction rules that may impact the exercise or transfer of Rights. Due to the complexity of these rules and the penalties for non-compliance, Plans should consult with their counsel regarding the consequences of their exercise or transfer of Rights under ERISA and the Code.

### **DILUTION AND EFFECT OF NON-PARTICIPATION IN THE OFFER**

Upon the completion of the Offer, Record Date Common Shareholders who do not exercise their Rights fully will own a smaller proportional interest in the Fund than they owned prior to the Offer because there will be more Common Shares issued and outstanding if Rights are exercised. The percentage increase in Common Shares outstanding that will occur if all the Rights are exercised is [ ]%. The completion of the Offer will result in immediate voting dilution for such Common Shareholders. Further, both the sales load and the expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund will immediately reduce the net asset value of each Common Shareholder's Common Shares. In addition, if the Subscription Price is less than the NAV of our Common Shares as of the

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Expiration Date, the Offer will result in an immediate dilution of NAV for all Common Shareholders. It is anticipated that the existing Common Shareholders will experience immediate dilution even if they fully exercise their Rights. Such dilution is not currently determinable because it is not known how many Common Shares will be subscribed for, what the NAV or market price of our Common Shares will be on the Expiration Date or what the Subscription Price will be. Any such NAV dilution will disproportionately affect nonexercising Common Shareholders. If the Subscription Price is substantially less than the current NAV, this dilution could be substantial. For example, assuming that the Expiration Date was [ ] and all of the Common Shares are sold at the estimated Subscription Price (which includes a sales load) and after deducting all expenses related to the issuance of the Common Shares, the per share NAV would be reduced by approximately \$[ ] or [ ]%. Record Date Common Shareholders will experience a decrease in the NAV of Common Shares held by them, irrespective of whether they exercise all or any portion of their Rights. The distribution of transferable Rights, which themselves have value, will afford non-participating Common Shareholders the potential of receiving a cash payment upon the sale of Rights, receipt of which may be viewed as partial compensation for the economic dilution of their interests, although there can be no assurance that a market for the Rights will develop or, if such a market does develop, what the price of the Rights will be.

### Example of Dilution to NAV Resulting from the Offer

|     |                                                                                                                       |     |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| (a) | Net asset value per Common Share (as of [ ]/2014)                                                                     | [ ] |
| (b) | Total net assets (as of [ ]/2014)                                                                                     | [ ] |
| (c) | Estimated reduction in current net asset value per Common Share resulting from the Offer ( per share dilution )(1)(2) | [ ] |
| (d) | Estimated percentage reduction in current net asset value per Common Share resulting from the Offer(1)(3)             | [ ] |

(1) Assumes full exercise of the Rights being offered, that the Expiration Date was [ ], 2014, and that all of the Common Shares are sold at the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] and deducts all expenses related to the issuance of the Common Shares in the Offer. The Fund, not investors, pays the sales load, which is ultimately thus borne by all Common Shareholders.

(2) Item (c) was calculated by subtracting (A) the Fund's estimated net asset value per Common Share immediately following the completion of the Offer from (B) the Fund's net asset value per Common Share (as of [ ], 2014). The Fund's estimated net asset value per Common Share immediately following the completion of the Offer was estimated (using the assumptions described in note (1) above) by dividing (X) the estimated net asset value of the Fund immediately following the Offer by (Y) the estimated total number of Common Shares outstanding immediately following the completion of the Offer.

(3) Item (d) was calculated by dividing Item (c) by Item (a).

There can be no assurance that the dilution will be limited to the amounts shown in the table above. The final amounts of such dilution may be greater than those estimated due to many factors, including the Fund's market price and NAV at the time of completion of the Offer and the level of participation in the Offer.

The number of Common Shares outstanding as of [ ], 2014 was [ ]. The number of Common Shares adjusted to give effect to the Offer, assuming that all Rights are exercised and the applicable Common Shares issued, would be [ ]. The percentage increase in Common Shares outstanding that will occur if all the Rights are exercised is [ ]%.

All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights.

**CERTAIN EFFECTS OF THIS OFFER**

The Adviser will benefit from the Offer because the management and investment advisory fees are based on the Fund's Managed Assets. For a description of these fees, see Management of the Fund Advisory Agreement. It is not possible to state precisely the amount of additional compensation the Adviser will receive as a result of the Offer because it is not known how many Common Shares will be subscribed for and because the proceeds of the Offer will be invested in additional portfolio securities, which will fluctuate in value. However, assuming (i) all Rights are exercised, (ii) the proceeds of the Offer are leveraged at 33 1/3% (including the proceeds of such leverage) after giving effect to the Offer and (iii) the Subscription Price is \$[ ] per Common Share, and after giving effect to the Dealer Manager fee and other expenses related to the Offer, the Adviser would receive additional annualized management fees of \$[ ]. One of the Fund's trustees who voted to authorize the Offer is an interested person (as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act) of the Adviser. The other trustees who approved the Offer are not interested persons (as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act) of the Adviser.

**The Fund**

The Fund is a recently organized, non-diversified, closed-end management investment company registered under the 1940 Act. The Fund was organized as a statutory trust under the laws of the State of Delaware on October 12, 2010. The Adviser is registered with the SEC under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended. The Adviser is part of Avenue Capital Group, which comprises four registered investment advisers that have expertise investing in stressed and distressed obligations throughout the world. Avenue Capital Group was founded in 1995 by Marc Lasry and Sonia Gardner. As of [ ], 2014, Avenue Capital Group had

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

approximately \$[ ] billion in assets under management. Avenue Capital Group and the Adviser are located at 399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor, New York, New York 10022 and their telephone number is (212) 878-3500.

The Fund's primary investment objective is to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation. No assurance can be given that the Fund's investment objectives will be achieved.

### Use of proceeds

The net proceeds of the Offer, assuming all Common Shares offered hereby are sold, are estimated to be approximately \$[ ], after deducting expenses associated with the Offer, including the sales load. The Adviser anticipates that investment of the net proceeds of the Offer in accordance with the Fund's investment objectives and policies will take approximately thirty (30) to sixty (60) days after completion of the Offer. The Fund intends to use the proceeds of the Offer to make investments consistent with its investment objectives. However, the investment of the net proceeds may take up to three (3) months from completion of the Offer, depending on market conditions and the availability of appropriate securities. See The Offer Purpose of the Offer, Investment objectives and principal investment strategy and, in the SAI, Investment Restrictions. Pending such investment, it is anticipated that the net proceeds will be invested in fixed income securities and other permitted investments. See Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy .

### Description of Common Shares

The Fund is authorized to issue an unlimited number of Common Shares. All Common Shares have equal voting, dividend, distribution and liquidation rights. The Common Shares outstanding are, and the Common Shares issuable upon the exercise of the Rights, when issued and paid for pursuant to the terms of the Offer, will be, fully paid and non-assessable. Common Shares are not redeemable and have no preemptive rights, conversion rights, cumulative voting rights or appraisal rights.

The number of Common Shares outstanding as of [ ], 2014 was [ ]. The number of Common Shares adjusted to give effect to the Offer, assuming that all Rights are exercised and the applicable Common Shares issued, would be [ ]. The percentage increase in Common Shares outstanding that will occur if all the Rights are exercised is [ ]%.

The Fund's Common Shares are publicly held and are listed and traded on the NYSE. The following table sets forth for the fiscal quarters indicated the highest and lowest daily prices during the applicable quarter at the close of market on the NYSE per Common Share along with (i) the highest and lowest closing NAV and (ii) the highest and lowest premium or discount from NAV represented by such prices at the close of the market on the NYSE.

| Quarter Ended (2) | NYSE Market Price(1) |          | NAV at NYSE Market(1) |          | Market Premium/(Discount) to NAV(1) |         |
|-------------------|----------------------|----------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|---------|
|                   | High                 | Low      | High                  | Low      | High                                | Low     |
| April 30, 2011    | \$ 19.64             | \$ 18.29 | \$ 18.32              | \$ 18.49 | 7.20%                               | (1.09)% |
| July 31, 2011     | \$ 19.20             | \$ 17.96 | \$ 17.94              | \$ 17.95 | 7.03%                               | 0.05%   |

Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

|                  |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |
|------------------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|---------|---------|
| October 31, 2011 | \$ | 18.40 | \$ | 13.85 | \$ | 17.89 | \$ | 14.63 | 2.85%   | (5.33)% |
| January 31, 2012 | \$ | 17.16 | \$ | 14.35 | \$ | 16.96 | \$ | 15.58 | 1.19%   | (7.85)% |
| April 30, 2012   | \$ | 17.80 | \$ | 16.44 | \$ | 18.30 | \$ | 17.46 | (2.73)% | (5.84)% |
| July 31, 2012    | \$ | 17.14 | \$ | 15.87 | \$ | 17.59 | \$ | 16.95 | (2.56)% | (6.37)% |
| October 31, 2012 | \$ | 18.36 | \$ | 16.70 | \$ | 18.49 | \$ | 17.66 | (0.70)% | (5.44)% |
| January 31, 2013 | \$ | 19.12 | \$ | 17.36 | \$ | 19.12 | \$ | 18.11 | 0.00%   | (4.14)% |
| April 30, 2013   |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |
| July 31, 2013    |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |
| October 31, 2013 |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |
| January 31, 2014 |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |
| April 30, 2014   |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |
| July 31, 2014    |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |         |         |

---

(1) Source: Bloomberg L.P.

(2) Data presented are with respect to a short period of time and are not indicative of future performance.

On[ ], 2014, the Fund's NAV was \$[ ] and the last reported sale price of a Common Share on the NYSE was \$[ ], representing [ ]% premium to such NAV.

#### Investment objectives and principal investment strategy

The Fund's primary investment objective is to seek a high level of current income with a secondary objective of capital appreciation.

Depending on current market conditions and the Fund's outlook over time, the Fund seeks to achieve its investment objectives by opportunistically investing primarily in credit obligations of issuers that operate in a variety of industries and geographic regions.

The Fund seeks to emphasize high current income, with a secondary emphasis on capital appreciation, by investing generally in Senior Loans and in second lien or other subordinated loans or debt instruments, including non-stressed and stressed credit obligations, and related derivatives. The Fund seeks to capitalize on market inefficiencies and to reallocate the portfolio of the Fund to opportunistically emphasize those investments, categories of investments and geographic exposures believed to be best suited to the current investment and interest rate environment and market outlook. There is no minimum or maximum limit on the amount of the Fund's assets that may be invested in non-U.S. credit obligations, generally, or in emerging market credit obligations, specifically. In pursuing the Fund's investment objectives or for hedging purposes, the Fund may invest in instruments that give it short exposure to credit obligations.

The types of derivative instruments that the Fund currently invests in (or considers for investment) are: structured products, swaps, futures contracts, forward contracts and options (including options on swaps, futures contracts and foreign currencies). In the future, the Fund may invest in other types of derivative instruments if deemed advisable by the Adviser. The Fund may commence investing in such other types of derivative instruments without notice to Common Shareholders.

There can be no assurance that the Fund will achieve its investment objectives. The Fund's investment objectives and principal investment strategy are not considered to be fundamental by the Fund and can be changed without the vote of the Fund's shareholders by the Board with at least 60 days written notice provided to shareholders.

Investment advisory services for the Fund are provided by an affiliate of Avenue Capital Group. The Fund's investment adviser is Avenue Capital Management II, L.P.

#### STRATEGY RATIONALE

The Adviser believes that changing investment and interest rate environments over time offer attractive investment opportunities in the markets for credit obligations, as well as varying degrees of investment risk. To both capitalize on attractive investments and effectively manage potential risk, the Adviser believes that the combination of a thorough and continuous credit analysis (including an analysis of an issuer's ability to make loan or debt payments when due) and the ability to reallocate the portfolio of the Fund among different categories of investments at different points in the credit cycle (i.e., the cycle between overall positive economic environments and less positive economic environments for credit obligations) is critical to achieving higher risk-adjusted returns, including higher current income and/or capital appreciation, relative to other high-yielding investments. The Adviser seeks to emphasize high current income, with a secondary emphasis on capital appreciation, by investing generally in Senior Loans, and in second lien or other subordinated loans or debt instruments, including non-stressed and stressed credit obligations, and related derivatives. The Fund seeks to capitalize on market inefficiencies and to reallocate the portfolio of the Fund to opportunistically emphasize those investments, geographies and categories of investments best suited to the current investment and interest rate environment and market outlook.

The Fund's portfolio turnover rate may vary from year to year. The Fund believes that, under normal market conditions, its portfolio turnover may be up to or over 100%. Because it is difficult to predict accurately portfolio turnover rates, actual turnover may be higher or lower. A high portfolio turnover rate increases a fund's transaction costs (including brokerage commissions and dealer costs), which would adversely impact a fund's performance. Higher portfolio turnover may result in the realization of more short-term capital gains than if a fund had lower portfolio turnover.

## **PORTFOLIO**

### **Portfolio construction guidelines**

Under normal market conditions, the Fund invests at least 80% of its Managed Assets in any combination of the following credit

obligations and related instruments: (i) Senior Loans (including those that, at the time of investment, are rated below investment grade by a NRSRO or are unrated but deemed by the Adviser to be of comparable quality; these types of below investment grade instruments are commonly known as "junk" securities and are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay interest and repay principal); (ii) second lien or other subordinated or unsecured floating rate and fixed rate loans or debt (including those that, at the time of investment, could be considered "junk" securities as described above); (iii) other debt obligations, including high-yield, high-risk obligations (i.e., instruments that are commonly known as "junk" securities as described above); (iv) structured products including collateralized debt and loan obligations (collectively, "structured products") that provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; (v) swaps and other derivative instruments (including credit default, total return, index and interest rate swaps, options, forward contracts, futures contracts and options on futures contracts) that provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; and (vi) short-term debt securities such as U.S. government securities, commercial paper and other money market instruments and cash equivalents (including shares of money market funds). Certain types of structured products, swaps and other derivative instruments provide short exposure to other credit obligations because the value of such instruments is inversely related to the value of one or more other credit obligations. Managed Assets are the total assets of the Fund (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes, including proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes) minus the sum of the Fund's accrued liabilities (other than Fund liabilities incurred for the purpose of leverage).

The Fund does not invest in credit obligations or related instruments that, at the time of investment, are in default. The Fund may invest in credit obligations or related instruments that, at the time of investment, are likely to default. The credit obligations and related instruments in which the Fund may invest include mortgage-backed and asset-backed securities and securities whose value depends on the value of mortgage-backed or asset-backed securities. These types of investments present special risks. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares** **Asset-Backed and Mortgage-Backed (or Mortgage-Related) Instruments Risk**. The Fund may act as a lender originating a Senior Loan.

Under normal market conditions, the Fund may also invest up to 20% of its Managed Assets in any combination of the following: (i) structured products that do not provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; (ii) swaps and other derivative instruments (including total return, index and interest rate swaps, options, warrants, forward contracts, futures contracts and options on futures contracts) that do not provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations; (iii) foreign currencies and foreign currency derivatives (including foreign currency related swaps, futures contracts and forward contracts) acquired for the purpose of hedging the currency risk arising from the credit obligations in the Fund's portfolio; and (iv) equity securities obtained through the conversion or exchange of convertible or exchangeable instruments, debt restructurings or bankruptcy proceedings and hedges on such positions. Structured products, swaps and other derivative instruments that do not provide long or short exposure to other credit obligations are those instruments whose reference or underlying assets or indices are not credit obligations or indices of credit obligations. Examples of such instruments include equity- and commodity-linked notes, total return swaps based on the value of an equity security and commodity futures contracts. The Fund may invest in such instruments in order, for example, (i) to seek current income or capital appreciation or (ii) to reduce the Fund's exposure solely to credit obligations. The Adviser believes that the flexibility afforded by being able to invest in such instruments may benefit the Fund by (i) allowing the Fund to invest in potentially attractive investment opportunities that are not credit obligations and (ii) increasing the mix of instruments in the Fund's portfolio which could reduce the overall risk of the Fund's portfolio (although the Fund intends to remain a non-diversified investment company). There can be no assurance that these benefits will be realized and such instruments may expose the Fund to risks not presented by credit obligations.

If the Fund receives equity securities in a debt restructuring or bankruptcy proceeding in an amount that would cause it to exceed the foregoing 20% limitation, the Fund will not be required to reduce its positions in such securities, or in any related hedges or any other investment, if the Adviser believes it would not be in the best interest of the Fund to do so.

Percentage limitations described in this prospectus are as of the time of investment by the Fund and may be exceeded after such time because of changes in the market value of the Fund's assets.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund does not invest in a derivative (other than a credit default swap or a currency hedging instrument) if, immediately after the investment, derivatives (other than credit default swaps and currency hedging instruments) would represent more than 30% of the Fund's Managed Assets on a marked-to-market basis. The Fund may use derivative instruments for hedging, as well as speculative, purposes.

The Fund's policy of investing, under normal market conditions, in accordance with the foregoing portfolio construction guidelines is not considered to be fundamental by the Fund and can be changed, without the vote of the Fund's shareholders, by the Board with at least sixty (60) days' written notice provided to shareholders.

### **Credit quality, liquidity and geographic origin of portfolio investments**

The Fund may invest, without limitation, in credit obligations that are rated below investment grade by a NRSRO such as S&P or Moody's or unrated credit obligations that are deemed by the Adviser or the to be of comparable quality, commonly known in either case as "junk" securities. Such securities are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay

interest and repay principal in accordance with the terms of the obligations and involve significant risk exposure to adverse conditions. Any of the Fund's investments may be issued, at the time of investment by the Fund, by non-stressed or stressed issuers. The Fund may invest in credit obligations of any maturity or duration. Non-stressed issuers generally refers to those issuers that are in compliance with respect to their financial obligations and are not stressed or distressed issuers. Non-stressed obligations generally refers to credit obligations issued by non-stressed issuers. Stressed issuers generally refers to those issuers that the market expects to become distressed issuers in the near future.

Stressed obligations generally refers to credit obligations issued by stressed issuers. Distressed issuers generally refers to those issuers that are unable to service their debt. Distressed obligations generally refers to credit obligations issued by distressed issuers. The Fund does not intend to invest in credit obligations issued by issuers that, at the time of investment, the Adviser believes to be distressed issuers.

In making investments in accordance with the foregoing portfolio construction guidelines, the Fund may invest globally in U.S. and non-U.S. issuers' obligations and such obligations may be U.S. dollar denominated as well as non-U.S. dollar denominated. The Fund typically seeks to limit its exposure to foreign currency risks by entering into forward transactions and other hedging transactions to the extent practical. There can be no assurance that the Fund's currency hedging strategies will succeed. Under normal market conditions, the Fund expects to continue investing in both U.S. and non-U.S. issuers. The Fund's initial areas of geographic focus are the United States and, secondarily, Europe. The Fund is also, among other areas, considering investments in Canada and South Africa. The geographic areas of focus are subject to change from time to time and may be changed without notice to the Fund's shareholders. There is no minimum or maximum limit on the amount of the Fund's assets that may be invested in non-U.S. credit obligations, generally, or in emerging market credit obligations, specifically.

The Fund may invest in loans and bonds issued by issuers of any size. The Fund's focus with respect to borrower size is subject to change from time to time and may be changed without notice to the Fund's shareholders. The Fund may invest in credit obligations at all levels of the capital structure. In investing in credit obligations, the Fund focuses on senior secured debt and other senior debt (including senior unsecured debt issued by an issuer that has also issued senior secured debt). The Fund's focus in this regard is subject to change from time to time and may be changed without notice to the Fund's shareholders.

### INVESTMENT PHILOSOPHY

The Adviser has expertise in Senior Loans and subordinated debt instruments, including those of stressed and distressed issuers, and is responsible for the overall management of the Fund.

The Adviser seeks to maximize risk adjusted returns, including by seeking to manage risk through shorting and other hedging strategies when deemed advisable by the Adviser. There can be no assurance that the Fund's hedging strategies will succeed. The Adviser seeks to achieve the Fund's investment objectives while carefully evaluating risk/return within the capital structure of a company, as well as the industry and asset class. The Adviser looks to maintain trading flexibility and to preserve capital. They conduct thorough in-depth research and employ a disciplined investment philosophy and a consistent investment approach in their focus on credit opportunities. The Adviser's investment teams use a robust credit process that includes research and analysis using a top-down/bottom-up approach to find mispriced or undervalued opportunities: from the top down, they consider macroeconomic themes of the overall credit market and industries, and from the bottom up, they conduct detailed fundamental analysis related to credit obligations of specific issuers, including examining issuers' financials and operations, including sales, earnings, growth potential, assets, debt, management and competition. The Adviser also seeks to understand historic and prospective industry trends affecting an investment opportunity. The Adviser seeks to ensure that the Fund's portfolio will not consist of a large number of issuers to permit a more thorough analysis of each issuer and to focus on the investments the Adviser believes to be most attractive. The potential concentration of the Fund's portfolio creates risk. See Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Non-Diversification Risk. The Fund typically seeks to balance interest rate risk with investment performance by investing, when deemed advisable by the Adviser, in both floating rate credit obligations, which are more likely to maintain their value in changing interest rate environments, and fixed rate credit obligations, which are more likely to lose value in rising interest rate environments but may pay higher rates of interest than floating rate credit obligations.

See Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Market Risk. The Fund typically seeks to balance credit risk with investment performance by investing, when deemed advisable by the Adviser, in both Senior Loans, which may pose less credit risk, and other credit obligations, which may offer the prospect of higher returns with more credit risk. See Risk Factors Risks

Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares Credit Risk. The Adviser's investment process is subject to change in their discretion.

When investing in credit obligations, the Fund may invest in the same securities or other credit obligations in which other accounts managed by the Adviser, including private funds, also invest. In order, among other things, to attempt to mitigate potential conflicts and seek to maintain a portfolio with the risk/return characteristics that the Fund believes to be appropriate for closed-end investment company investors, the Fund will adhere to the 20% overlap limit, pursuant to which, at the time an investment is made by the Fund, the Fund's portfolio will have no more than 20% overlap, on a market value basis, at the investment specific level with the portfolio investments held by the private funds (in the aggregate) advised by the Adviser or its affiliates (the Avenue private

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

funds ) (*i.e.*, no more than 20% of the Fund's portfolio investments will be identical to the investments held by the Avenue private funds in the aggregate). The 20% overlap limit will be measured as the percentage of:

- (a) the aggregate market value of the specific investments in the Fund that are owned by, and overlap at the investment specific level with, the Avenue private funds (in the aggregate), divided by
- (b) the market value of the Fund's Managed Assets.

Investment opportunities appropriate for both the Fund and the Avenue private funds generally will be allocated between the Fund and the Avenue private funds in a manner that the Adviser believes to be fair and equitable under the circumstances, in accordance with the Adviser's trade allocation policies. The application of the 20% overlap limit may result in the Fund being unable to make investments that it otherwise would have made, which could negatively affect the performance of the Fund.

Investment opportunities appropriate for both the Fund and the Avenue private funds generally will be allocated between the Fund and the Avenue private funds in a manner that the Adviser believes to be fair and equitable under the circumstances, in accordance with the Adviser's trade allocation policies. The application of the 20% overlap limit may result in the Fund being unable to make investments that it otherwise would have made, which could negatively affect the performance of the Fund.

The following Fund investments will not be included for purposes of calculating the 20% overlap limit:

- (a) investments held only by CLO funds, and no other private funds, managed by the Adviser; and
- (b) assets that, in the Adviser's determination, are held for hedging purposes.

To the extent that the Fund exceeds the 20% overlap limit other than due to a transaction by the Fund (*e.g.*, appreciation or depreciation of certain assets in the Fund or an acquisition by one or more Avenue private funds), the Fund will not be required to sell any of its holdings but will be precluded from acquiring any additional securities that the Avenue private funds currently hold. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Fund will be permitted to convert, exchange or exercise any security it currently holds and participate in any rights offerings or other offerings available to holders of securities currently held in its portfolio regardless of whether such transaction would be in excess of the foregoing 20% overlap limit. The 20% overlap limit does not limit the amount the Fund may invest in credit obligations of an entity or group of affiliated entities in which the Avenue private funds invest through credit obligations different from those held by the Fund.

To the extent that the Adviser serves as an investment manager to other accounts in the future that have the same investment strategy as the Fund, investment opportunities within such strategy will, to the extent practicable, be allocated among the Fund and such other accounts on a pro rata basis or on such other basis as the Adviser determines to be fair and equitable to the Fund and such other accounts.

Investors should note that the investment advisory fee structure for the Avenue Capital Group's accounts that are not registered investment companies is different and generally higher than the investment advisory fee structure for the Fund. See "Management of the Fund" Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Adviser in the SAI for more information on the 20% overlap limit, advisory fees and the Adviser's policies and procedures to address conflicts of interest. The Fund offers an opportunity for its investors to have some indirect access to the Adviser, which normally is not directly available to retail investors, albeit only at the lower risk and return segment of the market.

## PORTFOLIO COMPOSITION

The Fund's investments (primarily in Senior Loans, subordinated loans and debt, other debt obligations, structured products and swaps each of which is described in more detail below) may be all or substantially in investments that are generally considered to have a credit quality rated below investment grade by a NRSRO or unrated credit obligations that are deemed to be of comparable quality by the Adviser. Below investment grade securities (that is, securities rated Ba or lower by Moody's or BB or lower by S&P) are commonly referred to as "junk" securities and are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay interest and repay principal in accordance with the terms of the obligations and involve major risk exposure to adverse conditions. Generally, lower-grade securities provide a higher yield than higher-grade securities of similar maturity but are subject to greater risks, such as greater credit risk, greater market risk and volatility, greater liquidity concerns and potentially greater manager risk. Lower-grade securities are more susceptible to non-payment of interest and principal and default than higher-grade securities. Adverse changes in the economy or to the individual issuer often have a more significant impact on the ability of lower-grade issuers to make payments, meet projected goals or obtain additional financing. When an issuer of such securities is in financial difficulties, the Fund may incur additional expenditures or invest additional assets in an effort to obtain partial or full recovery on amounts due. Some of the securities held by the Fund, which may not be paying interest currently or may be in payment default, may be comparable to securities rated as low as C by Moody's or CCC or lower by S&P. These securities are considered to have extremely poor prospects of ever attaining any real investment standing, to have a current identifiable vulnerability to default, to be unlikely to

have the capacity to pay interest and repay principal when due in the event of adverse business, financial or economic conditions and/or to be in default or not current in the payment of interest or principal.

While all credit obligations tend to fluctuate inversely with changes in interest rates, the prices of lower-grade securities generally are less sensitive to changes in interest rates and are more sensitive to specific issuer developments or real or perceived general adverse economic changes than higher-grade securities. A projection of an economic downturn, for example, could cause a decline in prices of lower-grade securities because the advent of a recession could lessen the ability of a highly leveraged company to make principal and interest payments on its securities or obtain additional financing when necessary. A significant increase in market interest rates or a general economic downturn could severely disrupt the market as well as the market values of such securities. Such securities also often experience more volatility in prices than higher-grade securities. The secondary trading market for lower-grade securities may be less liquid than the market for higher-grade securities. Prices of lower-grade securities may decline rapidly in the event a significant number of holders decide to sell. Changes in expectations regarding an individual issuer, an industry or lower-grade securities generally could reduce market liquidity for such securities and make their sale by the Fund more difficult, at least in the absence of price concessions. The market for lower-grade securities may also have less information available, further complicating evaluations and valuations of such securities and placing more emphasis on the Adviser's experience, judgment and analysis than higher-grade securities. Adverse publicity and investor perceptions, whether or not based on fundamental analysis, may also decrease the values and liquidity of securities rated below investment grade and unrated securities especially in a market characterized by a low volume of trading.

The Fund may invest in the credit obligations of stressed issuers, including obligations that are in covenant or payment default. Credit obligations that are or become stressed generally trade at prices below par, thus creating opportunities for capital appreciation (or loss) as the values of such securities change over time. Such obligations are subject to a multitude of legal, industry, market, economic and governmental forces each of which make analysis of these companies inherently difficult. The Adviser relies on company management, outside experts, market participants and personal experience to analyze potential investments. There can be no assurance that any of these sources will provide credible information, or that the analysis of the Adviser will produce conclusions that lead to profitable investments for the respective portion of the Fund's portfolio managed by each. Obligations of stressed issuers generally trade significantly below par and are considered speculative. The repayment of defaulted obligations is subject to significant uncertainties. Defaulted obligations might be repaid only after lengthy workout or bankruptcy proceedings or result in only partial recovery of cash payments or an exchange of the defaulted obligation for other debt or equity securities of the issuer or its affiliates, which may in turn be illiquid or speculative.

There are a number of significant risks inherent in the bankruptcy process. Many events in a bankruptcy are the product of contested matters and adversary proceedings and are beyond the control of the creditors. There can be no assurance that a bankruptcy court would not approve actions that would be contrary to the interests of the Fund. A bankruptcy filing by an issuer may cause such issuer to lose its market position and key employees and otherwise become incapable of restoring itself as a viable entity, and its liquidation value may be less than its value was believed to be at the time of investment. In addition, the duration of a bankruptcy proceeding is difficult to predict and as such, a creditor's return on investment can be adversely affected by delays while the plan of reorganization is being negotiated, approved by the creditors and confirmed by the bankruptcy court and until it ultimately becomes effective. The administrative costs in connection with a bankruptcy proceeding are frequently high and would be paid out of the debtor's estate prior to any return to creditors. Further, in the early stages of the bankruptcy process it is often difficult to estimate the extent of any contingent claims that might be made and as such, there is a risk that the Fund's influence with respect to the class of obligations it owns can be lost by increases in the number and amount of claims in that class or by different classification and treatment. A creditor, such as the Fund, can also lose its ranking and priority if it is determined that such creditor exercised domination and control over a debtor and other creditors can demonstrate that they have been harmed by such actions. In addition, certain claims have priority by law, such as claims for taxes, which may be substantial and could affect the ability of the Fund to be repaid.

In any investment involving stressed obligations, there is a risk that the transaction involving such debt obligations will be unsuccessful, take considerable time or will result in a distribution of cash or a new security or obligation in exchange for the stressed obligations, the value of which may be less than the Fund's purchase price of such obligations. Furthermore, if an anticipated transaction does not occur, the Fund may be required to sell its investment at a loss.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund may sell portfolio securities without regard to the length of time they have been held to take advantage of new investment opportunities, when the believes the potential for high current income or capital appreciation has lessened, or for other reasons. The Fund's portfolio turnover rate may vary from year to year.

### **SENIOR LOANS**

Senior Loans are business loans made to borrowers that may be corporations, partnerships or other entities that operate in a variety of industries and geographic regions. Senior Loans generally are negotiated between a borrower and several financial institution lenders represented by one or more lenders acting as agent of all the lenders. The agent is responsible for negotiating the loan agreement that establishes the terms and conditions of the Senior Loan and the rights of the borrower and the lenders. The Fund may act as one of the original lenders originating a Senior Loan, may purchase portions of Senior Loans through assignments from lenders and may invest in participations in Senior Loans. Senior Loans have the most senior position in a borrower's capital structure

or share the senior position with other senior debt securities of the borrower. This capital structure position generally gives holders of Senior Loans a claim on some or all of the borrower's assets that is senior to that held by unsecured creditors, subordinated debt holders and stockholders of the borrowers. Senior Loans also have contractual terms designed to protect lenders. The Fund will generally acquire Senior Loans of borrowers that, among other things, in the Adviser's judgment, can make timely payments on their Senior Loans and that satisfy other credit standards established by the Adviser. Because of the protective features of Senior Loans, the Fund and the Adviser believe that Senior Loans of borrowers that are experiencing, or are more likely to experience, financial difficulty may represent attractive investment opportunities.

Interest rates on Senior Loans may be fixed or may float periodically. On floating rate Senior Loans, the interest rates typically are adjusted based on a base rate plus a premium or spread over the base rate. The base rate usually is a standard inter-bank offered rate, such as LIBOR, the prime rate offered by one or more major U.S. banks, or the certificate of deposit rate or other base lending rates used by commercial lenders. Floating rate Senior Loans may adjust over different time periods, including daily, monthly, quarterly, semi-annually or annually. The Fund may use interest rate swaps and other investment practices to shorten the effective interest rate adjustment period of floating rate Senior Loans or to adjust the overall interest rate exposure of the Fund.

When interest rates rise, the values of fixed income securities generally decline. When interest rates fall, the values of fixed income securities generally increase. The prices of adjustable, variable or floating rate income securities tend to have less fluctuation in response to changes in interest rates, but will have some fluctuation particularly when the next interest rate adjustment on such security is further away in time or adjustments are limited in amount over time.

The Fund's Senior Loan investments will typically be secured by specific assets of the borrower that qualify as collateral, such as trademarks, accounts receivable, inventory, buildings, real estate, franchises and common and preferred stock in its subsidiaries and affiliates. Collateral may also include guarantees or other credit support by affiliates of the borrower. In some cases, a Senior Loan may be secured only by stock of the borrower or its subsidiaries. The borrower may experience financial difficulty and/or the value of collateral may decline over time. The loan agreement may or may not require the borrower to pledge additional collateral to secure the Senior Loan if the value of the initial collateral declines. In certain circumstances, the loan agreement may authorize the agent to liquidate the collateral and to distribute the liquidation proceeds pro rata among the lenders. As described below, the Fund may also invest in loans that are not secured by specific collateral. Investments in such unsecured loans involve a greater risk of loss.

Senior Loans also have contractual terms designed to protect lenders. Loan agreements often include restrictive covenants that limit the activities of the borrower. These covenants may include mandatory prepayment out of excess cash flows, restrictions on dividend payments, the maintenance of minimum financial ratios, limits on indebtedness and other financial tests. Breach of these covenants generally is an event of default and, if not waived by the lenders, may give lenders the right to accelerate principal and interest payments.

The proceeds of Senior Loans that the Fund will purchase typically will be used by borrowers to finance leveraged buyouts, recapitalizations, mergers, acquisitions, stock repurchases, debt refinancings and, to a lesser extent, for general operating and other purposes.

The Fund may purchase and retain in its portfolio Senior Loans of borrowers that have filed for protection under the federal bankruptcy laws or similar laws or that have had involuntary bankruptcy petitions filed against them by creditors. Investing in Senior Loans involves investment risk, and some borrowers default on their Senior Loan payments. The Fund attempts to manage these risks through selection of a varied portfolio of Senior Loans and analysis and monitoring of borrowers.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund generally invests in a Senior Loan if, in the Adviser's judgment, the borrower can meet its future payment obligations. The Adviser will perform its own independent credit analysis of the borrower in addition to utilizing information prepared and supplied by the agent or other lenders with respect to the portion of the Fund's portfolio managed by each. When evaluating a borrower, the Adviser will consider many factors, including the borrower's past and future projected financial performance. The Adviser also considers a borrower's management, collateral and industry. The Fund generally acquires a collateralized Senior Loan if the Adviser believes that the collateral coverage equals or exceeds the outstanding principal amount of the Senior Loan. The Adviser continues to monitor a borrower on an ongoing basis for so long as the Fund continues to own the Senior Loan. Although the Adviser uses their best judgment in selecting Senior Loans, there can be no assurance that such analysis will disclose factors that may impair the value of a Senior Loan. The Fund's NAV of the Common Shares fluctuates as a result of changes in the credit quality of borrowers and other factors. A serious deterioration in the credit quality of a borrower could cause a permanent decrease in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares** **Risks of Senior Loans**.

There is no minimum rating or other independent evaluation of a borrower or its securities limiting the Fund's investments. Although a Senior Loan may not be rated by a NRSRO at the time the Fund purchases the Senior Loan, NRSROs have become more active in rating Senior Loans, and at any given time a substantial portion of the Senior Loans in the Fund's portfolio may be rated. There is no limit on the percentage of the Fund's assets that may be invested in Senior Loans that are rated below investment grade or that are unrated but deemed by the Adviser to be of comparable quality.

*Original Lender.* When the Fund acts as an original lender, it may participate in structuring the Senior Loan. When the Fund is an original lender, it will have a direct contractual relationship with the borrower, may enforce compliance of the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement and may have rights with respect to any funds acquired by other lenders through set-off. Lenders typically also have full voting and consent rights under loan agreements. Certain actions of the borrower typically requires the vote or consent of the holders of some specified percentage of the outstanding principal amount of the Senior Loan. Certain decisions, such as reducing the amount of interest on or principal of a Senior Loan, releasing collateral, changing the maturity of a Senior Loan or a change in control of the borrower, frequently require the unanimous vote or consent of all lenders affected. The Fund intends never to act as the agent or principal negotiator or administrator of a Senior Loan, except to the extent it might be considered to be the principal negotiator of a loan negotiated by the Adviser for the Fund and/or one or more other registered investment companies managed by the Adviser.

The Fund will not act as an original lender for a loan if, after making such loan, loans originated by the Fund would exceed 20% of the Fund's Managed Assets. The Fund will generally only act as an original lender for a loan if, among other things, in the Adviser's judgment, the borrower can make timely payments on its loans and satisfy other credit standards established by the Adviser. The Adviser relies primarily on its own evaluation of the credit quality of such a borrower. As a result, the Fund is particularly dependent on the analytical abilities of the Adviser. Because of the nature of its investments, the Fund may be subject to allegations of lender liability and other claims. See *Risks Factors* *Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares* *Lender Liability Risk*. In addition, the Securities Act deems certain persons to be underwriters if they purchase a security from an issuer and later sell it to the public. Although it is not believed that the application of this Securities Act provision would cause the Fund to be engaged in the business of underwriting, a person who purchases an instrument from the Fund that was acquired by the Fund from the issuer of such instrument could allege otherwise. Under the Securities Act, an underwriter may be liable for material omissions or misstatements in an issuer's registration statement or prospectus.

The Fund will not originate a loan (i) to a borrower that is a portfolio company controlled by a fund managed by the Avenue Capital Group or (ii) where a member of the Avenue Capital Group or a fund managed by the Avenue Capital Group is the agent, principal negotiator or administrator of the loan, except to the extent that the Adviser or another registered investment company managed by the Adviser might be considered to be the principal negotiator of a loan it negotiates for the Fund and/or one or more other registered investment companies managed by the Adviser.

*Senior Loan assignments and participations.* The Fund may purchase Senior Loans by assignment from a lender in the original syndicate of lenders or from subsequent assignees. The purchaser of an assignment typically succeeds to all the rights and obligations under the loan agreement of the assigning lender and becomes a lender under the loan agreement. Assignments may, however, be arranged through private negotiations, and the rights and obligations acquired by the purchaser of an assignment may differ from, and be more limited than, those held by the assigning lender. The Fund may also purchase participations from lenders in the original syndicate making Senior Loans. When the Fund purchases a participation in a Senior Loan, the Fund will usually have a contractual relationship only with the lender selling the participation and not with the borrower. The Fund may have the right to receive payments of principal, interest and any fees to which it is entitled only from the lender selling the participation and only upon receipt by the lender of such payments from the borrower. As a result, the Fund may assume the credit risk of both the borrower and the lender selling the participation. In the event of insolvency of the lender selling a participation, the Fund may be treated as a general creditor of the lender.

In the case of a participation, the Fund generally will not have the right to enforce compliance by the borrower with the loan agreement, nor rights to any funds acquired by other lenders through set-off against the borrower. In addition, when the Fund holds a participation in a Senior Loan, it may not have the right to vote on whether to waive enforcement of any restrictive covenant breached by a borrower. Lenders voting in connection with a potential waiver of a restrictive covenant may have interests different from those of the Fund and may not consider the interests of the Fund. The Fund may not benefit directly from the collateral supporting a Senior Loan in which it has purchased the participation, although lenders that sell participations generally are required to distribute liquidation proceeds received by them pro rata among the holders of such participations.

**SECOND LIEN OR OTHER SUBORDINATED OR UNSECURED LOANS OR DEBT**

The Fund may invest in second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt. Such loans or debt are made by public and private corporations and other non-governmental entities and issuers for a variety of purposes. As in the case of Senior Loans, the Fund may purchase interests in second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt through assignments or participations (each as described above).

Second lien loans are secured by a second priority security interest in or lien on specified collateral securing the borrower's Senior Loans on a first lien basis. This means that Senior Loans are repaid in full with proceeds of the collateral before second lien loans are repaid. Second lien loans typically have less protections and rights as Senior Loans. Second lien loans are not (and by their terms cannot become) junior in lien priority to any obligation of the related borrower other than Senior Loans of such borrower. Second lien loans may have fixed or floating rate interest payments. Because second lien loans are secured on a junior basis to Senior Loans, they present a greater degree of investment risk but often pay interest at higher rates reflecting this additional risk. In addition, second lien loans of below investment grade quality share many of the risk characteristics of other non-investment grade securities.

Second lien and subordinated loans typically have greater price volatility than Senior Loans and may be less liquid.

Subordinated loans or debt may, and generally will, rank lower in priority of payment to Senior Loans and second lien loans of the borrower. Subordinated secured loans or debt typically are secured by a lower priority security interest in or lien on specified collateral, and typically have more subordinated protections and rights than Senior Loans and second lien loans. Subordinated loans may have fixed or adjustable floating rate interest payments. Because subordinated loans may rank lower as to priority of payment than Senior Loans and second lien loans of the borrower, they may present a greater degree of investment risk than Senior Loans and second lien loans but often pay interest at higher rates reflecting this additional risk. Other than their more subordinated status, such investments have many characteristics and risks similar to Senior Loans and second lien loans discussed above. Subordinated interests of below investment grade quality share risks similar to those of below investment grade securities.

Unsecured loans or debt generally have lower priority in right of payment compared to holders of secured loans of the borrower. Unsecured loans are not secured by a security interest in or lien on specified collateral. Unsecured loans by their terms may be or may become subordinate in right of payment to other obligations of the borrower, including Senior Loans, second lien loans and other debt. Unsecured loans may have fixed or adjustable floating rate interest payments. Because unsecured loans are subordinate to the Senior Loans and secured debt of the borrower, they may present a greater degree of investment risk but often pay interest at higher rates reflecting this additional risk. Unsecured interests of below investment grade quality share risks similar to those associated with other below investment grade securities.

## STRUCTURED PRODUCTS

The Fund may also invest in structured products, including CDOs, CBOs, CLOs, structured notes, credit-linked notes and other types of structured products. Generally, investments in structured products are interests in entities organized and operated for the purpose of restructuring the investment characteristics of the underlying investment interests or securities. These investment entities may be structured as trusts or other types of pooled investment vehicles. This type of restructuring generally involves the deposit with or purchase by an entity of the underlying investments and the issuance by that entity of one or more classes of securities backed by, or representing interests in, the underlying investments or referencing an indicator related to such investments. The cash flow or rate of return on the underlying investments may be apportioned among the newly issued securities to create different investment characteristics, such as varying maturities, credit quality, payment priorities and interest rate provisions. The cash flow or rate of return on a structured product may be determined by applying a multiplier to the rate of total return on the underlying investments or referenced indicator. Application of a multiplier is comparable to the use of financial leverage, both being speculative techniques. Leverage magnifies the potential for gain and the risk of loss. As a result, a relatively small decline in the value of the underlying investments or referenced indicator could result in a relatively large loss in the value of a structured product. Holders of structured products bear risks of the underlying investment, index or reference obligation (including income risk, credit risk and market risk) and are subject to counterparty risk. Certain structured products may be terminated early by the issuer if it is unable to hedge its obligations under the product, which could result in a loss to the Fund. In addition, the Fund may invest in other derivative instruments that are developed over time if their use would be consistent with the objectives of the Fund.

CDOs, CBOs and CLOs are types of asset-backed securities issued by special purpose vehicles created to reapportion the risk and return characteristics of a pool of assets. The underlying pool for a CLO, for example, may include domestic and foreign Senior Loans, senior unsecured loans and subordinate corporate loans, including loans that may be rated below investment grade or equivalent unrated loans. For CDOs, CBOs and CLOs, the cashflows are split into two or more portions, called tranches, varying in risk and yield. The assets, typically Senior Loans, are used as collateral supporting the various debt tranches issued by the special purpose vehicle. The key feature of these structures is the prioritization of the cash flows from a pool of underlying securities among the several classes of securities issued by a structured product. CBOs are structured debt securities backed by a diversified pool of high yield, public or private fixed income securities. These may be fixed pools or may be market value (or managed) pools of collateral. The riskiest portion is the equity tranche which bears the bulk of defaults from the bonds or loans in the trust and serves to protect to some degree the other, more senior tranches from default. Since it is partially protected from defaults, a senior tranche typically has higher ratings and lower yields than its underlying securities, and can be rated investment grade. Despite

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

the protection from the equity tranche, the various tranches can experience substantial losses due to actual defaults, increased sensitivity to defaults due to collateral default and disappearance of protecting tranches, market anticipation of defaults, as well as aversion to such securities as a class.

Certain structured products may be thinly traded or have a limited trading market and may have the effect of increasing the Fund's illiquidity to the extent that the Fund, at a particular point in time, may be unable to find qualified buyers for, and may have difficulty valuing, these securities. CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs are typically privately offered and sold, and thus, are not registered under the securities laws. As a result, investments in CDOs may be characterized by the Fund as illiquid securities; however, an active dealer market may exist for CDOs allowing a CDO to be considered liquid in some circumstances. In addition to the general risks associated with fixed income securities discussed herein, CDOs carry additional risks including, but not limited to: (i) the possibility that distributions from collateral securities will not be adequate to make interest or other payments; (ii) the quality of the collateral may decline in value or the collateral may go into default; (iii) the possibility that the CDOs are subordinate to other classes of obligations issued by the same issuer; and (iv) the complex structure of the security may not be fully understood at the time of investment and may produce disputes with the issuer or unexpected investment results.

Structured notes are derivative securities for which the amount of principal repayment and/or interest payments is based on the movement of one or more factors. These factors include, but are not limited to: currency exchange rates, interest rates (such as the prime lending rate or LIBOR), referenced bonds and stock indices. Some of these factors may or may not correlate to the total rate of return on one or more underlying instruments referenced in such notes. In some cases, the impact of the movements of these factors may increase or decrease through the use of multipliers or deflators. A credit-linked note is a derivative instrument that is an obligation between two or more parties where the payment of principal and/or interest is based on the performance of some obligation (a reference obligation).

The Fund may have the right to receive payments to which it is entitled only from the issuer of the structured product, and generally does not have direct rights against the issuer of, or the entity that sold, the assets underlying the structured product. While certain structured products enable the investor to acquire interests in a pool of securities without the brokerage and other expenses associated with directly holding such securities, investors in structured products generally pay their share of the structured product's administrative and other expenses. Structured products may be private investment funds (structured as trusts or other types of pooled investment companies that are excluded from the definition of investment company under the 1940 Act by the operation of Section 3(c)(1) or 3(c)(7) thereof) or investment companies that are registered under the 1940 Act. Investment in such products involves operating expenses and fees that are in addition to the expenses and fees of the Fund, and such expenses and fees are borne indirectly by holders of the Fund's Common Shares. For structured products that are registered under the 1940 Act, please also see Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Other Investments Securities of Other Investment Companies.

## SWAPS

The Fund may enter into swap transactions, including credit default, total return, index and interest rate swap agreements, as well as options thereon, and may purchase or sell interest rate caps, floors and collars. A swap is a derivative in the form of an agreement to exchange the return generated by one instrument for the return generated by another instrument. A swap transaction involves swapping one or more investment characteristics of a security or a basket of securities with another party. The payment streams are calculated by reference to the investment characteristic(s) chosen applied to an agreed upon notional amount.

A credit default swap is an agreement between two parties to exchange the credit risk of a particular issuer or reference entity. In a credit default swap transaction, a buyer pays periodic fees in return for payment by the seller which is contingent upon an adverse credit event occurring in the underlying issuer or reference entity. The seller collects periodic fees from the buyer and profits if the credit of the underlying issuer or reference entity remains stable or improves while the swap is outstanding, but the seller in a credit default swap contract would be required to pay an agreed upon amount to the buyer (which may be the entire notional amount of the swap) in the event of an adverse credit event in the reference entity. A buyer of a credit default swap is said to buy protection whereas a seller of a credit default swap is said to sell protection.

Total return and index swaps may be used as substitutes for owning the physical securities that compose a given market index or to obtain non-leveraged exposure in markets where no physical securities are available such as an interest rate index. Total return refers to the payment (or receipt) of an index's total return (including both price return and dividends or other distributions), which is then exchanged for the receipt (or payment) of a floating interest rate. Total return swaps provide the Fund with the additional flexibility of gaining exposure to a market or sector index by using a cost-effective instrument.

An interest rate swap involves the exchange by the Fund with a counterparty of their respective commitments to pay or receive amounts based on changes in interest rates. The purchase of an interest rate cap entitles the purchaser, to the extent that a specified index exceeds a predetermined interest rate, to receive payments of interest on a contractually-based principal amount from the party selling the interest rate cap. The purchase of an interest rate floor entitles the purchaser, to the extent that a specified index falls below a predetermined interest rate, to receive payments of interest on a contractually-based principal amount from the party selling the interest rate floor. An interest rate collar

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

combines the elements of purchasing a cap and selling a floor. The collar protects against an interest rate rise above the maximum amount but foregoes the benefit of an interest rate decline below the minimum amount.

The Fund may write (sell) and purchase put and call swap options. A swap option, or swaption, is a contract that gives a counterparty the right (but not the obligation) to enter into a new swap agreement or to shorten, extend, cancel or otherwise modify an existing swap agreement, at some designated future time on specified terms.

Swaps generally do not involve the delivery of securities, other underlying assets or principal. Accordingly, the risk of loss with respect to swaps is limited to the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually obligated to make. However, because some swap agreements have a leverage component, adverse changes in the value or level of the underlying asset, reference rate, or index can result in a loss substantially greater than the amount invested in the swap itself. If the other party to a swap defaults, the Fund's risk of loss consists of the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually entitled to receive. Currency swaps usually involve the delivery of the entire principal value of one designated currency in exchange for the other designated currency. Therefore, the entire principal value of a currency swap is subject to the risk that the other party to the swap will default on its

contractual delivery obligations. If there is a default by the counterparty, the Fund may have contractual remedies pursuant to the agreements related to the transaction. The swap market has grown substantially in recent years with a large number of banks and investment banking firms acting both as principals and as agents utilizing standardized swap documentation.

The Fund may engage in swaptions for hedging purposes, to manage and mitigate credit and interest rate risks and to gain exposure to credit obligations. The use of swaptions involves risks, including, among others, (i) changes in the market value of securities held by the Fund, and of swaptions relating to those securities may not be proportionate, (ii) there may not be a liquid market to sell a swaption, which could result in difficulty closing a position, (iii) swaptions can magnify the extent of losses incurred due to changes in the market value of the securities to which they relate and (iv) counterparty risk.

The Fund will usually enter into swaps on a net basis, *i.e.*, the two payment streams are netted out in a cash settlement on the payment date or dates specified in the instrument, with the Fund receiving or paying, as the case may be, only the net amount of the two payments. The Fund's obligations under a swap agreement will be accrued daily (offset against any amounts owing to the Fund) and any accrued but unpaid net amounts owed to a swap counterparty will be covered by the maintenance of a segregated account consisting of cash or liquid securities to avoid any potential leveraging of the Fund. The Fund may enter into over-the-counter derivatives transactions (swaps, caps, floors and puts).

It is possible that government regulation of various types of derivative instruments, including futures and swap agreements, may limit or prevent the Fund from using such instruments as part of its investment strategy, which could negatively impact the Fund. For example, through its comprehensive new regulatory regime for derivatives, the Dodd-Frank Act imposes mandatory clearing, exchange-trading and margin requirements on certain derivatives transactions (including formerly unregulated over-the-counter derivatives) in which the Fund may engage. The Dodd-Frank Act also creates new categories of regulated market participants, such as swap dealers, security-based swap dealers, major swap participants, and major security-based swap participants who will be subject to significant new capital, registration, recordkeeping, reporting, disclosure, business conduct and other regulatory requirements. The details of these requirements and the parameters of these categories remain to be clarified through rulemaking and interpretations by the CFTC, the SEC, the Federal Reserve Board and other regulators in a regulatory implementation process which is expected to take a significant amount of time.

Nonetheless, the possible effect of the Dodd-Frank Act likely will be to increase the Fund's overall costs of entering into derivatives transactions. In particular, new margin requirements, position limits and capital charges, even if not directly applicable to the Fund, may cause an increase in the pricing of derivatives transactions sold by market participants to whom such requirements apply. Administrative costs, due to new requirements such as registration, recordkeeping, reporting, and compliance, even if not directly applicable to the Fund, may also be reflected in higher pricing of derivatives. New exchange-trading and trade reporting requirements may lead to reductions in the liquidity of derivative transactions, causing higher pricing or reduced availability of derivatives, or the reduction of arbitrage opportunities for the Fund, adversely affecting the performance of certain of the Fund's trading strategies.

The Fund intends to comply with applicable regulatory requirements when implementing swaps, including the segregation of cash and/or liquid securities on the books of the Fund's custodian, as mandated by SEC rules or SEC staff positions.

### USE OF SEGREGATED AND OTHER ACCOUNTS

Many transactions in derivative instruments (including swaps), in addition to other requirements, require that the Fund segregate cash and/or liquid securities to the extent Fund obligations are not covered or subject to offsetting positions or transactions. In general, either the full amount of any obligation by the Fund to pay or deliver securities or assets must be covered at all times by the securities, instruments or currency

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

required to be delivered (or securities convertible into the needed securities without additional consideration), or, subject to any regulatory restrictions, the Fund must segregate cash and/or liquid securities in an amount at least equal to the current amount of the obligation. In the case of a futures contract or an option on a futures contract, the Fund must deposit initial margin and possible daily variation margin in addition to segregating cash and/or liquid securities sufficient to meet its obligation to purchase or provide securities or currencies, or to pay the amount owed at the expiration of a cash settled futures contract. Transactions in derivative instruments may be covered by other means when consistent with applicable regulatory policies. The Fund may also enter into offsetting transactions so that its combined position, coupled with any segregated cash and/or liquid securities, equals its net outstanding obligation.

### FOREIGN SECURITIES

The Fund may invest without limitation in securities of borrowers that are organized or located in countries other than the United States, including non-U.S. dollar denominated securities and may invest without limitation in obligations of issuers located in emerging market countries. The percentage of assets invested in securities of a particular country or denominated in a particular currency will vary in accordance with the Fund's assessment of the relative yield, appreciation potential and the relationship of a country's currency to the U.S. dollar, which is based upon such factors as fundamental economic strength, credit quality and interest rate trends. Investments in securities of foreign issuers present certain risks not ordinarily associated with investments in securities of U.S. issuers, including that non-U.S. issuers may be subject to less rigorous accounting and reporting requirements than U.S.

issuers, less rigorous regulatory requirements, different and perhaps not as well formulated and defined legal systems and laws relating to creditors' rights, the potential inability to enforce legal judgments and the potential for political, social and economic adversity. Investments by the Fund in non-U.S. dollar denominated investments will be subject to substantially similar risks to those associated with direct investment in securities of foreign issuers, and are subject to currency risk as well. Currency risk is the risk that fluctuations in the exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and non-U.S. currencies may negatively affect an investment. The value of investments denominated in non-U.S. currencies may fluctuate based on changes in the value of those currencies relative to the U.S. dollar, and a decline in applicable foreign exchange rates could reduce the value of such investments held by the Fund. The Fund may also hold non-U.S. dollar denominated Senior Loans or other securities received as part of a reorganization or restructuring. In addition, the underlying issuers of certain depositary receipts, particularly unsponsored or unregistered depositary receipts, are under no obligation to distribute shareholder communications to the holders of such receipts, or to pass through to them any voting rights with respect to the deposited securities.

The foreign securities in which the Fund may invest may be issued by companies or governments located in emerging market countries. Investing in the securities of issuers operating in emerging markets involves a high degree of risk and special considerations not typically associated with investing in the securities of other foreign or U.S. issuers. Compared to the United States and other developed countries, emerging market countries may have relatively unstable governments, economies based on only a few industries and securities markets that trade a small number of securities. Securities issued by companies or governments located in emerging market countries tend to be especially volatile and may be less liquid than securities traded in developed countries. Securities in these countries have been characterized by greater potential loss than securities of companies and governments located in developed countries. Investments in the securities of issuers located in emerging markets could be affected by risks associated with expropriation and/or nationalization, political or social instability, pervasiveness of corruption and crime, armed conflict, the impact on the economy of civil war, religious or ethnic unrest and the withdrawal or non-renewal of any license enabling the Fund to trade in securities of a particular country, confiscatory taxation, restrictions on transfers of assets, lack of uniform accounting and auditing standards, less publicly available financial and other information, diplomatic development which could affect U.S. investments in those countries and potential difficulties in enforcing contractual obligations.

Since the Fund may invest in securities of foreign issuers denominated in the local currency, changes in foreign currency exchange rates will affect the value of securities in the Fund's portfolio and the unrealized appreciation or depreciation of investments. In addition to changes in the value of the Fund's portfolio investments resulting from currency fluctuations, the Fund may incur costs in connection with conversions between various currencies. The Fund may also invest directly in currencies for hedging purposes. The Fund is subject to the risk that those currencies will decline in value relative to the U.S. dollar. The values of the currencies of the emerging market countries in which the Fund may invest may be subject to a high degree of fluctuation due to changes in interest rates, the effects of monetary policies issued by the United States, foreign governments, central banks or supranational entities, the imposition of currency controls or due to other national or global political or economic developments. Foreign exchange dealers realize a profit based on the difference between the prices at which they are buying and selling various currencies. Thus, a dealer normally will offer to sell a foreign currency to the Fund at one rate, while offering a lesser rate of exchange should the Fund desire immediately to resell that currency to the dealer. The Fund conducts its foreign currency exchange transactions either on a spot (i.e., cash) basis at the spot rate prevailing in the foreign currency exchange market, or through entering into forward, futures or options contracts to purchase or sell foreign currencies. Therefore, the Fund's exposure to foreign currencies may result in reduced returns to the Fund. The Fund may also engage in foreign currency hedging transactions. See Foreign Currency Transactions below.

Investing in Euro-denominated (or other European currency-denominated) securities entails risk of being exposed to a currency that may not fully reflect the strengths and weaknesses of the disparate European economies. In addition, it is possible that the Euro could be abandoned in the future by countries that have already adopted its use. The effects of such an abandonment on the applicable country and the rest of the European Economic and Monetary Union (EMU) are uncertain but could be negative and severe. Many European countries rely heavily upon export-dependent businesses and any change in the exchange rate between the Euro and the U.S. dollar can have either a positive or a negative effect upon corporate profits and the performance of investments in the European Union. Moreover, as the European debt crisis has progressed, the possibility of one or more European countries exiting the EMU, or even of the collapse of the Euro as a common currency, has arisen. The effects of the collapse of the Euro, or of the exit of one or more countries from the EMU, on the United States and global economy and securities markets are impossible to predict and any such events could have a significant adverse impact on the value and risk profile of the Fund's portfolio.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

*Foreign currency transactions.* The Fund may enter into foreign exchange forward contracts ( forward contracts ) for hedging or portfolio management purposes. A forward contract involves an obligation to purchase or sell a specific currency at a future date, which may be any fixed number of days from the date of the contract agreed upon by the parties, at a price set at the time of the contract. These contracts are traded in the interbank market conducted directly between currency traders (usually large, commercial and investment banks) and their customers. A non-deliverable currency forward contract is typically a short-term forward contract on a thinly traded non-convertible foreign currency where the profit and loss is the difference between a specified exchange rate and the spot rate at the time of settlement. A forward contract generally has no deposit requirement, and no commissions are charged at any stage for trades. By entering into a forward contract for the purchase or sale, for a fixed amount of dollars or other currency, of the amount of foreign currency involved in the underlying security transactions, the Fund may be able to protect itself against a possible loss resulting from an adverse change in the relationship between the U.S. dollar or other currency which is being used for the

security purchase and the foreign currency in which the security is denominated during the period between the date on which the security is purchased or sold and the date on which payment is made or received. They may also be used to lock in the current exchange rate of the currency in which those securities anticipated to be purchased are denominated. At times, the Fund may enter into cross-currency hedging transactions involving currencies other than those in which securities that are held or proposed to be purchased are denominated. The Fund may also enter into currency swap transactions. A currency swap generally involves an agreement to pay interest streams in one currency based on a specified index in exchange for receiving interest streams denominated in another currency. Such swaps also usually involve initial and final exchanges of the designated currency that correspond to an agreed upon notional amount. Currency swaps usually involve the delivery of the entire principal value of one designated currency in exchange for the other designated currency. Therefore, the entire principal value of a currency swap is subject to the risk that the other party to the swap will default on its contractual delivery obligations.

The Fund may conduct its foreign currency exchange transactions either on a spot (i.e., cash) basis at the spot rate prevailing in the foreign currency exchange market, or through entering into forward contracts to purchase or sell foreign currencies. The Fund will not enter into forward contracts or maintain a net exposure to these contracts where the consummation of the contracts would obligate the Fund to deliver an amount of foreign currency in excess of the value of the Fund's portfolio securities. When required by law, the Fund will cause its custodian bank to earmark cash or other liquid portfolio securities in an amount equal to the net amounts of the Fund's currency exposure under its forward contracts. If the value of the securities so earmarked declines, additional cash or liquid securities will be earmarked on a daily basis so that the value of such securities will equal the net amount of the Fund's currency exposure with respect to such contracts. Forward contracts may limit gains on portfolio securities that could otherwise be realized had they not been utilized and could result in losses. The contracts may also increase the Fund's volatility and may involve a significant amount of risk relative to the investment of cash.

Although the Fund values its assets daily in terms of U.S. dollars, it does not intend to convert its holdings of foreign currencies into U.S. dollars on a daily basis. It will, however, do so from time to time, and investors should be aware of the costs of currency conversion. Although foreign exchange dealers do not typically charge a separate fee for conversion, they do realize a profit based on the spread between the prices at which they are buying and selling various currencies. Thus, a dealer may offer to sell a foreign currency to the Fund at one rate, while offering a lesser rate of exchange should the Fund desire to resell that currency to the dealer.

## **OTHER DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS**

The Fund generally seeks to use certain derivative instruments as portfolio management or hedging techniques. In doing so, the Fund seeks to protect against possible adverse changes in the market value of securities held in or to be purchased for the Fund's portfolio, protect the Fund's unrealized gains, facilitate the sale of certain securities for investment purposes, protect against changes in currency exchange rates or adjust the exposure to a particular currency, manage the effective maturity or duration of the Fund's portfolio, or establish positions in the derivatives markets as a substitute for purchasing or selling particular securities. The Fund may also use derivative instruments to earn income. Among derivative instruments the Fund may utilize are forward contracts, options, futures contracts and options on futures contracts. In addition, the Fund may invest in other derivative instruments that are developed over time if their use would be consistent with the objectives of the Fund.

Derivative instruments have risks, including the imperfect correlation between the value of such instruments and the underlying assets, the possible default of the other party to the transaction and illiquidity of the derivative instrument. Furthermore, the ability to successfully use derivative instruments depends on the ability of the Fund to predict pertinent market movements, which cannot be assured. In addition, transactions in such instruments may involve commissions and other costs, which may increase the Fund's expenses and reduce its return. Thus, the use of derivative instruments may result in losses greater than if they had not been used, may require the Fund to sell or purchase portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than current market values, may limit the amount of appreciation the Fund can otherwise realize on an investment, or may cause the Fund to hold a security that it might otherwise sell. In addition, amounts paid as premiums and cash or other assets held in margin accounts with respect to derivative instruments are not otherwise available to the Fund for investment purposes.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

When conducted outside the United States, transactions in derivative instruments may not be regulated as rigorously as in the United States, may not involve a clearing mechanism and related guarantees, and are subject to the risk of governmental actions affecting trading in, or the prices of, foreign securities, currencies and other instruments. The value of such positions also could be adversely affected by: (i) other complex foreign political, legal and economic factors; (ii) lesser availability than in the United States of data on which to make trading decisions; (iii) delays in the Fund's ability to act upon economic events occurring in foreign markets during non-business hours in the United States; (iv) the imposition of different exercise and settlement terms and procedures and margin requirements than in the United States and (v) lower trading volume and liquidity.

The Fund can engage in options transactions on securities, indices or on futures contracts to attempt to manage the Fund's risk in advancing or declining markets. For example, the value of a put option generally increases as the value of the underlying security declines. Value is protected against a market decline to the degree the performance of the put correlates with the performance of the Fund's investment portfolio. If the market remains stable or advances, the Fund can refrain from exercising the put and its portfolio will participate in the advance, having incurred only the premium cost for the put. The Fund may purchase and sell listed and over-the-counter options ( OTC Options ). OTC Options are subject to certain additional risks including default by the other party to

the transaction and the liquidity of the transactions.

The Fund may enter into contracts for the purchase or sale for future delivery of securities or contracts based on financial indices including any index of domestic or foreign government securities (futures contracts) and may purchase and write put and call options to buy or sell futures contracts (options on futures contracts). A sale of a futures contract means the acquisition of a contractual obligation to deliver the securities called for by the contract at a specified price on a specified date. A purchase of a futures contract means the incurring of a contractual obligation to acquire the securities called for by the contract at a specified price on a specified date. The purchaser of a futures contract on an index agrees to take delivery of an amount of cash equal to the difference between a specified multiple of the value of the index on the expiration date of the contract and the price at which the contract was originally struck. No physical delivery of the securities underlying the index is made. These investment techniques generally are used to protect against anticipated future changes in interest rates which otherwise might either adversely affect the value of the Fund's portfolio securities or adversely affect the price of securities which the Fund intends to purchase at a later date. In addition, some strategies can be performed with greater ease and at lower cost by utilizing the options and futures contracts markets rather than purchasing or selling portfolio securities. However, such transactions involve risks different from those involved with direct investments in underlying securities.

The Fund intends to comply with applicable regulatory requirements when implementing derivative instruments including the segregation of cash and/or liquid securities on the books of the Fund's custodian, as mandated by SEC rules or SEC staff positions. See "Investment Objectives, Policies and Risks" "Additional Risks of Other Derivative Instruments" in the SAI.

## **EQUITY SECURITIES**

Common stock generally represents an ownership or equity interest in an issuer, without preference over any other class of securities, including such issuer's debt securities, preferred stock and other senior equity securities. Common stocks are entitled to the income and increase in the value of the assets and business of the issuer after all its debt obligations and obligations to preferred stockholders are satisfied. Common stocks generally have voting rights. Common stocks fluctuate in price in response to many factors including historical and prospective earnings of the issuer, the value of its assets, general economic conditions, interest rates, investor perceptions and market liquidity. They may or may not pay dividends, as some issuers reinvest all of their profits back into their businesses, while others pay out some of their profits to stockholders as dividends, while others do not generate sufficient income to support a dividend.

## **OTHER INVESTMENTS**

### **Securities of other investment companies**

The Fund may invest its assets in securities of other open- and closed-end investment companies, including affiliated registered investment companies to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act. As a shareholder in an investment company, the Fund will bear its ratable share of that investment company's expenses, and will remain subject to payment of the Fund's investment advisory and other fees and expenses with respect to assets so invested. Common Shareholders will therefore be subject to duplicative expenses to the extent that the Fund invests in other investment companies. Expenses will be taken into account when evaluating the merits of such investments. In addition, the securities of other investment companies may also be leveraged and will therefore be subject to certain leverage risks. The net asset value and market value of leveraged securities will be more volatile and the yield to stockholders will tend to fluctuate more than the yield generated by unleveraged securities. Investment companies may have investment policies that differ from those of the Fund. If the Fund invests in securities issued by an investment company that are not credit obligations, such investment will only count toward the Fund's 80% portfolio guideline if the investment

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

company itself has a policy to invest at least 80% of its assets in credit obligations. If the Fund invests in affiliated registered investment companies, it is not anticipated that such investment companies would waive any sales load or other fees for the Fund.

### **Zero coupon bonds**

Certain debt obligations purchased by the Fund may take the form of zero coupon bonds. A zero coupon bond is a bond that does not pay interest either for the entire life of the obligation or for an initial period after the issuance of the obligation. When held to its maturity, its return comes from the difference between the purchase price and its maturity value. A zero coupon bond is normally issued and traded at a deep discount from face value. Zero coupon bonds allow an issuer to avoid or delay the need to generate cash to meet current interest payments and, as a result, may involve greater market risk and credit risk than bonds that pay interest currently or in cash. The Fund would be required to distribute the income on any of these instruments as it accrues, even though the Fund will not receive all of the income on a current basis or in cash. Thus, the Fund may have to sell other investments, including when it may not be advisable to do so, to make income distributions to its shareholders. Distributions attributable to the Fund's original issue discount income accruing on zero coupon bonds, and of all other ordinary income, will generally be taxable to the Common Shareholders as ordinary income. As a consequence of selling investments in order to make distributions of original issue discount income and other income in respect of which the Fund has not received a corresponding amount of cash, the Fund may realize additional income that gives rise to additional distribution requirements; distributions of such additional income may be taxable to the Common Shareholders as ordinary income or as long-term capital gain depending on which investments are sold. See

Tax Matters   Distributions   in the SAI.

### **Repurchase agreements and reverse repurchase agreements**

The Fund may engage in repurchase agreements with broker-dealers, banks and other financial institutions to earn incremental income on temporarily available cash which would otherwise be uninvested. A repurchase agreement is a short-term investment in which the purchaser (i.e., the Fund) acquires ownership of a security and the seller agrees to repurchase the obligation at a future time and set price, thereby determining the yield during the holding period. Repurchase agreements involve certain risks in the event of default by the other party. The Fund may enter into repurchase agreements with broker-dealers, banks and other financial institutions deemed to be creditworthy.

Repurchase agreements are required to be fully collateralized by the underlying securities and are considered to be loans under the 1940 Act. The Fund pays for such securities only upon physical delivery or evidence of book entry transfer to the account of a custodian or bank acting as agent. The seller under a repurchase agreement will be required to maintain the value of the underlying collateral securities marked-to-market daily at not less than the repurchase price. The underlying securities (normally securities of the U.S. government and its agencies or instrumentalities) may have maturity dates exceeding one (1) year.

The Fund may borrow through entering into reverse repurchase agreements under which the Fund sells portfolio investments to financial institutions such as banks and broker-dealers and generally agrees to repurchase them at a mutually agreed future date and price. Generally, the effect of a reverse repurchase agreement is that, during the term of the agreement, the Fund can obtain and reinvest all or most of the cash value of the portfolio investment it sold under the agreement and still be entitled to the returns associated with such portfolio investment thereby resulting in a transaction similar to a borrowing and giving rise to leverage for the Fund. The Fund may utilize reverse repurchase agreements when it is anticipated that the interest income to be earned from the investment of the proceeds of the transaction is greater than the interest expense of the transaction.

In the event the buyer of securities under a reverse repurchase agreement files for bankruptcy or becomes insolvent, the Fund's use of the proceeds of the agreement may be restricted pending a determination by the other party, or its trustee or receiver, whether to enforce the Fund's obligation to repurchase the securities. Reverse repurchase agreements are considered to be borrowings under the 1940 Act unless the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the Fund's obligations under the reverse repurchase agreements (or segregates such other amount permitted by the 1940 Act or SEC guidance from time to time).

### **When-issued and delayed delivery securities**

The Fund may purchase and sell securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis whereby the Fund buys or sells a security with payment and delivery taking place in the future. The payment obligation and the interest rate are fixed at the time the Fund enters into the commitment. No income accrues to the Fund on securities in connection with such transactions prior to the date the Fund actually takes delivery of such securities. These transactions are subject to market risk as the value or yield of a security at delivery may be more or less than the purchase price or the yield generally available on securities when delivery occurs. In addition, the Fund is subject to counterparty risk because it relies on the buyer or seller, as the case may be, to consummate the transaction, and failure by the other party to complete the transaction may result in the Fund missing the opportunity of obtaining a price or yield considered to be advantageous. When the Fund is the buyer in such a transaction, however, it will segregate cash and/or liquid securities having an aggregate value at least equal to the amount of such purchase commitments until payment is made. An increase in the percentage of the Fund's assets committed to the purchase of securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis may increase the volatility of the Fund's NAV.

**Private placements and restricted securities**

The Fund may invest in securities which are subject to restrictions on resale because they have not been registered under the Securities Act. These securities are generally referred to as private placements or restricted securities. Limitations on the resale of these securities may have an adverse effect on their marketability, and may prevent the Fund from disposing of them promptly at reasonable prices. The Fund may have to bear the expense of registering the securities for resale and the risk of substantial delays in effecting the registration.

The Fund has no liquidity limitation or restriction; thus, some or all of the Fund investments may be in illiquid securities. At times, private placements or restricted securities, as well as other securities in which the Fund may invest, may be deemed illiquid. Investments in illiquid securities tend to restrict the Fund's ability to dispose of instruments in a timely fashion and restrict the Fund's ability to take advantage of market opportunities.

**Short sales**

The Fund may engage in short sales. A short sale is a transaction in which the Fund sells an instrument that it does not own in anticipation that the market price will decline. To deliver the securities to the buyer, the Fund arranges through a broker to borrow the securities and, in so doing, the Fund becomes obligated to replace the securities borrowed at their market price at the time of

replacement. When selling short, the Fund intends to replace the securities at a lower price and therefore, profit from the difference between the cost to replace the securities and the proceeds received from the sale of the securities. When the Fund makes a short sale, the proceeds it receives from the sale will be held on behalf of a broker until the Fund replaces the borrowed securities. The Fund may have to pay a premium to borrow the securities and must pay any dividends or interest payable on the securities until they are replaced. The Fund's obligation to replace the securities borrowed in connection with a short sale will be secured by collateral deposited with the broker that consists of cash and/or liquid securities. In addition, the Fund will place in a segregated account an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the difference, if any, between (i) the market value of the securities sold at the time they were sold short, and (ii) any cash and/or liquid securities deposited as collateral with the broker in connection with the short sale. Short sales involve certain risks and special considerations. If the Fund incorrectly predicts that the price of the borrowed security will decline, the Fund will have to replace the securities with securities with a greater value than the amount received from the sale. As a result, losses from short sales differ from losses that could be incurred from a purchase of a security, because losses from short sales may be unlimited, whereas losses from purchases can equal only the total amount invested.

## **Warrants**

Warrants give holders the right, but not the obligation, to buy common stock of an issuer at a given price, usually higher than the market price at the time of issuance, during a specified period. The risk of investing in a warrant is that the warrant may expire prior to the market value of the common stock exceeding the price fixed by the warrant. Warrants have a subordinate claim on a borrower's assets compared with Senior Loans. As a result, the values of warrants generally are dependent on the financial condition of the borrower and less dependent on fluctuations in interest rates than are the values of many debt securities. The values of warrants may be more volatile than those of Senior Loans and this may increase the volatility of the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares.

## **Temporary investments**

During the period in which the net proceeds of this offering are being invested, in order to keep the Fund's cash fully invested and, for defensive purposes, during periods in which the Adviser believes that changes in economic, financial or political conditions make it advisable to do so, the Fund may reduce its primary investment holdings (when taking a defensive position) and invest in certain short-term (less than one (1) year to maturity) and medium-term (not greater than five (5) years to maturity) debt securities or hold cash. The short-term and medium-term debt securities in which the Fund may invest consist of: (i) obligations of the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities; (ii) bank deposits and bank obligations (including certificates of deposit, time deposits and bankers' acceptances) of U.S. or foreign banks denominated in any currency; (iii) floating rate securities and other instruments denominated in any currency issued by various governments or international development agencies; (iv) finance company and corporate commercial paper and other short-term corporate debt obligations of U.S. or foreign corporations; (v) repurchase agreements with banks and broker-dealers with respect to such securities; and (vi) shares of money market funds. The Fund intends to invest for these temporary purposes only in short-term and medium-term debt securities that the Adviser believes to be of high quality, *i.e.*, subject to relatively low risk of loss of interest or principal. In taking such positions, the Fund temporarily would not be pursuing and may not achieve its investment objectives. It is impossible to predict when, or for how long, the Fund will use these alternative strategies. There can be no assurance that such strategies will be successful.

## **USE OF LEVERAGE AND RELATED RISKS**

The Fund utilizes financial leverage for investment purposes (*i.e.*, to purchase additional portfolio securities consistent with the Fund's investment objectives and primary investment strategy). The Fund has utilized leverage since shortly after it began investment operations and expects to continue to use leverage, although there can be no assurance, however, that the Fund will continue to engage in any leveraging techniques. The Fund is currently a party to the Credit Facility with The Bank of Nova Scotia and, as of [ ], 2014, had \$[ ] in borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility which represented [ ]% of the Fund's Managed Assets as of such date (including the

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

proceeds of such leverage). At the completion of the rights offering, the percentage of the Fund's total assets represented by borrowings or other forms of leverage is to remain approximately the same as immediately before completion. Although the Fund is permitted to borrow money and issue senior securities to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act (as described in "Investment restrictions" in the SAI), the Fund's current Credit Facility does not permit the Fund to have more than \$122,000,000 in borrowings outstanding at any one time and imposes other limits on indebtedness that are more stringent than the 1940 Act. The Fund's portfolio investments, among other property of the Fund, have been pledged as collateral to secure the loans made under the Credit Facility. Under the Credit Facility, the Fund is required to prepay outstanding loans or incur a penalty rate of interest upon the occurrence of certain events of default. Under the Credit Facility, the Fund has agreed to indemnify the lender, its affiliates and other related parties against liabilities they may incur relating to the Credit Facility. Further, until the lender's commitment to make loans has terminated and the Fund's borrowings have been repaid, the Credit Facility imposes on the Fund customary covenants, including all of the restrictive covenants described below in the last paragraph of "Description of capital structure - Credit Facility/Commercial Paper Program/Notes" (other than a covenant requiring currency hedging). The Credit Facility expires on March 6, 2015 (although, subject to certain conditions including the payment of an additional fee, the Fund may extend the maturity date of its outstanding loans for up to approximately one (1) year following such expiration date). Although the Fund currently intends to renew the Credit Facility prior to its expiration date, there can be no assurance that the Fund will be able to do so or do so on terms similar to the current Credit Facility, which may adversely affect the ability of the Fund to pursue its investment

objectives and strategies. Following completion of the rights offering, the Fund currently intends to adjust leverage in its portfolio from time to time through the Credit Facility.

The Fund may also enter into other transactions that may give rise to a form of leverage including, among others, derivative transactions, loans of portfolio securities, and when-issued, delayed delivery and forward commitment transactions. Although it has no current intention to do so in the next twelve months, the Fund may also determine to issue preferred shares or notes to add leverage to its portfolio. Although the Fund uses leverage as discussed below, there can be no assurance that the Fund will continue to utilize financial leverage or that, if utilized, the Fund will be successful during any period in which leverage is employed. Generally speaking, if the Fund can invest the proceeds from financial leverage in portfolio securities that have higher rates of return than the costs of such financial leverage and other expenses of the Fund, then the Common Shareholders would have a net benefit.

The Fund is permitted to obtain leverage using any form or combination of financial leverage instruments, including reverse repurchase agreements, credit facilities such as bank loans or commercial paper, and the issuance of preferred shares or notes. Subject to prevailing market conditions, the Fund intends to use leveraging instruments to add financial leverage to its portfolio representing up to approximately 33 1/3 % of the Fund's total assets (including the assets subject to, and obtained with the proceeds of, such instruments). The Fund's intention to limit its use of financial leverage to 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets is not a fundamental policy of the Fund and may be changed without notice to the Fund's Common Shareholders. The Fund intends to use leverage opportunistically and may choose to increase or decrease its leverage, or use different types or combinations of leveraging instruments, at any time based on the Fund's assessment of market conditions and the investment environment.

The 1940 Act generally limits the extent to which the Fund may utilize uncovered reverse repurchase agreements and borrowings, together with any other senior securities representing indebtedness. Under the 1940 Act, the Fund is not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such incurrence the Fund has an asset coverage of at least 300% of the aggregate outstanding principal balance of the indebtedness (i.e., such indebtedness may not exceed 33 1/3 % of the Fund's total assets (including the proceeds from leverage)). Additionally, under the 1940 Act, the Fund generally may not declare any dividend or other distribution upon any class of its capital shares, or purchase any such capital shares, unless the aggregate indebtedness of the Fund has, at the time of the declaration of such dividend or distribution, or at the time of any such purchase, an asset coverage of at least 300% after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution or purchase price, as the case may be. With respect to asset coverage for preferred shares, under the 1940 Act, the Fund is not permitted to issue preferred shares unless immediately after such issuance the net asset value of the Fund's portfolio is at least 200% of the liquidation value of the outstanding preferred shares (i.e., such liquidation value may not exceed 50% of the Fund's total assets (less the Fund's obligations under uncovered reverse repurchase agreements, borrowings and other senior securities representing indebtedness)). In addition, the Fund is not permitted to declare any cash dividend or other distribution on its Common Shares unless, at the time of such distribution, the net asset value of the Fund's portfolio (determined after deducting the amount of such dividend or other distribution) is at least 200% of such liquidation value. If the Fund uses a combination of borrowing (including notes and other securities representing indebtedness) and issuing preferred shares, the maximum asset coverage required would be between 300% and 200% depending on the relative amounts of borrowings and preferred shares.

The asset coverage requirements under the 1940 Act set forth in the foregoing paragraph would only apply to the Fund's uncovered reverse repurchase agreements. Covered reverse repurchase agreements will not be counted against the foregoing limits under the 1940 Act (although the proceeds of, and assets subject to, such agreements would still be counted as part of the Fund's total assets). A reverse repurchase agreement will be considered covered if the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the Fund's obligations under such reverse repurchase agreement (or segregates such other amounts as may be permitted by the 1940 Act or SEC guidance from time to time); otherwise, a reverse repurchase agreement will be considered uncovered. The Fund may not cover a reverse repurchase agreement if it does not need to do so to comply with the foregoing 1940 Act requirements and, in the view of the Adviser, the assets that would have been used to cover could be better used for a different purpose.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund's Board regularly reviews the Fund's use of financial leverage (*i.e.*, the relative costs and benefits of leverage on the Fund's Common Shares) and reviews the alternative means to leverage (*i.e.*, the relative benefits and costs of using reverse repurchase agreements, credit facilities such as bank loans or commercial paper, the issuance of preferred shares or notes, or combinations thereof).

Leverage creates risks for holders of the Common Shares, including the likelihood of greater volatility in the NAV and market price of, and distributions on, the Common Shares. There is a risk that fluctuations in the distribution rates on any outstanding preferred shares or notes may adversely affect the return to the holders of the Common Shares. If the income from the investments purchased with such funds is not sufficient to cover the cost of leverage, the return on the Fund will be less than if leverage had not been used, and therefore the amount available for distribution to Common Shareholders will be reduced. The Fund in its reasonable judgment nevertheless may determine to maintain the Fund's leveraged position if it deems such action to be appropriate in the circumstances.

Changes in the value of the Fund's investment portfolio (including investments bought with the proceeds of leverage) will be borne entirely by the Common Shareholders. If there is a net decrease (or increase) in the value of the Fund's investment portfolio, the

leverage will decrease (or increase) the NAV to a greater extent than if the Fund were not leveraged. The use of leverage by the Fund may magnify the Fund's losses when there is a decrease in the value of a Fund investment and even totally eliminate the Fund's equity in its portfolio or a Common Shareholder's equity in the Fund. During periods in which the Fund is using leverage, the fees paid by the Fund for investment advisory services will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the investment advisory fees paid will be calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which include proceeds from leverage. As discussed under Description of capital structure, if preferred shares are used, holders of preferred shares will have rights to elect a minimum of two trustees. This voting power may negatively affect Common Shareholders, and the interests of holders of preferred shares may otherwise differ from the interests of Common Shareholders. Any trustees elected by preferred shareholders will represent both Common Shareholders as well as holders of preferred shares. Such trustees may have a conflict of interest when the interests of Common Shareholders differ from those of holders of preferred shares.

Capital raised through leverage will be subject to distribution and/or interest payments, which may exceed the income and appreciation on the assets purchased. The issuance of preferred shares or notes involves expenses associated with the Offer and other costs and may limit the Fund's freedom to pay distributions on Common Shares or to engage in other activities. All costs of offering and servicing any of the leverage methods the Fund may use will be borne entirely by the Fund's Common Shareholders. The interests of persons with whom the Fund enters into leverage arrangements (such as bank lenders, note holders and preferred shareholders) will not necessarily be aligned with the interests of the Fund's Common Shareholders and such persons will have claims on the Fund's assets that are senior to those of the Fund's Common Shareholders. Leverage creates an opportunity for a greater return per Common Share, but at the same time it is a speculative technique that will increase the Fund's exposure to capital risk. Unless the income and appreciation, if any, on assets acquired with leverage exceeds the cost of such leverage, the use of leverage will diminish the investment performance of the Fund's Common Shares compared with what it would have been without leverage.

Any lender in connection with a credit facility may impose specific restrictions as a condition to borrowing. The credit facility fees may include, among other things, up front structuring fees and ongoing commitment fees (including fees on amounts undrawn on the facility) in addition to the traditional interest expense on amounts borrowed. The credit facility may involve a lien on the Fund's assets. Similarly, to the extent the Fund issues preferred shares or notes, the Fund currently intends to seek an AAA or equivalent credit rating from one or more NRSROs on any preferred shares or notes it issues and the Fund may be subject to fees, covenants and investment restrictions required by the NRSRO as a result. Such covenants and restrictions imposed by a NRSRO or lender may include asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed on the Fund by the 1940 Act. It is not anticipated that these covenants or restrictions will significantly impede the Adviser in managing the Fund's portfolio in accordance with its investment objectives and policies. Nonetheless, if these covenants or guidelines are more restrictive than those imposed by the 1940 Act, the Fund may not be able to utilize as much leverage as it otherwise could have, which could reduce the Fund's investment returns. In addition, the Fund expects that any notes or a credit facility/commercial paper program would contain covenants that, among other things, will likely impose geographic exposure limitations, credit quality minimums, liquidity minimums, concentration limitations and currency hedging requirements on the Fund. These covenants would also likely limit the Fund's ability to pay distributions in certain circumstances, incur additional debt, change fundamental investment policies and engage in certain transactions, including mergers and consolidations. Such restrictions could cause the Adviser to make different investment decisions than if there were no such restrictions and could limit the ability of the Board and Common Shareholders to change fundamental investment policies.

The Fund must distribute in each taxable year at least 90% of its net investment income (including net interest income and net short-term gain) to qualify for the special tax treatment available to regulated investment companies. The Fund also will be required to distribute annually substantially all of its income and capital gain, if any, to avoid imposition of a nondeductible 4% federal excise tax. Prohibitions on dividends and other distributions on the Fund's Common Shares could impair the Fund's ability to qualify as a regulated investment company under the Code.

If the Fund is precluded from making distributions on the Common Shares because of any applicable asset coverage requirements, the terms of the preferred shares (if any) may provide that any amounts so precluded from being distributed, but required to be distributed for the Fund to meet the distribution requirements for qualification as a regulated investment company, will be paid to the holders of the preferred shares as a special distribution. This distribution can be expected to decrease the amount that holders of preferred shares would be entitled to receive upon redemption or liquidation of the shares.

If the Fund failed to qualify as a regulated investment company or failed to satisfy the 90% distribution requirement in any taxable year, the Fund would be subject to U.S. federal income tax at regular corporate rates on its taxable income, including its net capital gain, even if such income were distributed to its shareholders, and all distributions out of earnings and profits would be taxed to shareholders as ordinary dividend income. Requalifying as a regulated investment company could subject the Fund to significant tax costs. See Tax Matters Taxation of the Fund in the SAI.

The Fund's willingness to utilize leverage, and the amount of leverage the Fund will assume, will depend on many factors, the most important of which are market conditions and interest rates. Successful use of a leveraging strategy may depend on the Fund's ability to predict correctly interest rates and market movements, and there is no assurance that a leveraging strategy will be successful during any period in which it is employed. Any leveraging of the Common Shares cannot be achieved until the proceeds

resulting from the use of leverage have been invested in accordance with the Fund's investment objectives and policies.

The following table is furnished in response to requirements of the SEC. It is designed to illustrate the effects of leverage on Common Share total return, assuming investment portfolio total returns (consisting of income and changes in the value of investments held in the Fund's portfolio) of -10%, -5%, 0%, 5% and 10%. These assumed investment portfolio returns are hypothetical figures and are not necessarily indicative of the investment portfolio returns expected to be experienced by the Fund. The table assumes that the Fund adds financial leverage to its portfolio through bank borrowings representing 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets (including the assets subject to, and obtained with the proceeds of, such instruments) with an estimated annual interest rate of [ ]%.

|                                                                                      |        |        |        |      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|------|------|
| Assumed portfolio return (net of expenses)                                           | ([ ])% | ([ ])% | [ ]%   | [ ]% | [ ]% |
| Corresponding Common Share return assuming 33 1/3 % leverage through bank borrowings | ([ ])% | ([ ])% | ([ ])% | [ ]% | [ ]% |

Common Share total return is composed of two elements – the Common Share dividends paid by the Fund (the amount of which is largely determined by the net investment income of the Fund) and gains or losses on the value of the securities the Fund owns. As required by SEC rules, the table above assumes that the Fund is more likely to suffer capital losses than to enjoy capital appreciation. For example, to assume a total return of 0% the Fund must assume that the interest it receives on its investments is entirely offset by losses in the value of those investments.

In addition to leverage for investment purposes, the Fund may also borrow money as a temporary measure for extraordinary or emergency purposes, including the payment of distributions and the settlement of securities transactions which otherwise might require untimely dispositions of Fund investments.

Risk factors

## RISKS RELATING TO THE OFFER

### Dilution risk

As a result of this Offer, it is anticipated that even if you fully exercise your Rights, you should expect to incur immediate economic dilution and, if you do not exercise all of your Rights, you will incur voting dilution. Further, both the sales load and the expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund will immediately reduce the NAV of each Common Shareholder's Common Shares. To the extent that the number of Common Shares outstanding after the Offer will have increased proportionately more than the increase in the size of the Fund's net assets, you will, at the completion of the Offer, experience immediate dilution of NAV. The percentage increase in Common Shares outstanding that will occur if all the Rights are exercised is [ ]%. In addition, if the Subscription Price for the Offer is less than the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares as of the Expiration Date, you would experience additional immediate dilution of NAV as a result of the Offer. If the Subscription Price is substantially less than the current NAV at the expiration of the Offer, such dilution could be substantial. It is anticipated that the existing Common Shareholders will experience immediate dilution even if they fully exercise their Rights. In addition, whether or not you exercise your Rights, you will experience a dilution of NAV of the Common Shares because you will indirectly bear the expenses of this Offer, which include,

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

among other items, SEC registration fees, printing expenses and the fees assessed by service providers (including the cost of the Fund's counsel and independent registered public accounting firm). This dilution of NAV will disproportionately affect Common Shareholders who do not exercise their Rights. We cannot state precisely the amount of any decrease because we do not know at this time how many Common Shares will be subscribed for or what the NAV or market price of our Common Shares will be on the Expiration Date or what the Subscription Price will be. For example, based on the Fund's NAV and market price on [ ], the Subscription Price would be less than NAV and there would be dilution. Assuming full exercise of the Rights being offered at the Subscription Price and assuming that the Expiration Date were [ ], 2014, it is estimated that the per share dilution resulting from the Offer, as of [ ], 2014, would be \$[ ].

In addition to the economic dilution described above, if you do not exercise all of your Rights, you will incur voting dilution as a result of this Offer. This voting dilution will occur because you will own a smaller proportionate interest in the Fund after the Offer than you owned prior to the Offer.

The fact that the Rights are transferable may reduce the effects of dilution as a result of the Offer. Rights holders can transfer or sell their Rights. The cash received from the sale of Rights may be viewed as partial compensation for any possible dilution. There can be no assurances, however, that a market for the Rights will develop or that the Rights will have any value in that market.

### **Risks of investing in Rights**

Shares of closed-end funds such as the Fund frequently trade at a discount to net asset value. Since inception, the Fund's Common Shares have frequently traded at a discount in relation to NAV. See Description of Common Shares. If the Formula Price is less

than [ ]% of NAV on the Expiration Date, then the Subscription Price will likely be greater than the market price of a Common Share on that date. In addition, the Formula Price, even if above [ ]% of NAV, may still be above the market price of a Common Share on the Expiration Date]. If either event occurs, the Rights will have no value, and a person who exercises Rights will experience an immediate loss of value.

## **RISKS RELATING TO INVESTING IN THE FUND'S COMMON SHARES**

### **Market risk**

Market risk is the possibility that the market values of securities owned by the Fund will decline. The values of fixed income securities tend to fall as interest rates rise, and such declines tend to be greater among fixed income securities with longer remaining maturities. Market risk is often greater among certain types of fixed income securities, such as zero coupon bonds which do not make regular interest payments but are instead bought at a discount to their face values and paid in full upon maturity. As interest rates change, these securities often fluctuate more in price than securities that make regular interest payments and therefore subject the Fund to greater market risk than a fund that does not own these types of securities. The values of adjustable, variable or floating rate income securities tend to have less fluctuation in response to changes in interest rates, but will have some fluctuation particularly when the next interest rate adjustment on such security is further away in time or adjustments are limited in number over time. The Fund has no policy limiting the maturity of credit obligations it purchases. Such obligations often have mandatory and optional prepayment provisions and because of prepayments, the actual remaining maturity of loans and debts may be considerably less than their stated maturity. Obligations with longer remaining maturities or durations generally expose the Fund to more market risk. When-issued and delayed delivery transactions are subject to changes in market conditions from the time of the commitment until settlement. This may adversely affect the prices or yields of the securities being purchased. The greater the Fund's outstanding commitments for these securities, the greater the Fund's exposure to market price fluctuations. Interest rate risk can be considered a type of market risk.

### **Credit risk**

Credit risk refers to the possibility that the issuer of a security will be unable to make timely interest payments and/or repay the principal on its debt. Because the Fund may invest, without limitation, in securities that are below investment grade, the Fund is subject to a greater degree of credit risk than a fund investing primarily in investment grade securities. Below investment grade securities (that is, securities rated Ba or lower by Moody's or BB or lower by S&P) are commonly referred to as "junk" securities. Generally, lower-grade securities provide a higher yield than higher-grade securities of similar maturity but are subject to greater risks, such as greater credit risk, greater market risk and volatility, greater liquidity concerns and potentially greater manager risk. Such securities are generally regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuers' capacity to pay interest or repay principal in accordance with their terms. Lower-grade securities are more susceptible to non-payment of interest and principal and default than higher-grade securities and are more sensitive to specific issuer developments or real or perceived general adverse economic changes than higher-grade securities. The market for lower-grade securities may also have less information available than the market for other securities, further complicating evaluations and valuations of such securities and placing more emphasis on the experience, judgment and analysis of the Adviser with respect to the portion of the Fund's portfolio that each manages.

The Fund may invest in credit obligations of stressed issuers including those that are in covenant or payment default. Such obligations are subject to a multitude of legal, industry, market, economic and governmental forces each of which make analysis of these companies inherently difficult. The Adviser relies on company management, outside experts, market participants and personal experience to analyze potential investments. There can be no assurance that any of these sources will provide credible information, or that the Adviser's analysis will produce conclusions that lead to profitable investments for the portion of the Fund's portfolio that each manages. Obligations of stressed issuers generally trade significantly below par and are considered speculative. The repayment of defaulted obligations is subject to significant uncertainties. Defaulted obligations might be repaid only after lengthy workout or bankruptcy proceedings or result in only partial recovery of cash payments or an exchange of the defaulted obligation for other debt or equity securities of the issuer or its affiliates, which may in turn be illiquid or

speculative.

There are a number of significant risks inherent in the bankruptcy process. Many events in a bankruptcy are the product of contested matters and adversary proceedings and are beyond the control of the creditors. A bankruptcy court may approve actions that would be contrary to the interests of the Fund. A bankruptcy filing by an issuer may cause such issuer to lose its market position and key employees and otherwise become incapable of restoring itself as a viable entity, and its liquidation value may be less than its value was believed to be at the time of investment. In addition, the duration of a bankruptcy proceeding is difficult to predict and as such, a creditor's return on investment can be adversely affected by delays while the plan of reorganization is being negotiated, approved by the creditors and confirmed by the bankruptcy court and until it ultimately becomes effective. The administrative costs in connection with a bankruptcy proceeding are frequently high and would be paid out of the debtor's estate prior to any return to creditors. Further, in the early stages of the bankruptcy process it is often difficult to estimate the extent of any contingent claims that might be made and, as such, there is a risk that the Fund's influence with respect to the class of obligations it owns could be lost by increases in the number and amount of claims in that class or by different classification and treatment. A creditor, such as the Fund, can also lose its ranking and priority if it is determined that such creditor exercised domination and control over a debtor and other creditors can

demonstrate that they have been harmed by such actions. In addition, certain claims have priority by law, such as claims for taxes, which may be substantial and could affect the ability of the Fund to be repaid.

In any investment involving stressed debt obligations, there is a risk that the transaction involving such debt obligations will be unsuccessful, take considerable time or will result in a distribution of cash or a new security or obligation in exchange for the stressed debt obligations, the value of which may be less than the Fund's purchase price of such obligations. Furthermore, if an anticipated transaction does not occur, the Fund may be required to sell its investment at a loss. However, investments in equity securities obtained through debt restructurings or bankruptcy proceedings may be illiquid and thus difficult or impossible to sell.

### **Interest rate and income risk**

The income you receive from the Fund is based in large part on interest rates, which can vary widely over the short and long term. If interest rates drop, your income from the Fund may drop as well. The more the Fund invests in adjustable, variable or floating rate securities or in securities susceptible to prepayment risk, the greater the Fund's income risk. The historically low interest rate environment increases the risks associated with rising interest rates, including the potential for periods of volatility and increased redemptions. The Fund may face a heightened level of risk, especially since the Federal Reserve Board has begun tapering its quantitative easing program and may begin to raise rates. Securities with longer durations are likely to be more sensitive to changes in interest rates, generally making them more volatile than securities with shorter durations. Lower rated fixed income securities have greater volatility because there is less certainty that principal and interest payments will be made as scheduled.

### **Prepayment or call risk**

If interest rates fall, it is possible that issuers of fixed income securities with high interest rates will prepay or call their securities before their maturity dates. In this event, the proceeds from the prepaid or called securities would likely be reinvested by the Fund in securities bearing the new, lower interest rates, resulting in a possible decline in the Fund's income and distributions to shareholders.

### **Risks of Senior Loans**

There is less readily available and reliable information about most Senior Loans than is the case for many other types of instruments, including listed securities. Senior Loans are not listed on any national securities exchange or automated quotation system and as such, many Senior Loans are illiquid, meaning that the Fund may not be able to sell them quickly at a fair price. To the extent that a secondary market does exist for certain Senior Loans, the market is more volatile than for liquid, listed securities and may be subject to irregular trading activity, wide bid/ask spreads and extended trade settlement periods. The market for Senior Loans could be disrupted in the event of an economic downturn or a substantial increase or decrease in interest rates, resulting in fluctuations in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares and difficulty in valuing the Fund's portfolio of Senior Loans. Although the Adviser believes that the Fund's investments in adjustable rate Senior Loans could limit fluctuations in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares as a result of changes in interest rates, extraordinary and sudden changes in interest rates could nevertheless disrupt the market for such Senior Loans and result in fluctuations in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares and difficulty in valuing the Fund's portfolio of Senior Loans.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Senior Loans, like most other debt obligations, are subject to the risk of default. Default in the payment of interest or principal on a Senior Loan will result in a reduction of income to the Fund, a reduction in the value of the Senior Loan and a potential decrease in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares. The risk of default will increase in the event of an economic downturn or a substantial increase in interest rates. The Adviser relies primarily on its own evaluation of borrower credit quality rather than on any available independent sources. As a result, the Fund is particularly dependent on the analytical abilities of the Adviser.

The Fund may acquire or hold Senior Loans of borrowers that are experiencing, or are more likely to experience, financial difficulty, including Senior Loans issued to highly leveraged borrowers or borrowers that have filed for bankruptcy protection. Borrowers may have outstanding debt obligations, including Senior Loans, that are rated below investment grade. The Fund may invest a substantial portion of its assets in Senior Loans that are rated below investment grade or that are unrated at the time of purchase but are deemed by the Adviser to be of comparable quality. If a Senior Loan is rated at the time of purchase, the Fund may consider the rating when evaluating the Senior Loan but, in any event, does not view ratings as a determinative factor in investment decisions. As a result, the Fund is dependent on the credit analytical abilities of the Adviser. Because of the protective terms of Senior Loans, the Adviser believes that the Fund is more likely to recover more of its investment in a defaulted Senior Loan than would be the case for most other types of defaulted credit obligations. The values of Senior Loans of borrowers that have filed for bankruptcy protection or that are experiencing payment difficulty could be affected by, among other things, the assessment of the likelihood that the lenders ultimately will receive repayment of the principal amount of such Senior Loans, the likely duration, if any, of a lapse in the scheduled payment of interest and repayment of principal and prevailing interest rates. There is no assurance that the Fund will be able to recover any amount on Senior Loans of such borrowers or that sale of the collateral granted in connection with Senior Loans would raise enough cash to satisfy the borrower's payment obligation or that the collateral can or will be liquidated. In the event of bankruptcy, liquidation may not occur and the bankruptcy court may not give lenders the full benefit of their senior position in the capital structure of the borrower.

The Fund may act as an original lender under Senior Loans or may acquire Senior Loans through assignments or participations. The Fund may make Senior Loans to, or acquire Senior Loans of, borrowers that, at the time of the making or acquisition of the loan by the Fund, are experiencing, or are likely to experience, financial difficulty (including highly leveraged borrowers) and such loans may constitute a material amount of the Fund's portfolio. The Fund will not make Senior Loans to, or acquire Senior Loans of, borrowers that, at the time of the making or acquisition of the loan by the Fund, are in bankruptcy.

If the Fund acquires a Senior Loan through an assignment agreement, it will typically succeed to all the rights and obligations of the assigning institution and become a lender under the credit agreement with respect to the debt obligation purchased; however, its rights can be more restricted than those of the assigning institution, and, in any event, the Fund may not be able to unilaterally enforce all rights and remedies of the lenders under the loan agreement and with regard to any associated collateral. If the Fund acquires an interest in a Senior Loan through a participation agreement, the Fund will enter into a contractual relationship with the institution selling the participation, not with the borrower. In purchasing participations, the Fund generally will have no right to enforce compliance by the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement or any rights of setoff against the borrower, and the Fund may not directly benefit from the collateral supporting the debt obligation in which it has purchased the participation. As a result, the Fund will be exposed to the credit risk of both the borrower and the institution selling the participation. When purchasing a participation, the Adviser will analyze the credit risk posed by the institution selling the participation. The Adviser relies primarily on its own evaluation of the credit quality of such selling institutions rather than on any available independent sources. As a result, the Fund is particularly dependent on the analytical abilities of the Adviser. Because of the nature of its investments, the Fund may be subject to allegations of lender liability and other claims. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares** **Lender Liability Risk**. In addition, the Securities Act deems certain persons to be underwriters if they purchase a security from an issuer and later sell it to the public. Although it is not believed that the application of this Securities Act provision would cause the Fund to be engaged in the business of underwriting, a person who purchases an instrument from the Fund that was acquired by the Fund from the issuer of such instrument could allege otherwise. Under the Securities Act, an underwriter may be liable for material omissions or misstatements in an issuer's registration statement or prospectus.

### **Below investment grade (high-yield or junk bond) securities risk**

Fixed income securities rated below investment grade generally offer a higher current yield than that available from higher grade issues, but typically involve greater risk. These securities are especially sensitive to adverse changes in general economic conditions, to changes in the financial condition of their issuers and to price fluctuation in response to changes in interest rates. During periods of economic downturn or rising interest rates, issuers of below investment grade instruments may experience financial stress that could adversely affect their ability to make payments of principal and interest and increase the possibility of default. The secondary market for high-yield securities may not be as liquid as the secondary market for more highly rated securities, a factor which may have an adverse effect on the Fund's ability to dispose of a particular security. There are fewer dealers in the market for high-yield securities than for investment grade obligations. The prices quoted by different dealers may vary significantly, and the spread between the bid and asked price is generally much larger for high-yield securities than for higher quality instruments. Under continuing adverse market or economic conditions, the secondary market for high-yield securities could contract further, independent of any specific adverse changes in the condition of a particular issuer, and these securities may become illiquid. In addition, adverse publicity and investor perceptions, whether or not based on fundamental analysis, may also decrease the values and liquidity of below investment grade securities, especially in a market characterized by a low volume of trading. Unrated instruments involve the risk that the Adviser may not accurately evaluate the instrument's comparative credit rating. As a result, the Fund's investments in unrated instruments depend more heavily on the Adviser's credit analysis than if the Fund invested in comparable rated instruments. Some unrated securities may not have an active trading market or may be difficult to value, and the Fund might have difficulty selling them at an acceptable price.

### **Risks of changes in fixed income market conditions**

Following the financial crisis that began in 2007, the Federal Reserve Board has attempted to stabilize the U.S. economy and support the U.S. economic recovery by keeping the federal funds rate at or near zero percent. In addition, the Federal Reserve Board has purchased large

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

quantities of securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities on the open market ( quantitative easing ). As the Federal Reserve tapers or reduces quantitative easing, and when the Federal Reserve raises the federal funds rate, there is a risk that interest rates across the U.S. financial system will rise. These policy changes, along with other economic, political or other factors, may cause the fixed income markets to experience increased volatility and reduced liquidity, causing the value of the Fund's investments and its NAV per share to decline. The Fund may also experience increased portfolio turnover, which will increase the costs that the Fund incurs and may further lower the Fund's performance. Certain Fund investments may also be difficult to value during such periods. In addition, to the extent the Fund invests in derivatives tied to fixed income markets, the Fund may be more substantially exposed to these risks than a fund that does not invest in derivatives.

### **Foreign securities risk**

The Fund will invest in credit obligations of issuers that are organized or located in countries other than the United States, including

non-U.S. dollar denominated securities. Investing in non-U.S. issuers involves risks, including that non-U.S. issuers may be subject to less rigorous accounting and reporting requirements than U.S. issuers, less rigorous regulatory requirements, different legal systems and laws relating to creditors' rights, the potential inability to enforce legal judgments, the potential for political, social and economic adversity and currency risk. Currency risk is the risk that fluctuations in the exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and non-U.S. currencies may negatively affect an investment. The value of investments denominated in non-U.S. currencies may fluctuate based on changes in the value of those currencies relative to the U.S. dollar, and a decline in such relative value could reduce the value of such investments held by the Fund.

The foreign securities in which the Fund may invest may be issued by companies or governments located in emerging market countries. Investing in the securities of issuers operating in emerging markets involves a high degree of risk and special considerations not typically associated with investing in the securities of other foreign or U.S. issuers. Compared to the United States and other developed countries, emerging market countries may have relatively unstable governments, economies based on only a few industries and securities markets that trade a small number of securities. Securities issued by companies or governments located in emerging market countries tend to be especially volatile and may be less liquid than securities traded in developed countries. Securities in these countries have been characterized by greater potential loss than securities of companies and governments located in developed countries. Investments in the securities of issuers located in emerging markets could be affected by risks associated with expropriation and/or nationalization, political or social instability, pervasiveness of corruption and crime, armed conflict, the impact on the economy of civil war, religious or ethnic unrest and the withdrawal or non-renewal of any license enabling the Fund to trade in securities of a particular country, confiscatory taxation, restrictions on transfers of assets, lack of uniform accounting and auditing standards, less publicly available financial and other information, diplomatic development which could affect U.S. investments in those countries and potential difficulties in enforcing contractual obligations.

Since the Fund may invest in credit obligations of foreign issuers denominated in the local currency, changes in foreign currency exchange rates will affect the value of credit obligations in the Fund's portfolio and the unrealized appreciation or depreciation of investments. In addition to changes in the value of the Fund's portfolio investments resulting from currency fluctuations, the Fund may incur costs in connection with conversions between various currencies. The Fund may also invest directly in currencies for hedging purposes. The Fund is subject to the risk that those currencies will decline in value relative to the U.S. dollar. For example, the recent debt crisis in certain European countries could cause the value of the Euro to deteriorate. The values of the currencies of the emerging market countries in which the Fund may invest may be subject to a high degree of fluctuation due to changes in interest rates, the effects of monetary policies of the United States, foreign governments, central banks or supranational entities, the imposition of currency controls or due to other national or global political or economic developments. Investing in Euro-denominated (or other European currency-denominated) securities entails risk of being exposed to a currency that may not fully reflect the strengths and weaknesses of the disparate European economies. In addition, it is possible that the Euro could be abandoned in the future by countries that have already adopted its use. The effects of such an abandonment on the applicable country and the rest of the EMU are uncertain but could be negative and severe. Many European countries rely heavily upon export-dependent businesses and any change in the exchange rate between the Euro and the U.S. dollar can have either a positive or a negative effect upon corporate profits and the performance of investments in the European Union. Moreover, as the European debt crisis has progressed, the possibility of one or more European countries exiting the EMU, or even of the collapse of the Euro as a common currency, has arisen. The effects of the collapse of the Euro, or of the exit of one or more countries from the EMU, on the United States and global economy and securities markets are impossible to predict and any such events could have a significant adverse impact on the value and risk profile of the Fund's portfolio. Foreign exchange dealers realize a profit based on the difference between the prices at which they are buying and selling various currencies. Thus, a dealer normally will offer to sell a foreign currency to the Fund at one rate, while offering a lesser rate of exchange should the Fund desire immediately to resell that currency to the dealer. The Fund will conduct its foreign currency exchange transactions either on a spot (i.e., cash) basis at the spot rate prevailing in the foreign currency exchange market, or through entering into forward, futures or options contracts to purchase or sell foreign currencies. Therefore, the Fund's exposure to foreign currencies may result in reduced returns to the Fund. The Fund may, from time to time, seek to protect the value of some portion or all of its portfolio holdings against currency risks by engaging in currency hedging transactions. Such transactions may include entering into forward currency exchange contracts, currency futures contracts and options on such futures contracts, as well as purchasing put or call options on currencies, in U.S. or foreign markets. Currency hedging involves risks, including possible default by the other party to the transaction, illiquidity and, to the extent the view as to certain market movements is incorrect, the risk that the use of hedging could result in losses greater than if they had not been used. In addition, in certain countries in which the Fund may invest, currency hedging opportunities may not be available. The use of currency transactions can result in the Fund incurring losses because of the imposition of exchange controls, suspension of settlements or the inability of the Fund to deliver or receive a specified currency. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Foreign Securities.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund computes and expects to continue to distribute its income in U.S. dollars, and the computation of income is made on the date that the income is earned by the Fund at the foreign exchange rate in effect on that date. If the value of the foreign currencies in which the Fund receives its income falls relative to the U.S. dollar between the date of earning of the income and the time at which the Fund converts the foreign currencies to U.S. dollars, the Fund may be required to liquidate securities in order to make distributions if the Fund has insufficient cash in U.S. dollars to meet distribution requirements. See Distributions and Dividend Reinvestment Plan. The liquidation of investments, if required, may have an adverse impact on the Fund's performance.

#### **Risks of second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt**

Second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt generally are subject to similar risks as those associated with investments in Senior Loans. In addition, because second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt are subordinated in payment and/or lower in lien priority to Senior Loans, they are subject to additional risk that the cash flow of the borrower and property securing the loan or debt, if any, may be insufficient to meet scheduled payments after giving effect to the senior secured obligations of the borrower. This risk is generally higher for subordinated unsecured loans or debt, which are not backed by a security interest in any specific collateral. Second lien or subordinated loans or debt, both secured and unsecured, are expected to have greater price volatility than Senior Loans and may be less liquid. There is also a possibility that originators will not be able to sell participations in second lien loans and subordinated loans or debt, both secured and unsecured, which would create greater credit risk exposure. Second lien or other subordinated or unsecured loans or debt of below investment grade quality share risks similar to those associated with investments in other below investment grade securities and obligations.

#### **Risks of structured products**

The Fund may invest in structured products, including CDOs, CBOs, CLOs, structured notes, credit-linked notes and other types of structured products. Holders of structured products bear risks of the underlying investments, index or reference obligation and are subject to counterparty risk. The Fund may have the right to receive payments to which it is entitled only from the issuer of the structured product, and generally does not have direct rights against the issuer of, or the entity that sold, assets underlying the structured product. While certain structured products enable the investor to acquire interests in a pool of securities without the brokerage and other expenses associated with directly holding the same securities, investors in structured products generally pay their share of the structured product's administrative and other expenses. When investing in structured products, it is impossible to predict whether the underlying index or prices of the underlying assets will rise or fall, but prices of the underlying indices and assets (and, therefore, the prices of structured products) will be influenced by the same types of political and economic events that affect particular issuers of securities and capital markets generally. Certain structured products may be thinly traded or have a limited trading market and may have the effect of increasing the Fund's illiquidity to the extent that the Fund, at a particular point in time, may be unable to find qualified buyers for, and may have difficulty valuing, these securities.

CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs are typically privately offered and sold, and thus, are not registered under the securities laws. As a result, investments in CDOs may be characterized by the Fund as illiquid securities; however an active dealer market may exist for CDOs allowing a CDO to be considered liquid in some circumstances. In addition to the general risks associated with fixed income securities discussed herein, CDOs carry additional risks including, but not limited to: (i) the possibility that distributions from collateral securities will not be adequate to make interest or other payments; (ii) the quality of the collateral may decline in value or the collateral may go into default; (iii) the possibility that the CDOs are subordinate to other classes of obligations issued by the same issuer; and (iv) the complex structure of the security may not be fully understood at the time of investment and may produce disputes with the issuer or unexpected investment results.

Investments in structured notes involve risks including income risk, credit risk and market risk. Recent market conditions have magnified the risks related to an investment in structured products, including greater volatility, increased lack of liquidity and significant losses in value. Where the return on a structured note held by the Fund is based upon the movement of one or more factors, including currency exchange rates, interest rates, referenced bonds and stock indices, depending on the factor used and the use of multipliers or deflators, changes in interest rates and movement of the factor may cause significant fluctuations in the price of the structured note. Additionally, changes in the reference instrument or security may cause the interest rate on the structured note to be reduced to zero and any further changes in the reference instrument may then reduce the principal amount payable on maturity. Structured notes may be less liquid than other types of securities and more volatile than the reference instrument or security underlying the note.

#### **Asset-backed and mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) instruments risk**

To the extent the Fund invests in asset-backed and mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) securities or other instruments, its exposure to prepayment and extension risks may be greater than other investments in fixed income instruments. Rising interest rates tend to extend the duration of mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) instruments, making them more sensitive to changes in interest rates. In addition, mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) instruments are subject to prepayment risk – the risk that borrowers may pay off their mortgages sooner than expected, particularly when interest rates decline. This can reduce the Fund’s returns because the Fund may have to reinvest that money at lower prevailing interest rates. The Fund’s investments in other asset-backed instruments, such as securities backed by car loans, are subject to risks similar to those associated with mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) securities.

Privately issued asset-backed and mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) instruments are typically not traded on an exchange and may have a limited market. Without an active trading market, these instruments may be particularly difficult to value given the complexities in valuing the underlying collateral. Unlike many mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) instruments issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government, its agencies and instrumentalities, or a government-sponsored enterprise (such as the Federal National Mortgage Association, or Fannie Mae), asset-backed and mortgage-backed (or mortgage-related) instruments issued by

private issuers do not have a government or government-sponsored enterprise guarantee and may, and frequently do, have less favorable collateral, credit risk or other characteristics. Although instruments issued by a government-sponsored enterprise are sometimes considered to carry an implicit guarantee from the U.S. government, there can be no assurance that the U.S. government would in fact guarantee such instruments.

### **Risks of swaps**

The Fund may enter into swap transactions, including credit default, total return, index and interest rate swap agreements, as well as options thereon, and may purchase or sell interest rate caps, floors and collars. Such transactions are subject to market risk, risk of default by the other party to the transaction (*i.e.*, counterparty risk), risk of imperfect correlation and manager risk and may involve commissions or other costs. Swaps generally do not involve delivery of securities, other underlying assets or principal. Accordingly, the risk of loss with respect to swaps generally is limited to the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually obligated to make, or in the case of the other party to a swap defaulting, the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually entitled to receive. The swap market has grown substantially in recent years with a large number of banks and investment banking firms acting both as principals and as agents utilizing standardized swap documentation. If the Adviser is incorrect in its forecast of market values, interest rates or currency exchange rates, the investment performance of the Fund would be less favorable than it would have been if these investment techniques were not used.

In addition, recent market developments related to swaps have prompted increased scrutiny with respect to these instruments. As a result of the Dodd-Frank Act, swaps are now subject to increased regulation. Such regulation may limit the Fund's ability to use swaps and increase the cost of using swaps.

### **Counterparty risk**

Changes in the credit quality of the dealers that serve as the Fund's counterparties with respect to derivatives, swaps or other transactions will affect the value of those instruments. In the event of a default, or the insolvency of a counterparty, the Fund may sustain losses or be unable to liquidate a derivative or swap position. The Fund and the Adviser seek to deal only with counterparties of high creditworthiness. All of the Fund's bank or dealer counterparties (including bank or dealer derivative counterparties) will be subject to approval by the Adviser's risk and compliance groups. The Adviser evaluates and monitors the creditworthiness of the Fund's counterparties. Specifically, the Adviser's risk and compliance personnel implement processes with respect to pre-approval, ongoing monitoring and parameters with respect to the Fund's counterparty risk exposure. The parameters and limitations that may be imposed depend on the creditworthiness of the Fund's counterparties and the nature of the transactions in which the Fund engages.

### **Financial leverage risk**

The Fund is permitted to obtain leverage using any form or combination of financial leverage instruments, including reverse repurchase agreements, credit facilities such as bank loans or commercial paper, and the issuance of preferred shares or notes. The Fund seeks to use leverage opportunistically and may choose to increase or decrease its leverage, or use different types or combinations of leveraging instruments, at any time based on the Fund's assessment of market conditions and the investment environment.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

There can be no assurance that a financial leveraging strategy will be utilized by the Fund or that, if utilized, it will be successful during any period in which it is employed. Leverage creates risks for Common Shareholders, including the likelihood of greater volatility of NAV of the Common Shares and market price of, and distributions on, the Common Shares and the risk that fluctuations in the costs to borrow, or in the distribution or interest rates on any preferred shares or notes, may affect the return to Common Shareholders. To the extent the income derived from investments purchased with proceeds received from leverage exceeds the cost of leverage, the Fund's distributions will be greater than if leverage had not been used. Conversely, if the income from the investments purchased with such proceeds is not sufficient to cover the cost of the financial leverage, the amount available for distribution to Common Shareholders will be less than if leverage had not been used. In the latter case, the Fund may nevertheless maintain its leveraged position if such action is deemed to be appropriate based on market conditions. If preferred shares are used, holders of preferred shares will have rights to elect a minimum of two trustees. This voting power may negatively affect Common Shareholders (or the interests of holders of preferred shares may differ from the interests of Common Shareholders). The use of leverage by the Fund may magnify the Fund's losses when there is a decrease in the value of a Fund investment and even totally eliminate the Fund's equity in its portfolio or a Common Shareholder's equity in the Fund. The Fund has substantially increased its use of leverage through the Credit Facility during the past twelve months and intends to use leverage up to the maximum amount permitted by the 1940 Act. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks.

The costs of a financial leverage program (including the costs of offering preferred shares and notes) will be borne by Common Shareholders and consequently will result in a reduction of the NAV of the Common Shares. During periods in which the Fund is using leverage, the fees paid by the Fund for investment advisory services will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the investment advisory fees paid will be calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which includes proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes, so

that the investment advisory fees payable to the Adviser will be higher when leverage is utilized. This will create a conflict of interest between the Adviser, on the one hand, and Common Shareholders, on the other hand. Fees and expenses in respect of financial leverage, as well as the investment advisory fee and all other expenses of the Fund, will be borne entirely by the Common Shareholders, and not by preferred shareholders, noteholders or any other leverage providers.

Any lender in connection with a credit facility may impose specific restrictions as a condition to borrowing. The credit facility fees may include, among other things, up front structuring fees and ongoing commitment fees (including fees on amounts undrawn on the facility) in addition to the traditional interest expense on amounts borrowed. The credit facility may involve a lien on the Fund's assets. Similarly, to the extent the Fund issues preferred shares or notes, the Fund currently intends to seek an AAA or equivalent credit rating from one or more NRSROs on any preferred shares or notes it issues and the Fund may be subject to fees, covenants and investment restrictions required by the NRSRO as a result. Such covenants and restrictions imposed by a NRSRO or lender may include asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed on the Fund by the 1940 Act. It is not anticipated that these covenants or restrictions will significantly impede the Adviser in managing the Fund's portfolio in accordance with its investment objectives and policies. Nonetheless, if these covenants or guidelines are more restrictive than those imposed by the 1940 Act, the Fund may not be able to utilize as much leverage as it otherwise could have, which could reduce the Fund's investment returns. See [Description of Capital Structure Preferred Shares](#) and [Credit Facility/Commercial Paper Program/Notes](#).

The Fund also expects to enter into other transactions that may give rise to a form of leverage including, among others, swaps, futures and forward contracts, options and other derivative transactions. To the extent that the Fund covers its obligations under such other transactions, as described in this prospectus, such transactions should not be treated as borrowings for purposes of the 1940 Act. However, these transactions, even if covered, may represent a form of economic leverage and will create risks. The potential loss on derivative instruments may be substantial relative to the initial investment therein. See [Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Portfolio Composition](#), [Structured Products](#), [Swaps and Other Derivative Instruments](#); and [Risk Factors Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares](#) [Risks of Structured Products](#), [Risks of Swaps](#) and [Risks of Other Derivative Instruments](#).

### **Sovereign debt securities risk**

Investments in government debt securities involve special risks. Certain countries have historically experienced, and may continue to experience, high rates of inflation, high interest rates, exchange rate fluctuations, large amounts of external debt, balance of payments and trade difficulties and extreme poverty and unemployment. The issuer or governmental authority that controls the repayment of a country's debt may not be able or willing to repay the principal and/or interest when due in accordance with the terms of such debt. A debtor's willingness or ability to repay principal and interest due in a timely manner may be affected by, among other factors, its cash flow situation and, in the case of a government debtor, the extent of its foreign reserves, the availability of sufficient foreign exchange on the date a payment is due, the relative size of the debt service burden to the economy as a whole, the government debtor's policy towards the International Monetary Fund and the political constraints to which a government debtor may be subject.

Government debtors may default on their debt and may also be dependent on expected disbursements from foreign governments, multilateral agencies and others abroad to reduce principal and interest arrearages on their debt. The commitment on the part of these governments, agencies and others to make such disbursements may be conditioned on a debtor's implementation of economic reforms and/or economic performance and the timely service of such debtor's obligations. Failure to implement such reforms, achieve such levels of economic performance or repay principal or interest when due may result in the cancellation of such third parties' commitments to lend funds to the government debtor, which may further impair such debtor's ability or willingness to service its debts on a timely basis. Holders of government debt, potentially including the Fund, may be requested to participate in the rescheduling of such debt and to extend further loans to government debtors.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

As a result of the foregoing, a government obligor may default on its obligations. If such an event occurs, the Fund may have limited legal recourse against the issuer and/or guarantor. Remedies must, in some cases, be pursued in the courts of the defaulting party itself, and the ability of the holder of foreign government debt securities to obtain recourse may be subject to the political climate in the relevant country.

### **Risks of other derivative instruments**

The Fund may utilize options, forward contracts, futures contracts and options on futures contracts. These instruments involve risks, including the imperfect correlation between the value of such instruments and the underlying assets, the possible default by the other party to the transaction (i.e., counterparty risk), illiquidity of the derivative instrument and, to the extent the prediction as to certain market movements is incorrect, the risk that the use of such instruments could result in losses greater than if they had not been used. In addition, transactions in such instruments may involve commissions and other costs, which may increase the Fund's expenses and reduce its return. Amounts paid as premiums and cash or other assets held in margin accounts with respect to such instruments are not otherwise available to the Fund for investment purposes.

Further, the use of such instruments by the Fund could create the possibility that losses on the instrument would be greater than gains in the value of the Fund's position. In addition, futures and options markets could be illiquid in some circumstances, and certain over-the-counter options could have no markets. As a result, in certain markets, the Fund might not be able to close out a position without incurring substantial losses. To the extent that the Fund utilizes forward contracts, futures contracts or options transactions for hedging, such transactions should tend to minimize the risk of loss due to a decline in the value of the hedged position and, at the same time, limit any potential gain to the Fund that might result from an increase in value of the position. In addition, the daily variation margin requirements for futures contracts create a greater ongoing potential financial risk than would purchases of call options, in which case the market exposure is limited to the cost of the initial premium and transaction costs. Losses resulting from the use of hedging will reduce the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares, and possibly income, and the losses can be greater than if hedging had not been used. Forward contracts may limit gains on portfolio securities that could otherwise be realized had they not been utilized and could result in losses. The contracts may also increase the Fund's volatility and may involve a significant amount of risk relative to the investment of cash. The use of put and call options may result in losses to the Fund, force the sale of portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than at current market values, limit the amount of appreciation the Fund can realize on its investments or cause the Fund to hold a security it might otherwise sell. The Fund will be subject to credit risk with respect to the counterparties to any transactions in options, forward contracts, futures contracts or options on futures contracts. If a counterparty becomes bankrupt or otherwise fails to perform its obligations under a derivative contract due to financial difficulties, the Fund may experience significant delays in obtaining any recovery under the derivative contract in bankruptcy or other reorganization proceeding. The Fund may obtain only a limited recovery or may obtain no recovery in such circumstances.

When conducted outside the United States, transactions in options, forward contracts, futures contracts or options on futures contracts may not be regulated as rigorously as in the United States, may not involve a clearing mechanism and related guarantees, and are subject to the risk of governmental actions affecting trading in, or the prices of, foreign securities, currencies and other instruments. The value of such positions also could be adversely affected by: (i) other complex foreign political, legal and economic factors; (ii) lesser availability than in the United States of data on which to make trading decisions; (iii) delays in the Fund's ability to act upon economic events occurring in foreign markets during non-business hours in the United States; (iv) the imposition of different exercise and settlement terms and procedures and margin requirements than in the United States and (v) lower trading volume and liquidity.

#### **Non-diversification risk**

The Fund is classified as non-diversified under the 1940 Act. As a result, it can invest a greater portion of its assets in obligations of a single issuer than a diversified fund. The Fund may therefore be more susceptible than a diversified fund to being adversely affected by a single corporate, economic, political or regulatory occurrence. The Fund, however, intends to continue to satisfy the less stringent diversification requirements of Subchapter M of the Code in order to qualify for the special tax treatment available to regulated investment companies. For a discussion of these diversification requirements, see Tax Matters Taxation of the Fund in the SAI. In addition, because the Fund invests a high percentage of its assets in a relatively small number of issuers, the Fund is more susceptible to any single economic, market, political or regulatory event affecting those issuers than is a more broadly diversified fund.

#### **Lender liability risk**

A number of U.S. judicial decisions have upheld judgments for borrowers against lending institutions on the basis of various evolving legal theories, collectively termed lender liability. Generally, lender liability is founded on the premise that a lender has violated a duty (whether implied or contractual) of good faith, commercial reasonableness and fair dealing, or a similar duty owed to the borrower or has assumed an excessive degree of control over the borrower resulting in the creation of a fiduciary duty owed to the borrower or its other creditors or shareholders. Because of the nature of its investments, the Fund may be subject to allegations of lender liability.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

In addition, under common law principles that in some cases form the basis for lender liability claims, if a lender or bondholder (a) intentionally takes an action that results in the undercapitalization of a borrower to the detriment of other creditors of such borrower, (b) engages in other inequitable conduct to the detriment of such other creditors, (c) engages in fraud with respect to, or makes misrepresentations to, such other creditors or (d) uses its influence as a stockholder to dominate or control a borrower to the detriment of other creditors of such borrower, a court may elect to subordinate the claim of the offending lender or bondholder to the claims of the disadvantaged creditor or creditors, a remedy called equitable subordination.

Because affiliates of, or persons related to, the Adviser may hold equity or other interests in obligors of the Fund, the Fund could be exposed to claims for equitable subordination or lender liability or both based on such equity or other holdings.

### **Net asset value discount risk**

Frequently, shares of closed-end investment companies, such as the Fund, trade at a price below their net asset value, commonly referred to as a discount. Historically, shares of closed-end funds have traded at a discount to their net asset value, and the Fund can provide no assurance that its Common Shares will trade at or above their NAV. The Fund's Common Shares frequently trade at

a discount to NAV. Immediately following the offering, the NAV of the Common Shares will be reduced by expenses associated with the Offer paid by the Fund (and the NAV will also reflect that the proceeds to the Fund from the offering were reduced by the sales load). Because the market price of the Fund's Common Shares may be determined by factors such as NAV, there is an increased risk that the Fund will trade below the Subscription Price and its current NAV for a period following the offering. Therefore, there is an added risk to investors who may sell their Common Shares shortly after the offering. Before making an investment decision, a prospective investor should consider the suitability of this investment with respect to the investor's investment objectives and personal situation. See Description of Capital Structure.

### **Manager risk**

As with any managed fund, the Adviser may not be successful in selecting the best-performing investments or investment techniques in managing its respective portion of the Fund's portfolio, and the Fund's performance may lag behind that of similar funds.

### **Potential conflicts of interest risk**

Because the Adviser manages assets for other investment companies, pooled investment vehicles and/or other accounts (including institutional clients, pension plans and certain high net worth individuals), certain conflicts of interest are present. For instance, the Adviser receives fees from certain accounts that are higher than the fees received from the Fund, or receives a performance-based fee on certain accounts. In those instances, the Adviser has an incentive to favor the higher and/or performance-based fee accounts over the Fund. In addition, a conflict of interest exists to the extent the Adviser has proprietary investments in certain accounts or where the portfolio manager or other employees of the Adviser have personal investments in certain accounts. The Adviser has an incentive to favor these accounts over the Fund. Because the Adviser manages accounts that engage in short sales of (or otherwise take short positions in) securities or other instruments of the type in which the Fund invests, the Adviser could be seen as harming the performance of the Fund for the benefit of the accounts taking short positions, if such short positions cause the market value of the securities to fall. The Adviser has adopted trade allocation and other policies and procedures that it believes are reasonably designed to address these and other conflicts of interest. These policies and procedures will have the effect of foreclosing certain investment opportunities for the Fund from time to time. The 20% overlap limit, discussed above, may have the same effect.

The Adviser manages assets for accounts other than the Fund, including private funds. The Adviser also currently serves as investment adviser to the Avenue Open-End Fund. The expected risk and return profile for the Fund is generally lower than for most of the other Avenue funds. The Fund may invest in the same credit obligations as the Avenue funds, although their investments may include different obligations of the same issuer. For example, the Fund might invest in Senior Loans issued by a borrower and one or more Avenue Funds might invest in the borrower's junior debt. In addition, the Adviser also manages certain accounts (including CLOs) that invest in certain types of credit obligations in which the Fund may also invest. Investment opportunities appropriate for both the Fund and another Avenue fund generally will be allocated between the Fund and the other Avenue Fund in a manner that the Adviser believes to be fair and equitable under the circumstances, in accordance with the Adviser's trade allocation policies.

Conflicts of interest may arise where the Fund and other Avenue funds simultaneously hold securities representing different parts of the capital structure of a stressed or distressed issuer. In such circumstances, decisions made with respect to the securities held by one Avenue fund may cause (or have the potential to cause) harm to the different class of securities of the issuer held by other Avenue funds (including the Fund). For example, if such an issuer goes into bankruptcy or reorganization, becomes insolvent or otherwise experiences financial distress or is unable to meet its payment obligations or comply with covenants relating to credit obligations held by the Fund or by the other Avenue funds, such other Avenue funds may have an interest that conflicts with the interests of the Fund. If additional financing for such an issuer is necessary as a result of financial or other difficulties, it may not be in the best interests of the Fund to provide such additional financing, but if the other Avenue funds were to lose their respective investments as a result of such difficulties, the Adviser may have a conflict in recommending actions in the best interests of the Fund. In such situations, the Adviser will seek to act in the best interests of each of the Avenue funds (including the Fund) and

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

will seek to resolve such conflicts in accordance with its compliance policies and procedures.

In addition, the 1940 Act limits the Fund's ability to enter into certain transactions with certain affiliates of the Adviser. As a result of these restrictions, the Fund may be prohibited from buying or selling any security directly from or to any portfolio company of a fund managed by the Adviser or one of its affiliates. Nonetheless, the Fund may under certain circumstances purchase any such portfolio company's loans or securities in the secondary market, which could create a conflict for the Adviser between the interests of the Fund and the portfolio company, in that the ability of the Adviser to recommend actions in the best interest of the Fund might be impaired. The 1940 Act also prohibits certain joint transactions with certain of the Fund's affiliates (which could include other Avenue funds), which could be deemed to include certain types of investments, or restructuring of investments, in the same portfolio company (whether at the same or different times). These limitations may limit the scope of investment opportunities that would otherwise be available to the Fund. The Board has approved policies and procedures reasonably designed to monitor potential conflicts of interest. The Board will review these procedures and any conflicts that may arise.

Although the professional staff of the Adviser will devote as much time to the management of the Fund as the Adviser deems appropriate to perform their duties in accordance with the investment advisory agreement and in accordance with reasonable

commercial standards, the professional staff of the Adviser may have conflicts in allocating their time and services among the Fund and other Avenue funds. The Adviser and its affiliates are not restricted from forming additional investment funds, from entering into other investment advisory relationships or from engaging in other business activities, even though such activities may be in competition with the Fund and/or may involve substantial time and resources of the Adviser and its professional staff. These activities could be viewed as creating a conflict of interest in that the time and effort of the members of the Adviser and its officers and employees will not be devoted exclusively to the business of the Fund but will be allocated between the business of the Fund and the management of the assets of other clients of the Adviser.

The Adviser or its respective members, officers, directors, employees, principals or affiliates may come into possession of material, non-public information. The possession of such information may limit the ability of the Fund to buy or sell a security or otherwise to participate in an investment opportunity. Situations may occur where the Fund could be disadvantaged because of the investment activities conducted by the Adviser for other clients, and the Adviser will not employ information barriers with regard to its operations on behalf of its registered and private funds, or other accounts. In certain circumstances, employees of the Adviser may serve as board members or in other capacities for portfolio or potential portfolio companies, which could restrict the Fund's ability to trade in the securities of such companies.

## **OTHER RISKS OF INVESTING IN THE FUND**

### **Investment risk**

You may lose money by investing in the Fund, including the possibility that you may lose all of your investment. An investment in the Fund is not a deposit in a bank and is not insured or guaranteed by the U.S. Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other governmental agency.

The Fund is intended to be a long-term investment vehicle and is not designed to provide investors with a means of speculating on short-term stock market movements. Investors should not consider the Fund a complete investment program.

### **Risks of investing in other investment companies**

The Fund may acquire shares in other investment companies, including foreign investment companies to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act. The market value of the shares of other investment companies may differ from the net asset value of the particular fund. As a shareholder in an investment company, the Fund would bear its ratable share of that entity's expenses, including its investment advisory and administration fees. At the same time, the Fund would continue to pay its own investment advisory fees and other expenses. As a result, the Fund and its Common Shareholders, in effect, will be absorbing duplicate levels of fees with respect to investments in other investment companies.

### **Zero coupon securities risk**

Certain debt obligations purchased by the Fund may take the form of zero coupon bonds. A zero coupon bond is a bond that does not pay interest either for the entire life of the obligation or for an initial period after the issuance of the obligation. When held to its maturity, its return comes from the difference between the purchase price and its maturity value. A zero coupon bond is normally issued and traded at a deep

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

discount from face value. Zero coupon bonds allow an issuer to avoid or delay the need to generate cash to meet current interest payments and, as a result, may involve greater credit risk than bonds that pay interest currently or in cash. The Fund would be required to distribute the income on any of these instruments as it accrues, even though the Fund will not receive all of the income on a current basis or in cash. Thus, the Fund may have to sell other investments, including when it may not be advisable to do so, to make income distributions to its shareholders.

Distributions attributable to the Fund's original issue discount income accruing on zero coupon bonds, and of all other ordinary income, will generally be taxable to the Common Shareholders as ordinary income. As a consequence of selling investments in order to make distributions of original issue discount income and other income in respect of which the Fund has not received a corresponding amount of cash, the Fund may realize additional income that gives rise to additional distribution requirements; distributions of such additional income may be taxable to the Common Shareholders as ordinary income or as long-term capital gain depending on which investments are sold. See Tax Matters Distributions in the SAI.

### **Inflation risk**

Inflation risk is the risk that the value of assets or income from investments will be worth less in the future as inflation decreases the value of money. To the extent that inflation occurs, it will reduce the real value of dividends paid by the Fund and the Fund's shares. Most emerging market countries have experienced substantial, and in some periods extremely high and volatile, rates of inflation. Inflation and rapid fluctuations in inflation rates have had and may continue to have very negative effects on the economies and securities markets of certain emerging market countries. In an attempt to control inflation, wage and price controls have been imposed at times in certain countries.

#### **Repurchase agreements and reverse repurchase agreements risk**

The Fund may invest in repurchase agreements and reverse repurchase agreements. In its purchase of repurchase agreements, the Fund does not bear the risk of a decline in the value of the underlying security unless the seller defaults under its repurchase obligation. In the event of the bankruptcy or other default of a seller of a repurchase agreement, the Fund could experience both delays in liquidating the underlying securities and losses, including possible decline in the value of the underlying security during the period while the Fund seeks to enforce its rights thereto, possible lack of access to income on the underlying security during this period, and expenses of enforcing its rights. A repurchase agreement effectively represents a loan from the Fund to the seller under the agreement.

The Fund's use of reverse repurchase agreements involve many of the same risks involved in the Fund's use of financial leverage, as the proceeds from reverse repurchase agreements generally will be invested in additional securities. There is a risk that the market value of the securities acquired in the reverse repurchase agreement may decline below the price of the securities that the Fund has sold but remains obligated to repurchase. In addition, there is a risk that the market value of the securities retained by the Fund may decline. If the buyer of securities under a reverse repurchase agreement were to file for bankruptcy or experience insolvency, the Fund may be adversely affected. Also, in entering into reverse repurchase agreements, the Fund would bear the risk of loss to the extent that the proceeds of the reverse repurchase agreement are less than the value of the underlying securities. In addition, due to the interest costs associated with reverse repurchase agreements, the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares will decline, and, in some cases, the investment performance of the Fund would be less favorable than it would have been if the Fund had not used such instruments. A reverse repurchase agreement effectively represents a loan from the buyer to the Fund under the agreement.

#### **When-issued and delayed delivery securities risk**

The Fund may purchase and sell securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis whereby the Fund buys or sells a security with payment and delivery taking place in the future. These transactions are subject to market risk as the value or yield of a security at delivery may be more or less than the purchase price or the yield generally available on securities when delivery occurs. In addition, the Fund is subject to counterparty risk because it relies on the buyer or seller, as the case may be, to consummate the transaction, and failure by the other party to complete the transaction may result in the Fund missing the opportunity of obtaining a price or yield considered to be advantageous. When the Fund is the buyer in such a transaction, however, it will segregate cash and/or liquid securities having an aggregate value at least equal to the amount of such purchase commitments until payment is made. An increase in the percentage of the Fund's assets committed to the purchase of securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis may increase the volatility of the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares.

#### **Illiquid investments risk**

The Fund's investments in relatively illiquid securities and loans may restrict the ability of the Fund to dispose of its investments in a timely fashion and for fair value, as well as its ability to fairly value such investments and take advantage of market opportunities. The risks associated with illiquidity will be particularly acute in situations in which the Fund's operations require cash, such as when the Fund pays dividends or distributions, and could result in the Fund borrowing to meet short-term cash requirements or incurring capital losses on the sale of illiquid investments.

#### **Short sales risk**

The Fund may engage in short sales. Short sales involve certain risks and special considerations. If the Fund incorrectly predicts that the price of the borrowed security will decline, the Fund will have to replace the securities with securities with a greater value than the amount received from the sale. As a result, losses from short sales differ from losses that could be incurred from a purchase of a security, because losses from short sales may be unlimited, whereas losses from purchases can equal only the total amount invested.

#### **Equity securities risk**

The value of equity securities, including common stock, preferred stock and convertible stock, will fluctuate in response to factors affecting the particular company, as well as broader market and economic conditions. An adverse event, such as an unfavorable earnings report, may depress the value of an issuer's equity securities held by the Fund. The prices of equity securities fluctuate for several reasons, including changes in investors' perceptions of the financial condition of an issuer or the general condition of the relevant market, or when political or economic events affecting the issuer occurs. In addition, equity security prices may be particularly sensitive to rising interest rates, as the cost of capital rises and borrowing costs increase. Moreover, in the event of a company's bankruptcy, claims of certain creditors, including bondholders, will have priority over claims of common stock holders and are likely to have varying types of priority over holders of preferred and convertible stock.

### **Warrants risk**

The Fund may invest in warrants. The risk of investing in a warrant is that the warrant may expire prior to the market value of the common stock exceeding the price fixed by the warrant. Warrants have a subordinate claim on a borrower's assets compared with Senior Loans. As a result, the values of warrants generally are dependent on the financial condition of the borrower and less dependent on fluctuations in interest rates than are the values of many debt securities. The values of warrants may be more volatile than those of Senior Loans and this may increase the volatility of the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares.

### **Temporary investments risk**

During periods in which the Adviser believes that changes in economic, financial or political conditions make it advisable to do so, the Fund may, for temporary defensive purposes, reduce its primary investment holdings and invest in certain short-term and medium-term debt securities or hold cash. The Fund intends to invest for temporary defensive purposes only in short-term and medium-term debt securities believed to be of high quality, which are expected to be subject to relatively low risk of loss of interest or principal. In taking such defensive position, the Fund temporarily would not be pursuing and may not achieve its investment objectives.

### **Tax risk**

The Fund has elected to be treated as, and intends to continue to qualify each year as a regulated investment company under the Code. Assuming the Fund qualifies as a regulated investment company, it generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on its net investment income, including net capital gain, that it distributes (including amounts that are treated as distributed and reinvested pursuant to the Plan, as described below) to shareholders, provided that, for each taxable year, the Fund distributes (or is treated as distributing) to its shareholders an amount at least equal to 90% of its investment company taxable income as that term is defined in the Code (which includes, among other items, dividends, taxable interest, original issue discount, market discount and the excess of any net short-term capital gains over net long-term capital losses, as reduced by certain deductible expenses). The Fund intends to continue to distribute annually all or substantially all of its investment company taxable income and net capital gain. In order for the Fund to qualify as a regulated investment company in any taxable year, the Fund must also meet certain asset diversification tests and at least 90% of its gross income for such year must be comprised of certain types of qualifying income. If, for any taxable year, the Fund does not qualify as a regulated investment company, it will be treated as a corporation subject to U.S. federal income tax on its net income and capital gains at the regular corporate tax rates (without a deduction for distributions to shareholders). In addition, shareholders will be subject to tax on distributions to the extent of the Fund's current or accumulated earnings and profits. Accordingly, in such event, the Fund's ability to achieve its investment objectives would be adversely affected, and Common Shareholders would be subject to the risk of diminished investment returns.

### **Valuation risk**

Unlike publicly traded common stock which trades on national exchanges, there is no central place or exchange for loans or fixed-income instruments to trade. Loans and fixed-income instruments generally trade on an over-the-counter market which may be anywhere in the world where the buyer and seller can settle on a price. Due to the lack of centralized information and trading, the valuation of loans or fixed-income instruments may carry more risk than that of common stock. Uncertainties in the conditions of the financial market, unreliable reference data, lack of transparency and inconsistency of valuation models and processes may lead to inaccurate asset pricing. In addition, other market participants may value securities differently than the Fund. As a result, the Fund may be subject to the risk that when a loan or fixed-income instrument is sold in the market, the amount received by the Fund is less than the value of such loans or fixed-income instruments carried on the

Fund's books.

**Dependence on key personnel risk**

The Adviser is dependent upon the experience and expertise of certain key personnel in providing services with respect to the Fund's investments. If the Adviser was to lose the services of these individuals, its ability to service the Fund could be adversely affected. The investment professionals associated with the Adviser is actively involved in other investment activities not concerning the Fund and will not be able to devote all of their time to the Fund's business and affairs. In addition, individuals not currently associated with the Adviser may become associated with the Fund and the performance of the Fund may also depend on the experience and expertise of such individuals.

**Certain affiliations risk**

Certain broker-dealers, including major ones, may be considered to be affiliated persons of the Fund or the Adviser. Absent an exemption from the SEC or other regulatory relief, the Fund is generally precluded from effecting certain principal transactions with affiliated brokers, and its ability to purchase securities being underwritten by an affiliated broker or syndicate including an affiliated broker or to utilize affiliated brokers for agency transactions is subject to restrictions. This could limit the Fund's ability to engage in securities transactions and take advantage of market opportunities.

### **U.S. government debt securities risk**

U.S. government debt securities have historically not involved the credit risks associated with investments in other types of debt securities, although, as a result, the yields available from U.S. government debt securities are generally lower than the yields available from other securities. Like other debt securities, however, the values of U.S. government securities change as interest rates fluctuate. Fluctuations in the value of portfolio securities will not affect interest income on existing portfolio securities but will be reflected in the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares. Since the magnitude of these fluctuations will generally be greater at times when the Fund's average maturity is longer, under certain market conditions the Fund may, for temporary defensive purposes, accept lower current income from short-term investments rather than investing in higher yielding long-term securities.

### **Recent developments**

The U.S. credit markets have been experiencing extreme volatility and disruption for more than three (3) years. Instability in the credit markets has made it more difficult for a number of issuers of debt securities to obtain financing or refinancing for their investment or lending activities or operations. In particular, because of volatile conditions in the credit markets, issuers of debt securities may be subject to increased cost for debt, tightening underwriting standards and reduced liquidity for loans they make, securities they purchase and securities they issue.

For example, certain borrowers may, due to macroeconomic conditions, be unable to make interest and/or principal payments on credit obligations during this period. A borrower's failure to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by lenders could lead to defaults and, potentially, termination of the credit obligations and foreclosure on the borrower's assets securing the credit obligations, which could trigger cross-defaults under other agreements and jeopardize the borrower's ability to meet other debt obligations. The Fund may incur expenses to the extent necessary to seek recovery upon default or to negotiate new terms with a defaulting borrower. In addition, if a borrower were to commence bankruptcy proceedings, even though the Fund may hold a Senior Loan of such borrower, depending on the facts and circumstances, including the extent to which the Fund actually provided managerial assistance to such borrower, a bankruptcy court might recharacterize the Fund's debt holding and subordinate all or a portion of its claim to that of other creditors. The current adverse economic conditions may also decrease the value of collateral securing some of the Fund's loans and the value of its equity investments. Such conditions could lead to financial losses in the Fund's portfolio and a decrease in revenues, net income and the value of the Fund's assets.

These developments may increase the volatility of the value of securities owned by the Fund. These developments may also make it more difficult for the Fund to accurately value its securities or to sell its securities on a timely basis. These developments could adversely affect the ability of the Fund to use leverage for investment purposes and increase the cost of such leverage, which would reduce returns to the Common Shareholders. These developments may also adversely affect the broader economy, which in turn may adversely affect the ability of issuers of securities owned by the Fund to make payments of principal and interest when due, lead to lower credit ratings of the issuer and increased defaults by the issuer. Such developments could, in turn, reduce the value of securities owned by the Fund and adversely affect the NAV and market price of the Fund's Common Shares.

The Dodd-Frank Act significantly revises and expands the rulemaking, supervisory and enforcement authority of federal bank, securities and commodities regulators. It is unclear how these regulators will exercise these revised and expanded powers and whether they will undertake rulemaking, supervisory or enforcement actions that would adversely affect the Fund or investments made by the Fund. Possible regulatory actions taken under these revised and expanded powers may include actions related to financial consumer protection, proprietary trading and derivatives. There can be no assurance that future regulatory actions authorized by the Dodd-Frank Act will not significantly reduce the profitability of the Fund. Legislators and regulators in the U.S. are currently considering a wide range of proposals beyond the Dodd-Frank Act that, if enacted, could result in major changes to the way banking operations are regulated. Some of these major changes could materially affect the profitability of the Fund or the value of investments made by the Fund or force the Fund to revise its investment strategy or divest itself from

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

certain investments. Any of these developments could reduce the profitability of the Fund by exposing it to additional costs, taxes, liabilities, enforcement actions and reputational risk.

In addition, the recent European debt crisis and related financial restructuring efforts have contributed to the instability in global credit markets. The strength and duration of any economic recovery will be impacted by the European debt crisis and the reaction to any efforts to address the crisis.

### **Market disruption and geopolitical risk**

The instability in the Middle East and Korea, terrorist attacks in the United States and around the world and social unrest globally may result in market volatility and may have long-term effects on the U.S. and worldwide financial markets and may cause further economic uncertainties in the United States and worldwide. The Fund cannot predict the effects of geopolitical events in the future on the U.S. economy and securities markets.

### **Government intervention in the financial markets risk**

The recent instability in the financial markets has led the U.S. government (as well as certain foreign governments) to take a number of unprecedented actions designed to support certain financial institutions and segments of the financial markets that have experienced extreme volatility, and in some cases a lack of liquidity. It is possible that governments (whether domestic or foreign) will not take any additional actions to support the financial markets or the economy (including by prohibiting any future bailouts), which may materially and adversely affect the Fund.

Federal, state, and other governments, their regulatory agencies or self regulatory organizations may take additional actions that affect the regulation of the securities or structured products in which the Fund invests, or the issuers of such securities or structured products, in ways that are unforeseeable. Borrowers under Senior Loans held by the Fund may seek protection under bankruptcy laws. Legislation or regulation may also change the way in which the Fund itself is regulated. Such legislation or regulation could limit or preclude the Fund's ability to achieve its investment objectives. The Adviser monitors developments and seeks to manage the Fund's portfolio in a manner consistent with achieving the Fund's investment objectives, but there can be no assurance that they will be successful in doing so.

### **Anti-takeover provisions**

The Fund's Amended and Restated Agreement and Declaration of Trust (the Agreement and Declaration of Trust) and By-Laws include provisions that could limit the ability of other entities or persons to acquire control of the Fund or convert the Fund to open-end status and delay or limit the ability of other persons to acquire control of the Fund. These provisions could deprive the Common Shareholders of opportunities to sell their Common Shares at a premium over the then-current market price of the Common Shares or at NAV. The Fund's Board has determined that these provisions are in the best interests of shareholders generally.

### **Management of the Fund**

### **BOARD OF TRUSTEES**

The management of the Fund, including general supervision of the duties performed by the Adviser, is the responsibility of the Board under the laws of the State of Delaware and the 1940 Act.

### **THE ADVISER**

The Adviser will provide day-to-day investment management services to the Fund. The Adviser is Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. The Adviser is part of Avenue Capital Group, which comprises four registered investment advisers that have expertise investing in stressed and distressed obligations throughout the world. Avenue Capital Group was founded in 1995 by Marc Lasry and Sonia E. Gardner. As of [ ], 2014, Avenue Capital Group had approximately \$[ ] billion in assets under management. Avenue Capital Group and the Adviser is located at 399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor, New York, New York 10022.

The Adviser is 99% owned by Avenue Management Holdco, L.P., a limited partner, and is 1% owned and 100% controlled by Avenue Capital Management II GenPar, LLC, its general partner. Both the limited partners and the general partners of the Adviser are controlled by Marc Lasry and Sonia Gardner, who are the principals of Avenue Capital Group. Morgan Stanley, the global financial services firm, owns an indirect, non-controlling minority interest in Avenue Capital Group. In that regard, a Morgan Stanley affiliate is a limited partner of an entity that is a limited partner of the Adviser.

#### **ADVISORY AGREEMENT**

Under an advisory agreement, the Adviser receives an annual fee, payable monthly, in an amount equal to 1.25% of the Fund's average daily Managed Assets, which means the total assets of the Fund (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes, including proceeds from (and assets subject to) reverse repurchase agreements, any credit facility and any issuance of preferred shares or notes) minus the sum of the Fund's accrued liabilities (other than Fund liabilities incurred for the purpose of leverage).

The Fund pays all of its other expenses including, among others, legal fees and expenses of counsel to the Fund and the Fund's independent trustees; insurance (including trustees' and officers' errors and omissions insurance); auditing and accounting expenses; taxes and governmental fees; listing fees; dues and expenses incurred in connection with membership in investment company organizations; fees and expenses of the Fund's custodians, administrators, transfer agents, registrars and other service providers; expenses for portfolio pricing services by a pricing agent, if any; other expenses in connection with the issuance, offering and underwriting of shares or debt instruments issued by the Fund or with the securing of any credit facility or other loans for the Fund; expenses relating to investor and public relations; expenses of registering or qualifying securities of the Fund for public sale; brokerage commissions and other costs of acquiring or disposing of any portfolio holding of the Fund; expenses of preparation and distribution of reports, notices and dividends to shareholders; expenses of the dividend reinvestment plan (except for brokerage expenses paid by participants in such plan); compensation and expenses of trustees; costs of stationery; any litigation expenses;

and costs of shareholders and other meetings.

A discussion of the basis for the Board's approval of the renewal of the advisory agreement is included in the Fund's Semi-Annual Report to shareholders for the period ended April 30, 2014.

The Adviser will benefit from the Offer because their fees are based on the Managed Assets of the Fund. It is not possible to state precisely the amount of additional compensation the Adviser will receive as a result of the Offer because it is not known how many Common Shares will be subscribed for and because the proceeds of the Offer will be invested in additional portfolio securities which will fluctuate in value. However, based on the estimated proceeds from the Offer, assuming all the Rights are exercised in full at the estimated Subscription Price of \$[ ] per Common Share, and after payment of the Dealer Manager fees and estimate of expenses, the Adviser would receive additional annualized fees of approximately \$[ ] as a result of the increase in the Fund's Managed Assets.

## PORTFOLIO MANAGER

Mr. Jeffrey J. Gary, a Senior Portfolio Manager of Avenue Capital Management II, L.P., the Fund's investment adviser (the Adviser), is primarily responsible for the day-to-day management of the Fund's assets. Mr. Gary is also the portfolio manager of Avenue Credit Strategies Fund, an open-end mutual fund managed by the Adviser and a series of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust, which he has managed since its inception on June 2012. Mr. Gary has more than 20 years of investment experience in high yield, bank loan and distressed investment strategies, including the last fifteen years as a portfolio manager. Mr. Gary's experience includes managing numerous high yield and credit-related mutual funds. Prior to joining the Adviser, Mr. Gary was a portfolio manager and helped launch the Third Avenue Focused Credit Fund (advised by Third Avenue Management LLC (Third Avenue)) in 2009, an opportunistic credit fund which invests globally in high yield bonds, bank loans and distressed securities. Prior to Third Avenue, Mr. Gary was at BlackRock Financial, which he joined in 2003 as the Portfolio Manager and head of the high yield and distressed investment team with assets under management of approximately \$[ ] billion in various mutual funds and institutional accounts at the end of his tenure.

Mr. Gary will have access to the other investment teams within Avenue Capital Group, including the distressed credit teams.

The Fund's SAI provides additional information about the portfolio managers' compensation structure, other accounts managed by the portfolio managers and the portfolio managers' ownership of securities in the Fund.

## THE ADMINISTRATOR

State Street is located at State Street Financial Center, 1 Lincoln Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02111 serves as administrator to the Fund. Under the administration agreement, State Street is generally responsible for managing the administrative affairs of the Fund.

For administration related services, State Street is entitled to receive an annual fee of \$[ ], plus certain out-of-pocket expenses.

During periods when the Fund is using leverage, the fee paid to State Street (for various services) will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the fees paid are calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which includes the assets purchased through leverage.

## LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

The Fund is not currently a party to any material legal proceedings.

### Net asset value of Common Shares

The Common Shares are listed on the NYSE. The NAV of the Common Shares of the Fund is computed based upon the value of the Fund's total assets. NAV is generally determined daily by the Custodian as of the close of the regular trading session on each day that the NYSE is open for business. The NAV of the Common Shares is determined by calculating the total value of the Fund's assets (the value of the securities, plus cash or other assets, including interest accrued but not yet received), deducting its total liabilities (including accrued expenses or dividends), and dividing the result by the number of Common Shares outstanding of the Fund. The Fund reserves the right to calculate the NAV more frequently if deemed desirable.

Loans and securities are valued by the Fund following valuation guidelines established and periodically reviewed by the Board. Under the valuation guidelines, loans and securities for which reliable market quotes are readily available are valued at current market value and all other loans, securities and assets of the Fund are valued at fair value in good faith following procedures established by the Board.

## Net asset value of Common Shares

If events materially affecting the price of foreign portfolio securities occur between the time when their price was last determined on such foreign securities exchange or market and the time when the Fund's NAV was last calculated (for example, movements in certain U.S. securities indices which demonstrate strong correlation to movements in certain foreign securities markets), such securities may be valued at their fair value as determined in good faith in accordance with procedures established by the Board. For purposes of calculating NAV, all assets and liabilities initially expressed in foreign currencies will be converted into U.S. dollars at the mean of the bid price and ask price of such currencies against the U.S. dollar as quoted by a major bank.

When a Common Shareholder sells Common Shares, he or she will typically receive the market price for such Common Shares, which may be less than the NAV of such Common Shares. See Closed-End Fund Structure.

## Distributions

The Fund intends to make regular monthly distributions to Common Shareholders. The amount of each monthly distribution will vary depending on a number of factors, including distributions payable on preferred shares or notes (if any) or other costs of financial leverage. As portfolio and market conditions change, the rate of distribution on the Common Shares and the Fund's distribution policy could change. On an annual basis, the Fund intends to distribute all or substantially all of its net investment income (after it pays accrued distributions on any outstanding preferred shares or other costs of financial leverage) to meet the requirements for qualification as a regulated investment company under the Code.

The net investment income of the Fund will consist of all interest income accrued on portfolio investments, short-term capital gain (including short-term gains on options, futures and forward positions and gains on the sale of portfolio investments held for one (1) year or less) in excess of long-term capital loss and income from certain hedging transactions, less all expenses of the Fund. Expenses of the Fund will be accrued each day. The Fund intends to distribute all or substantially all of the Fund's net investment income each year. In addition, at least annually the Fund intends to distribute any net capital gain (which is the excess of net long-term capital gain over net short-term capital loss). To the extent that the Fund's net investment income and net capital gain for any year exceed the total distributions paid during the year, the Fund will make a special distribution at or near year-end of such excess amount as may be required. Under the 1940 Act, for any distribution that includes amounts from sources other than net income, the Fund is required to provide Common Shareholders a written statement regarding the components of such distribution. Such a statement will be provided at the time of any distribution believed to include any such amounts.

If, for any taxable year, the total distributions made exceed the Fund's current and accumulated earnings and profit, the excess will, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, be treated as a tax-free return of capital to each Common Shareholder up to the amount of the Common Shareholder's tax basis in his or her Common Shares, and thereafter as gain from the sale of Common Shares. The amount treated as a tax-free return of capital will reduce the Common Shareholder's adjusted tax basis in his or her Common Shares, thereby increasing his or her potential gain or reducing his or her potential loss on the subsequent sale of his or her Common Shares. To the extent the Fund's distribution policy results in distributions in excess of its net investment income and net capital gain, such distributions will decrease its total assets and increase its expense ratio to a greater extent than would have been the case if distributions were limited to these amounts. Distributions in any year may or may not include a substantial return of capital component.

Common Shareholders will automatically reinvest some or all of their distributions in additional Common Shares pursuant to the Fund's dividend reinvestment plan, unless such Common Shareholders contact the Plan Agent and elect to receive distributions in cash. See Dividend Reinvestment Plan.

An investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer after the record date for a monthly dividend (if any) to be paid by the Fund will not receive such dividend. Therefore, an investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer will not receive the Fund's dividend payable[ ], 2014 to Common Shareholders of record at the close of business on [ ], 2014 and an investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer after the record date for the Fund's May dividend, if declared by the Board, will not receive such dividend

#### Tax matters

The following is (i) a description of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences of the receipt, ownership and disposition of Rights by Record Date Common Shareholders and of owning and disposing of Common Shares and (ii) a description of some of the important U.S. federal income tax considerations affecting the Fund. The discussion below provides general tax information related to the receipt, ownership and disposition of Rights and an investment in Common Shares, but this discussion does not purport to be a complete description of the U.S. federal income tax consequences of an investment in such securities. It is based on the Code and Treasury regulations and administrative pronouncements, all as of the date hereof, any of which is subject to change or differing

interpretation, possibly with retroactive effect. In addition, it does not describe all of the tax consequences that may be relevant in light of a Common Shareholder's particular circumstances, including alternative minimum tax consequences and tax consequences applicable to Common Shareholders subject to special tax rules, such as certain financial institutions; dealers or traders in securities who use a mark-to-market method of tax accounting; persons holding Common Shares or Rights as part of a hedging transaction, wash sale, conversion transaction or integrated transaction or persons entering into a constructive sale with respect to the Common Shares or Rights; entities classified as partnerships or other pass-through entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes; real estate investment trusts; insurance companies; U.S. holders (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar; or tax-exempt entities, including individual retirement accounts or Roth IRAs. Unless otherwise noted, the following discussion applies only to a Common Shareholder that holds Common Shares and Rights as a capital asset and is a U.S. holder. A U.S. holder is a holder who, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is a beneficial owner of Common Shares and is (i) an individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States; (ii) a corporation, or other entity taxable as a corporation, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state therein or the District of Columbia; (iii) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or (iv) a trust if it (x) is subject to the primary supervision of a court within the United States and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (y) has a valid election in effect under applicable United States Treasury regulations to be treated as a U.S. person. Tax laws are complex and often change, and Common Shareholders should consult their tax advisors about the U.S. federal, state, local or non-U.S. tax consequences of an investment in the Fund. For more information, please see the section of the SAI entitled "Tax Matters."

## THE OFFER

The receipt of the Rights by a Record Date Common Shareholder pursuant to the Offer will be treated as a non-taxable distribution with respect to the Common Shares for U.S. federal income tax purposes. If the fair market value of the Rights is less than 15% of the fair market value of the Common Shares on the date the Rights are received, the Rights will have a zero basis for U.S. federal income tax purposes, unless the Record Date Common Shareholder affirmatively elects to allocate basis in proportion to the relative fair market values of the Common Shares and the Rights received, as determined on the date of receipt. This election must be made in the tax return for the taxable year in which the Rights are received. On the other hand, if the fair market value of the Rights received is equal to or greater than 15% of the fair market value of the Common Shares on the date the Rights are received, then a Record Date Common Shareholder's basis in his or her Common Shares must be allocated between the Common Shares and the Rights in proportion to their respective fair market values, as determined on the date the Rights are received.

The exercise of a Right by, or on behalf of, a Record Date Common Shareholder will not be a taxable transaction for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The basis of each new Common Share acquired upon exercise of the Right will equal the sum of the Subscription Price and the tax basis (as determined above), if any, of the Right exercised. The holding period of the Common Shares acquired by exercise of Rights will begin on the day the Rights are exercised.

Gain or loss realized on a sale of Rights by, or on behalf of, the Record Date Common Shareholder will be capital gain or loss, and will be long-term capital gain or loss if the Record Date Common Shareholder's holding period for the Rights is more than one (1) year. For these purposes, the holding period for the Rights will include the holding period of the Common Shares with respect to which the Rights were distributed. The amount of the gain or loss will be equal to the difference between the tax basis in the Rights disposed of (as determined above), if any, and the amount realized on the disposition.

In the event the Record Date Common Shareholder allows the Rights to expire, the Rights will be deemed to have a zero basis and, therefore, the Record Date Common Shareholder will not recognize any loss upon the expiration of the Rights. In addition, the tax basis of the Common Shares with respect to which the expired Rights were distributed will remain unchanged compared to their tax basis prior to the Offer.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

A Non-U.S. Common Shareholder (as defined below under "Owning and Disposing of Common Shares") whose income from the Fund is not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business and who is not an individual present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year will generally be exempt from U.S. federal income tax on any gains realized upon the sale or exchange of Rights.

### THE FUND

The Fund has elected to be treated as, and intends to continue to qualify in each taxable year as, a regulated investment company (a "RIC") under Subchapter M of the Code. Assuming the Fund so qualifies and satisfies certain distribution requirements, the Fund generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on income distributed (including amounts that are reinvested pursuant to the Plan) in a timely manner to its shareholders in the form of dividends or capital gain distributions. If the Fund retains any net capital gains for reinvestment, it may elect to treat such capital gains as having been distributed to its shareholders. If the Fund makes such an election, each Common Shareholder will be required to report its share of such undistributed net capital gain as long-term capital gain and will be entitled to claim its share of the U.S. federal income taxes paid by the Fund on such undistributed net capital gain as a credit against its own U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, and to claim a refund on a properly-filed U.S. federal income tax return to the extent that the credit exceeds such liability. In addition, each Common Shareholder will be entitled to increase the adjusted tax basis of its Common Shares by the difference between its share of such undistributed net capital gain and the related credit. There

can be no assurance that the Fund will make this election if it retains all or a portion of its net capital gain for a taxable year.

To qualify as a RIC for any taxable year, the Fund must, among other things, satisfy both an income test and an asset test for such taxable year. Specifically, (i) at least 90% of the Fund's gross income for such taxable year must consist of dividends; interest; payments with respect to certain securities loans; gains from the sale or other disposition of stock, securities or foreign currencies; other income (including, but not limited to, gains from options, futures or forward contracts) derived with respect to its business of investing in such stock, securities or currencies; and net income derived from interests in qualified publicly traded partnerships (such income, Qualifying RIC Income) and (ii) the Fund's holdings must be diversified so that, at the end of each quarter of such taxable year, (a) at least 50% of the value of the Fund's total assets is represented by cash and cash items, securities of other RICs, U.S. government securities and other securities, with such other securities limited, in respect of any one issuer, to an amount not greater than 5% of the value of the Fund's total assets and not greater than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer and (b) not more than 25% of the value of the Fund's total assets is invested (x) in securities (other than U.S. government securities or securities of other RICs) of any one issuer or of two or more issuers that the Fund controls and that are engaged in the same, similar or related trades or businesses or (y) in the securities of one or more qualified publicly traded partnerships. The Fund's share of income derived from a partnership other than a qualified publicly traded partnership will be treated as Qualifying RIC Income only to the extent that such income would have constituted Qualifying RIC Income if derived directly by the Fund. A qualified publicly traded partnership is generally defined as an entity that is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes if (i) interests in such entity are traded on an established securities market or are readily tradable on a secondary market or the substantial equivalent thereof and (ii) less than 90% of its gross income for the relevant taxable year consists of Qualifying RIC Income. The Code provides that the Treasury Department may by regulation exclude from Qualifying RIC Income foreign currency gains that are not directly related to the RIC's principal business of investing in stock or securities (or options and futures with respect to stock or securities). The Fund anticipates that, in general, its foreign currency gains will be directly related to its principal business of investing in stock and securities.

## OWNING AND DISPOSING OF COMMON SHARES

Distributions of the Fund's ordinary income and net short-term capital gains will generally be taxable to the Common Shareholders as ordinary income to the extent such distributions are paid out of the Fund's current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Distributions or deemed distributions, if any, of net capital gains will be taxable as long-term capital gains, regardless of the length of time the Common Shareholder has owned Common Shares. Distributions made to such a Common Shareholder out of qualified dividend income, if any, received by the Fund will be subject to tax at a maximum rate of 15% or 20% (depending on whether the shareholder's income exceeds certain threshold amounts), provided that the Common Shareholder meets certain holding period and other requirements with respect to its Common Shares. A distribution of an amount in excess of the Fund's current and accumulated earnings and profits will be treated by a Common Shareholder as a return of capital that will be applied against and reduce the Common Shareholder's basis in its Common Shares. To the extent that the amount of any such distribution exceeds the Common Shareholder's basis in its Common Shares, the excess will be treated as gain from a sale or exchange of the Common Shares. Distributions will be treated in the manner described above regardless of whether such distributions are paid in cash or invested in additional Common Shares pursuant to the Plan.

A Common Shareholder may recognize a capital gain or loss on the sale or other disposition of Common Shares. The amount of the gain or loss will be equal to the difference between the amount realized and the Common Shareholder's adjusted tax basis in the relevant Common Shares. Such gain or loss generally will be a long-term gain or loss if the Common Shareholder's holding period for such Common Shares is more than one (1) year. Under current law, net capital gains recognized by non-corporate Common Shareholders are generally subject to a maximum rate of either 15% or 20%, depending on whether the shareholder's income exceeds certain threshold amounts. Losses realized by a Common Shareholder on the sale or exchange of Common Shares held for six months or less will be treated as long-term capital losses to the extent of any distribution of long-term capital gain received (or deemed received, as discussed above) with respect to such Common Shares. In addition, no loss will be allowed on a sale or other disposition of Common Shares if the Common Shareholder acquires (including pursuant to the Plan) Common Shares within 30 days before or after the disposition. In such a case, the basis of the securities acquired will be adjusted to reflect the disallowed loss.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

An additional 3.8% Medicare tax is imposed on certain net investment income (including ordinary dividends and capital gain distributions received from the Fund and net gains from redemptions or other taxable dispositions of Fund shares) of U.S. individuals, estates and trusts to the extent that such person's modified adjusted gross income (in the case of an individual) or adjusted gross income (in the case of an estate or trust) exceeds certain threshold amounts.

### NON-U.S. COMMON SHAREHOLDERS

If a Common Shareholder is a nonresident alien, a foreign trust or estate or a foreign corporation, as defined for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (a non-U.S. Common Shareholder) whose ownership of Common Shares is not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business, dividends distributed to such non-U.S. Common Shareholder by the Fund will generally be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax at a rate of 30% (or a lower rate under an applicable treaty). Net capital gain dividends distributed by the Fund to a non-U.S. Common Shareholder will not be subject to U.S. withholding tax. For a discussion of the tax consequences of the ownership of Common Shares by a non-U.S. Common Shareholder whose ownership of Common Shares is effectively connected

with a U.S. trade or business, please see the discussion in the SAI under Tax Matters Non-U.S. Common Shareholders.

If a Common Shareholder does not provide the applicable payor with its correct taxpayer identification number and any required certifications, such Common Shareholder may be subject to backup withholding (currently, at a rate of 28%) on the distributions it receives (or is deemed to receive) from the Fund. Backup withholding will not, however, be applied to payments that have been subject to the 30% withholding tax applicable to non-U.S. Common Shareholders.

Effective July 1, 2014, the Fund will be required to withhold U.S. tax (at a 30% rate) on payments of taxable dividends and (effective January 1, 2017) redemption proceeds and certain capital gain dividends made to certain non-U.S. entities that fail to comply (or be deemed compliant) with extensive new reporting and withholding requirements designed to inform the U.S. Department of the Treasury of U.S.-owned foreign investment accounts. Shareholders may be requested to provide additional information to the Fund to enable the Fund to determine whether withholding is required.

#### Closed-end fund structure

The Fund is a closed-end management investment company with a limited operating history. Closed-end funds differ from open-end management investment companies (commonly referred to as mutual funds) in that closed-end funds generally list their shares for trading on a securities exchange and do not redeem their shares at the option of the shareholder. By comparison, mutual funds issue securities redeemable at net asset value at the option of the shareholder and typically engage in a continuous offering of their shares. Mutual funds are subject to continuous asset in-flows and out-flows that can complicate portfolio management, whereas closed-end funds generally can stay more fully invested in securities consistent with the closed-end fund's investment objectives and policies. In addition, in comparison to open-end funds, closed-end funds have greater flexibility in the employment of financial leverage and in the ability to make certain types of investments, including investments in illiquid securities.

However, shares of closed-end funds frequently trade at a discount from their net asset value. In recognition of the possibility that the Common Shares might trade at a discount to NAV and that any such discount may not be in the interest of Common Shareholders, the Board, in consultation with the Adviser, from time to time may review possible actions to reduce any such discount. The Board might consider open market repurchases or tender offers for Common Shares at NAV. There can be no assurance, however, that the Board will decide to undertake any of these actions or that, if undertaken, such actions would result in the Common Shares trading at a price equal to or close to NAV. The Board might also consider the conversion of the Fund to an open-end mutual fund, which would also require a vote of the shareholders of the Fund. Conversion of the Fund to an open-end mutual fund would require approval by both (i) a majority of the Board and (ii) a vote of shareholders representing the lesser of (a) 67% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund at a shareholder meeting, if the holders of more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities are present in person or by proxy, or (b) more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund.

The Fund has no limitation on investments in illiquid securities (closed-end funds are not required to have any such limitation) and may invest all or a portion of its assets in illiquid securities. In order to meet redemptions upon request by shareholders, open-end funds typically cannot have more than 15% of their assets in illiquid securities. Thus, if the Fund were to convert to an open-end fund, it would have to adopt a limitation on illiquid securities and may need to revise its investment objectives, strategies and policies. The composition of the Fund's portfolio and/or its investment policies could prohibit the Fund from complying with regulations of the SEC applicable to open-end management investment funds absent significant changes in portfolio holdings, including with respect to certain illiquid securities, and investment policies. The Board believes, however, that the closed-end structure is desirable, given the Fund's investment objectives, strategies and policies. Investors should assume, therefore, that it is highly unlikely that the Board would vote to convert the Fund to an open-end investment company. Investors should note that the issuance of preferred shares to provide investment leverage could make a conversion to an open-end fund more difficult.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

because of the voting rights of preferred shareholders, the costs of redeeming preferred shares and other factors. See Description of Capital Structure.

### Dividend reinvestment plan

The Fund offers a Dividend Reinvestment Plan (the Plan ) pursuant to which distributions of dividends and all capital gains on Common Shares are automatically reinvested in additional Common Shares, unless a Common Shareholder specifically elects to receive cash by providing the required notice to the plan agent, State Street Bank and Trust Company (the Plan Agent ). Common Shareholders whose shares are held in the name of a broker or other nominee may have distributions reinvested only if such a service is provided by the broker or the nominee or if the broker or the nominee permits participation in the Plan.

Investors who were not Common Shareholders as of the Record Date but become Common Shareholders as a result of the Offer will not be eligible for the dividend to be payable by the Fund on [ ], 2014 to Common Shareholders of record at the close of business on [ ], 2014 and investors who acquire Common Shares in the Offer after the record date for the Fund's May dividend, if declared by the Board, will not receive such dividend.

The Plan Agent serves as agent for the Common Shareholders of the Fund in administering the Plan. All Common Shareholders are deemed to be participants in the Plan unless they specifically elect not to participate.

If the Fund declares an income dividend or a realized capital gains distribution payable either in the Fund's shares or in cash, as shareholders may have elected, non-participants in the Plan will receive cash and participants in the Plan will receive shares. If the market price per share (plus expected commissions) on the valuation date equals or exceeds net asset value per share on that date, the Fund will issue new shares to participants at net asset value unless the net asset value is less than 95% of the market price on the valuation date, in which case, shares will be issued at 95% of the market price. With respect to Common Shares credited to a participant's account at a price below the current market price, all or a portion of the amount of the discount from such market price may be taxable to the participant as ordinary income. The valuation date will be the dividend or distribution payment date or, if that date is not a trading day on the exchange on which the Fund's shares are then listed, the next preceding trading day. If the net asset value per share exceeds the market price per share (plus expected commissions) at such time, the Plan Agent's broker will buy the Fund's shares in the open market, or elsewhere, with the cash in respect of the dividend or distribution, for the participant's account on, or shortly after, the payment date. For purposes of such purchases, the Plan Agent may use an affiliated or unaffiliated broker.

In the event of a market discount on the dividend or distribution payment date, the Plan Agent's broker will have up to thirty (30) days after such payment date to invest the dividend or distribution amount in Common Shares acquired in open-market purchases. If, before the Plan Agent's broker has completed its open-market purchases, the market price of a Common Share (plus expected commissions) exceeds the net asset value per Common Share, the average per Common Share purchase price paid by the Plan Agent's broker may exceed the net asset value of the Fund's Common Shares, resulting in the acquisition of fewer Common Shares than if the distribution had been paid in newly issued Common Shares on the payment date. Therefore, the Plan provides that if the Plan Agent's broker is unable to invest the full dividend or distribution amount in open-market purchases during the purchase period or if the market discount shifts to a market premium during the purchase period, the Plan Agent's broker will cease making open-market purchases and will invest the uninvested portion of the dividend or distribution amount in newly issued Common Shares.

The Plan Agent maintains all Common Shareholders' accounts in the Plan and furnishes written confirmation of all transactions in the accounts, including information needed by Common Shareholders for tax records. Common Shares in the account of each Plan participant will be held by the Plan Agent on behalf of the Plan participant, and each Common Shareholder proxy will include those Common Shares purchased or received pursuant to the Plan.

The Plan Agent will forward all proxy solicitation materials to participants and vote proxies for Common Shares held pursuant to the Plan in accordance with the instructions of the participants.

In the case of Common Shareholders such as banks, brokers or nominees that hold Common Shares for others who are the beneficial owners, the Plan Agent will administer the Plan on the basis of the number of Common Shares certified from time to time by the record Common Shareholder's name and held for the account of beneficial owners who participate in the Plan. A shareholder who holds his shares through a broker or other nominee will only be eligible to participate in the Plan if it is permitted by such broker or nominee. Such shareholders will not necessarily participate automatically in the Plan, and must contact their broker or nominee for more information.

There will be no brokerage charges to Common Shareholders with respect to Common Shares issued directly by the Fund as a result of dividends or distributions payable either in Common Shares or in cash. However, each participant will pay a pro rata share of brokerage commissions incurred with respect to the Plan Agent's open-market purchases in connection with the reinvestment of dividends or distributions.

Common Shareholders participating in the Plan may receive benefits not available to Common Shareholders not participating in the Plan. If the market price (plus commissions) of the Fund's Common Shares is above their NAV, participants in the Plan will receive Common Shares of the Fund at less than they could otherwise purchase them and will have Common Shares with a cash value greater than the value of any cash distribution they would have received on their Common Shares. If the market price plus commissions is below the NAV of the Common Shares,

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

participants will receive distributions in Common Shares with a NAV greater than the per Common Share value of any cash distribution they would have received on their Common Shares. However, there may be insufficient Common Shares available in the market to make distributions in Common Shares at prices below the NAV. Also, since the Fund does not redeem its Common Shares, the price on resale may be more or less than the NAV.

The automatic reinvestment of dividends and distributions does not relieve participants of any income tax that may be payable on such dividends and distributions. See Tax Matters Distributions in the SAI.

You may obtain additional information about the Plan by calling (877) 525-7330 or by writing to the Plan Agent at State Street Bank and Trust Company, 200 Clarendon Street, 16th Floor, Boston, MA 02116.

Common Shareholders may terminate their participation in the Plan at any time by calling (877) 525-7330 or by writing to the Plan Agent at the address listed above. Such termination will be effective immediately if the participant's notice is received and processed by the Plan Agent not less than three (3) business days prior to any dividend or distribution payment date; otherwise such termination will be effective the first trading day after the payment for such dividend or distribution with respect to any subsequent

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

dividend or distribution. Common Shareholders of the Fund may again elect to participate in the Plan at any time by calling (877) 525-7330 or by writing to the Plan Agent at the address listed above. The Plan may be terminated by the Plan Agent or the Fund upon notice in writing mailed to participants at least thirty (30) days prior to any record date for the payment of any dividend or distribution by the Fund. Upon any termination described in the paragraph, shares will be held by the Plan Agent in non-certificated form in the name of the participant. If a participant elects by notice to the Plan Agent in writing or by telephone (as described above) in advance of such termination to have the Plan Agent sell part or all of the participant's Common Shares and to remit the proceeds to the participant, the Plan Agent is authorized to deduct brokerage commissions for such transaction from the proceeds. To sell such shares, the Plan Agent may use an affiliated or unaffiliated broker.

Upon ninety (90) days' notice to Plan participants, the Fund and the Plan Agent reserve the right to amend or supplement the terms and conditions of the Plan.

### Description of capital structure

The Fund is a statutory trust organized under the laws of the State of Delaware pursuant to the Agreement and Declaration of Trust dated as of December 9, 2010. The Fund is authorized to issue an unlimited number of common shares of beneficial interest, par value \$0.001 per common share. The Fund intends to hold annual meetings of shareholders so long as the common shares are listed on a national securities exchange and such meetings are required as a condition to such listing. An investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer after the Record Date for a meeting of shareholders will not be entitled to vote such shares, or otherwise participate with respect to such shares, at such meeting.

### GENERAL

Set forth below is information with respect to the Fund's outstanding securities as of [ ], 2014:

| Title of Class | Amount<br>Authorized | Amount Held by<br>the Fund or for its<br>Account | Amount Outstanding<br>Exclusive of Common<br>Shares Held by the Fund<br>or for its Own Account |
|----------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Common Shares  | Unlimited            | [ ]                                              | [ ]                                                                                            |

### COMMON SHARES

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust permits the Fund to issue an unlimited number of full and fractional Common Shares. Each Common Share represents an equal proportionate interest in the assets of the Fund with each other Common Share in the Fund. Common Shareholders will be entitled to the payment of distributions when, as and if declared by the Board. The 1940 Act or the terms of any borrowings or preferred shares may limit the payment of distributions to the Common Shareholders. Each whole Common Share shall be entitled to one (1) vote as to matters on which it is entitled to vote pursuant to the terms of the Agreement and Declaration of Trust. Upon liquidation of the Fund, after paying or adequately providing for the payment of all liabilities of the Fund and the liquidation preference with respect to any outstanding preferred shares, and upon receipt of such releases, indemnities and refunding agreements as they deem necessary for their protection, the trustees may distribute the remaining assets of the Fund among the holders of the Common Shares. Common Shareholders shall be entitled to

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

the same limitation of personal liability extended to common shareholders of private corporations for profit organized under the Delaware General Corporation Law.

In general, except as provided in the following paragraph, when there are any borrowings, including reverse repurchase agreements, or preferred shares and/or notes outstanding, the Fund may not be permitted to declare any cash distribution on its Common Shares, unless at the time of such declaration, (i) all accrued distributions on preferred shares or accrued interest on borrowings have been paid and (ii) the value of the Fund's total assets (determined after deducting the amount of such distribution), less all liabilities and indebtedness of the Fund not represented by senior securities, is at least 300% of the aggregate amount of such securities representing indebtedness and at least 200% of the aggregate amount of securities representing indebtedness plus the aggregate liquidation value of the outstanding preferred shares (expected to equal the aggregate original purchase price of the outstanding preferred shares plus the applicable redemption premium, if any, together with any accrued and unpaid distributions thereon, whether or not earned or declared and on a cumulative basis). In addition to the requirements of the 1940 Act, the Fund may be required to comply with other asset coverage requirements as a condition of the Fund obtaining a rating of the preferred shares or notes from a NRSRO. These requirements may include an asset coverage test more stringent than under the 1940 Act. This limitation on the Fund's ability to make distributions on its Common Shares could in certain circumstances impair the ability of the Fund to maintain its qualification for taxation as a regulated investment company for federal income tax purposes. The Fund intends, however, to the extent possible to purchase or redeem preferred shares or notes or reduce borrowings from time to time to maintain compliance with such asset coverage requirements and may pay special distributions to the holders of the preferred shares in certain circumstances in connection with any such impairment of the Fund's status as a regulated investment company. See Distributions. Depending on the timing of any such redemption or repayment, the Fund may be required to pay a premium in

addition to the liquidation preference of the preferred shares to the holders thereof.

The asset coverage requirements under the 1940 Act set forth in the foregoing paragraph would only apply to the Fund's uncovered reverse repurchase agreements. Covered reverse repurchase agreements will not be counted against the foregoing limits under the 1940 Act (although the proceeds of, and assets subject to, such agreements would still be counted as part of the Fund's total assets). A reverse repurchase agreement will be considered covered if the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the Fund's obligations under such reverse repurchase agreement (or segregates such other amounts as may be permitted by the 1940 Act or SEC guidance from time to time); otherwise, a reverse repurchase agreement will be considered uncovered. The Fund may not cover a reverse repurchase agreement if it does not need to do so to comply with the foregoing 1940 Act requirements and, in the view of an Adviser, the assets that would have been used to cover could be better used for a different purpose.

The Fund has no present intention of offering additional Common Shares, except as described herein. Other offerings of its Common Shares, if made, will require approval of the Board. Any additional offering will not be sold at a price per Common Share below the then current NAV (exclusive of underwriting discounts and commissions) except in connection with an offering to existing Common Shareholders or with the consent of a majority of the Fund's outstanding Common Shareholders. The Common Shares have no preemptive rights.

The Fund currently issues its Common Shares without certificates.

The trading or ticker symbol of the Common Shares on the NYSE is ACP.

## **REPURCHASE OF COMMON SHARES**

Since inception, the Fund's Common Shares have frequently traded at a discount in relation to NAV. The Board has authorized repurchases of Common Shares through open market transactions if deemed necessary or desirable in reducing the discount from NAV in the market price of Common Shares, provided that the Fund may not repurchase more than 10% of its outstanding Common Shares in any calendar year. The Board currently has no intention to take any other action in response to a discount from NAV of the Common Shares. Further, it is the Board's intention not to authorize repurchases of Common Shares or a tender offer for such shares if: (1) such transactions, if consummated, would (a) result in the delisting of the Common Shares from the NYSE or (b) impair the Fund's status as a regulated investment company under the Code (which would make the Fund a taxable entity, causing the Fund's income to be taxed at the trust level in addition to the taxation of shareholders who receive dividends from the Fund) or as a registered closed-end investment company under the 1940 Act; (2) the Fund would not be able to liquidate portfolio securities in an orderly manner and consistent with the Fund's investment objectives and policies in order to repurchase shares; or (3) there is, in the Board's judgment, any (a) material legal action or proceeding instituted or threatened challenging such transactions or otherwise materially adversely affecting the Fund, (b) general suspension of or limitation on prices for trading securities on the NYSE, (c) declaration of a banking moratorium by Federal or state authorities or any suspension of payment by U.S. or New York banks, (d) material limitation affecting the Fund or the issuers of its portfolio securities by Federal or state authorities on the extension of credit by lending institutions or on the exchange of foreign currency, (e) commencement or continuation of war, armed hostilities or other international or national calamity directly or indirectly involving the United States or (f) other event or condition which would have a material adverse effect (including any adverse tax effect) on the Fund or its shareholders if shares were repurchased. Even in the absence of such conditions, the Board may decline to take action in response to a discount from NAV of the Common Shares. The Board may in the future modify these conditions in light of experience.

## **PREFERRED SHARES**

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust authorizes the issuance of an unlimited number of shares of beneficial interest with preference rights, including preferred shares, having a par value of \$0.001 per share, in one or more series, with rights as determined by the Board, by action of the Board without the approval of the Common Shareholders.

Under the requirements of the 1940 Act, the Fund must, immediately after the issuance of any preferred shares, have an asset coverage of at least 200%. Asset coverage means the ratio which the value of the total assets of the Fund, less all liability and indebtedness not represented by senior securities (as defined in the 1940 Act), bears to the aggregate amount of senior securities representing indebtedness of the Fund, if any, plus the aggregate liquidation preference of the preferred shares. If the Fund seeks a rating of the preferred shares, asset coverage requirements, in addition to those set forth in the 1940 Act, may be imposed. The liquidation value of the preferred shares is expected to equal their aggregate original purchase price plus the applicable redemption premium, if any, together with any accrued and unpaid distributions thereon (on a cumulative basis), whether or not earned or declared. The terms of the preferred shares, including their distribution rate, voting rights, liquidation preference and redemption provisions, will be determined by the Board (subject to applicable law and the Fund's Agreement and Declaration of Trust) if and when it authorizes the preferred shares. The Fund may issue preferred shares that provide for the periodic redetermination of the distribution rate at relatively short intervals through an auction or remarketing procedure, although the terms of the preferred shares may also enable the Fund to lengthen such intervals. At times, the distribution rate on the Fund's preferred shares may exceed the Fund's return after expenses on the investment of proceeds from the preferred shares, resulting in a lower rate of return to Common

Shareholders than if the preferred shares were not outstanding.

In the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Fund, the terms of any preferred shares may entitle the holders of preferred shares to receive a preferential liquidating distribution (expected to equal the original purchase price per share plus the applicable redemption premium, if any, together with accrued and unpaid distributions, whether or not earned or declared and on a cumulative basis) before any distribution of assets is made to Common Shareholders. After payment of the full amount of the liquidating distribution to which they are entitled, the preferred shareholders would not be entitled to any further participation in any distribution of assets by the Fund.

Holders of preferred shares, voting as a class, shall be entitled to elect two of the Fund's trustees. Under the 1940 Act, if at any time distributions on the preferred shares are unpaid in an amount equal to two (2) full years' distributions thereon, the holders of all outstanding preferred shares, voting as a class, will be allowed to elect a majority of the Fund's trustees until all distributions in arrears have been paid or declared and set apart for payment. The 1940 Act also requires that, in addition to any approval by shareholders that might otherwise be required, the approval of the holders of a majority of any outstanding preferred shares, voting separately as a class, would be required to (1) adopt any plan of reorganization that would adversely affect the preferred shares and (2) take any action requiring a vote of security holders under Section 13(a) of the 1940 Act, including among other things, changes in the Fund's sub-classification as a closed-end investment company or changes in its fundamental investment restrictions. In addition, if required by a NRSRO rating the preferred shares or if the Board determines it to be in the best interests of the Common Shareholders, issuance of the preferred shares may result in more restrictive provisions than required by the 1940 Act being imposed. In this regard, holders of the preferred shares may be entitled to elect a majority of the Fund's Board in other circumstances, for example, if one payment on the preferred shares is in arrears.

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of any outstanding preferred shares, voting as a separate class, will be required to amend, alter or repeal any of the preferences, rights or powers of holders of preferred shares so as to affect materially and adversely such preferences, rights or powers, or to increase or decrease the authorized number of preferred shares. The class vote of holders of preferred shares described above will in each case be in addition to any other vote required to authorize the action in question.

The Fund currently intends to seek the highest credit rating possible from one or more NRSROs on any preferred shares that the Fund issues. The Fund intends that, as long as preferred shares are outstanding, the composition of its portfolio will reflect guidelines established by such NRSRO. Although, as of the date hereof, no NRSRO has established guidelines relating to the Fund's preferred shares, based on previous guidelines established by NRSROs for the securities of other issuers, the Fund anticipates that the guidelines with respect to the preferred shares will establish a set of tests for portfolio composition and asset coverage that supplement (and in some cases are more restrictive than) the applicable requirements under the 1940 Act. Although no assurance can be given at this time as to the nature or extent of the guidelines that may be imposed in connection with obtaining a rating of the preferred shares, the Fund currently anticipates that such guidelines will include asset coverage requirements which are more restrictive than those under the 1940 Act, restrictions on certain portfolio investments and investment practices, requirements that the Fund maintain a portion of its assets in short-term, high-quality investments and certain mandatory redemption requirements relating to the preferred shares. No assurance can be given that the guidelines actually imposed with respect to the preferred shares by a NRSRO will be more or less restrictive than as described in this prospectus.

## **REVERSE REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS AND DERIVATIVES**

Financial leverage may be achieved through entering into reverse repurchase agreements under which the Fund sells portfolio securities to financial institutions such as banks and broker-dealers and generally agrees to repurchase them at a mutually agreed future date and price. The 1940 Act generally limits the extent to which the Fund may utilize uncovered reverse repurchase agreements and borrowings, together with any other senior securities representing indebtedness, to 33 1/3 % of the Fund's total assets at the time utilized. Covered reverse repurchase agreements will not be counted against the foregoing limits under the 1940 Act. A reverse repurchase agreement will be considered covered if

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the Fund's obligations under such reverse repurchase agreement (or segregates such other amounts as may be permitted by the 1940 Act or SEC guidance from time to time); otherwise, a reverse repurchase agreement will be considered uncovered. The Fund may not cover a reverse repurchase agreement if it does not need to do so to comply with the foregoing 1940 Act requirements and, in the view of the Adviser, the assets that would have been used to cover could be better used for a different purpose.

The Fund also expects to enter into other transactions that may give rise to a form of leverage including, among others, swaps, futures and forward contracts, options and other derivative transactions. To the extent that the Fund covers its obligations under such other transactions, as described in this prospectus, such transactions should not be treated as borrowings for purposes of the 1940 Act. However, these transactions, even if covered, may represent a form of economic leverage and will create risks. Further, the Fund may incur losses on such transactions (including the entire amount of the Fund's investment in such transaction) even if they are covered.

## CREDIT FACILITY/COMMERCIAL PAPER PROGRAM/NOTES

The Fund utilizes leverage through borrowings and may enter into definitive agreements with respect to a credit facility/commercial paper program or other borrowing program. The Fund may negotiate with commercial banks to arrange a credit facility/commercial paper program pursuant to which the Fund would expect to be entitled to borrow an amount equal to approximately one-third (1/3) of the Fund's total assets (inclusive of the amount borrowed) following the closing of the Offer hereby. Any such borrowings would constitute financial leverage. Such a credit facility/commercial paper program is not expected to be convertible into any other securities of the Fund, outstanding amounts are expected to be prepayable by the Fund prior to final maturity without significant penalty and there are not expected to be any sinking fund or mandatory retirement provisions. Outstanding amounts would be payable at maturity or such earlier times as required by the agreement. The Fund may be required to prepay outstanding amounts under the credit facility/commercial paper program or incur a penalty rate of interest upon the occurrence of certain events of default. The Fund would be expected to indemnify the lenders under the credit facility/commercial paper program against liabilities they may incur in connection with the credit facility/commercial paper program. The Fund is currently a party to the Credit Facility. The Credit Facility expires on March 6, 2015 (although, subject to certain conditions including the payment of an additional fee, the Fund may extend the maturity date of its outstanding loans for up to approximately one (1) year following such expiration date). Although the Fund currently intends to renew the Credit Facility, prior to its expiration date there can be no assurance that the Fund will be able to do so or do so on terms similar to the current Credit Facility, which may adversely affect the ability of the Fund to pursue its investment objectives and strategies. Following completion of the rights offering, the Fund currently intends to adjust leverage in its portfolio from time to time through the Credit Facility. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks for more information.

The Fund may also obtain leverage through the issuance of notes representing indebtedness. Such notes are not expected to be convertible into any other securities of the Fund. Outstanding amounts would be payable at maturity or such earlier times as required by the terms of the notes. The Fund may be required to prepay outstanding amounts under the notes or incur a penalty rate of interest upon the occurrence of certain events of default.

Under the 1940 Act, the Fund is not permitted to incur indebtedness, including through the issuance of notes or other debt securities, unless immediately thereafter the total asset value of the Fund's portfolio is at least 300% of the aggregate amount of the outstanding indebtedness (i.e., such aggregate amount may not exceed 33 1/3 % of the Fund's total assets). In addition, the Fund is not permitted to declare any cash distribution on its Common Shares unless, at the time of such declaration, the net asset value of the Fund's portfolio (determined after deducting the amount of such distribution) is at least 300% of such aggregate amount. If the Fund issues notes, borrows money or enters into a credit facility/commercial paper program, the Fund intends, to the extent possible, to retire outstanding debt, from time to time, to maintain coverage of any outstanding indebtedness of at least 300%.

The Fund may seek the highest credit rating possible from one or more NRSROs on any notes that the Fund issues. In such a case, the Fund intends that, as long as notes are outstanding, the composition of its portfolio will reflect guidelines established by such NRSRO. Although, as of the date hereof, no NRSRO has established guidelines relating to the Fund's notes, based on previous guidelines established by NRSROs for the securities of other issuers, the Fund anticipates that the guidelines with respect to the notes will establish a set of tests for portfolio composition and asset coverage that supplement (and in some cases are more restrictive than) the applicable requirements under the 1940 Act. Although, at this time, no assurance can be given as to the nature or extent of the guidelines which may be imposed in connection with obtaining a rating of the notes, the Fund currently anticipates that such guidelines will include asset coverage requirements which are more restrictive than those under the 1940 Act, restrictions on certain portfolio investments and investment practices, requirements that the Fund maintain a portion of its assets in short-term, high-quality investments and certain mandatory redemption requirements relating to the notes. No assurance can be given that the guidelines actually imposed with respect to the notes by a NRSRO will be more or less restrictive than as described in this prospectus.

In addition, the Fund expects that any notes or a credit facility/commercial paper program would contain covenants that, among other things, will likely impose geographic exposure limitations, credit quality minimums, liquidity minimums, concentration limitations and currency hedging requirements on the Fund. These covenants would also likely limit the Fund's ability to pay distributions in certain circumstances, incur

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

additional debt, change its fundamental investment policies, engage in certain transactions, including mergers and consolidations, and may require asset coverage ratios in addition to those required by the 1940 Act. The Fund would only agree to a limit on its ability to change its fundamental investment policies if doing so was consistent with the 1940 Act and applicable state law. The Fund may be required to pledge (or otherwise grant a security interest in) some or all of its assets and to maintain a portion of its assets in cash or high-grade securities as a reserve against interest or principal payments and expenses. The Fund expects that any notes or credit facility/commercial paper program would have customary covenant, negative covenant and default provisions. There can be no assurance that the Fund will enter into an agreement for a credit facility/commercial paper program, or issue notes, on terms and conditions representative of the foregoing, or that additional material terms will not apply. In addition, if entered into or issued, any such notes or credit facility/commercial paper program may in the future be replaced or refinanced by one or more credit facilities having substantially different terms or by the issuance of preferred shares and/or notes or debt securities. The Fund is currently a party to the Credit Facility. See Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy Use of Leverage and Related Risks for more information.

## **ANTI-TAKEOVER AND CERTAIN OTHER PROVISIONS IN THE AGREEMENT AND DECLARATION OF TRUST**

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust and By-Laws of the Fund contain provisions, which are described below in this section, that could have the effect of limiting (i) the ability of other entities or persons to acquire control of the Fund; (ii) the Fund's freedom to engage in certain transactions or (iii) the ability of the Fund's trustees or shareholders to amend the Agreement and Declaration of Trust and By-Laws or effectuate changes in the Fund's management. These provisions of the Agreement and Declaration of Trust and By-Laws of the Fund may be regarded as anti-takeover provisions.

The Board is divided into three (3) classes, with the terms of one (1) class expiring at each annual meeting of shareholders. At each annual meeting, one class of trustees is elected to a three-year term. This provision could delay for up to two (2) years the replacement of a majority of the Board. Shareholders have no right under the Agreement and Declaration of Trust to remove any trustee, other than by electing a different trustee at an annual meeting of shareholders. The Fund's Agreement and Declaration of Trust provides that, unless a two-thirds (2/3) majority of the Board determines otherwise, the affirmative vote of at least three-fourths (3/4) of the Fund's outstanding shares of each affected class or series entitled to be cast, voting together unless otherwise entitled to vote as a separate class or series, is required in order to approve (i) any amendment to, repeal of, or adoption of any provision inconsistent with, the Fund's Agreement and Declaration of Trust regarding election and term of trustees or (ii) any amendment to the Agreement and Declaration of Trust that reduces the foregoing three-fourths (3/4) vote requirement. A trustee may be removed from office for cause only, and not without cause, and only by the action of two-thirds (2/3) of the remaining trustees.

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust provides that the trustees may (i) sell, convey and transfer all or substantially all of the assets of the Fund to another trust, corporation, partnership, association, or other entity; (ii) merge or consolidate the Fund with any other trust, corporation, partnership, association or other entity or (iii) dissolve the Fund. The trustees may require a shareholder vote on such matters as well. The Agreement and Declaration of Trust does not contemplate that the shareholders could effect any of the foregoing actions directly.

The overall effect of these provisions is to render more difficult the accomplishment of a merger or the assumption of control by a third party. These provisions also provide, however, the advantage of potentially requiring persons seeking control of the Fund to negotiate with its management regarding the price to be paid and facilitating the continuity of the Fund's investment objectives and policies. The provisions of the Agreement and Declaration of Trust and By-Laws described above could have the effect of discouraging a third party from seeking to obtain control of the Fund in a tender offer or similar transaction.

The Board has determined that provisions with respect to the Board and the shareholder voting requirements are in the best interests of the shareholders generally. Reference should be made to the Agreement and Declaration of Trust on file with the SEC for the full text of these provisions.

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust provides that the Fund will fully indemnify (except in the case of certain disabling conduct) each of its trustees, officers, and employees, and any investment adviser or subadviser in connection with their service with the Fund. The Agreement and Declaration of Trust also provides for advancement of expenses (including counsel fees) to such indemnified persons.

## **CONVERSION TO OPEN-END FUND**

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Fund may be converted to an open-end management investment company at any time if approved by both (i) a majority of the Board and (ii) a vote of shareholders representing the lesser of (a) 67% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund at a shareholder meeting, if the holders of more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities are present in person or by proxy, or (b) more than 50% of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund. The composition of the Fund's portfolio and/or its investment policies could prohibit the Fund from complying with regulations of the SEC applicable to open-end management investment companies unless significant changes in portfolio holdings, which might be difficult and could involve losses, and investment policies are made. Conversion of the Fund to an open-end management investment company also would require the redemption of any outstanding preferred shares and could require the repayment of borrowings, which would reduce the leveraged capital structure of the Fund with respect to the Common Shares. In the event of conversion, the Common Shares would cease to be listed on the NYSE or other national securities exchange or market system. The Board believes the closed-end structure is desirable, given the Fund's investment objectives and policies. Investors should assume, therefore, that it is unlikely that the Board would vote to convert the Fund to an open-end management investment company. Common shareholders of an open-end management investment company can require the company to redeem their shares at any time (except in certain circumstances as authorized by or under the 1940 Act) at their net asset value, less such redemption charge, if any, as might be in effect at the time of a redemption. If converted to an open-end fund, the Fund expects to pay all redemption requests in cash, but reserves the right to pay redemption requests in a combination of cash or securities. If such partial payment in securities were made, investors may incur brokerage costs in converting such securities to cash. If the Fund were converted to an open-end fund, it is likely that new Common Shares would be sold at NAV plus a sales load.

### Distribution arrangements

[ ] will act as Dealer Manager for the Offer. Under the terms and subject to the conditions contained in the Dealer Manager Agreement, the Dealer Manager will provide financial structuring and solicitation services in connection with the Offer and will solicit

the exercise of Rights and participation in the Over-Subscription Privilege. The Offer is not contingent upon any number of Rights being exercised. The Dealer Manager will also be responsible for forming and managing a group of selling broker-dealers (each a Selling Group Member and collectively the Selling Group Members ), whereby each Selling Group Member will enter into a Selling Group Agreement with the Dealer Manager to solicit the exercise of Rights and to sell Common Shares purchased by the Selling Group Member from the Dealer Manager. In addition, the Dealer Manager will enter into a Soliciting Dealer Agreement with other soliciting broker-dealers (each a Soliciting Dealer and collectively the Soliciting Dealers ) to solicit the exercise of Rights. See Compensation to Dealer Manager for a discussion of fees and other compensation to be paid to the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members and Soliciting Dealers in connection with the Offer. The services provided by the Dealer Manager differ from those provided by the Adviser in that the Adviser acts as the investment adviser for the Fund and manages the investment and reinvestment of the Fund's assets in accordance with the Fund's investment objectives and policies and limitations, and generally manages the day-to-day business and affairs of the Fund. The Adviser has not been retained by the Fund to manage a rights offering; instead, given the complexities of the transaction, the Fund believes that the retention of the Dealer Manager will be beneficial. See Management of the Fund Advisory Agreement for a more complete description of the Advisory Agreement.

The Fund and the Adviser have agreed to indemnify the Dealer Manager or contribute to losses arising out of certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. The Dealer Manager Agreement also provides that the Dealer Manager will not be subject to any liability to the Fund in rendering the services contemplated by the Dealer Manager Agreement except for any act of willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence of the Dealer Manager in the performance of its duties or reckless disregard by the Dealer Manager of its obligations and duties under the Dealer Manager Agreement.

Prior to the expiration of the Offer, the Dealer Manager may independently offer for sale Common Shares acquired through exercising the Rights at prices that may be different from the market price for such Common Shares or from the price to be received by the Fund upon the exercise of Rights. The Dealer Manager is authorized to buy and exercise Rights (for delivery of Common Shares prior to the expiration of the Offer), including unexercised Rights of Record Date Common Shareholders whose record addresses are outside the United States held by the Subscription Agent for which no instructions are received, and to sell Common Shares to the public or to Selling Group Members at the offering price set by the Dealer Manager from time to time. In addition, the Dealer Manager has the right to buy Rights offered to it by the Subscription Agent from electing Record Date Common Shareholders, and the Dealer Manager may purchase such Rights as principal or act as agent on behalf of its clients for the resale of such Rights.

Record Date Common Shareholders who do not wish to exercise any or all of their Rights may instruct the Subscription Agent to try to sell any Rights they do not intend to exercise themselves. Subscription certificates evidencing the Rights to be sold by the Subscription Agent must be received by the Subscription Agent on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on [ ], 2014 (or, if the subscription period is extended, on or before 5:00 p.m., New York City time, two (2) business days prior to the extended Expiration Date). Upon the timely receipt by the Subscription Agent of appropriate instructions to sell Rights, the Subscription Agent will ask the Dealer Manager if it will purchase the Rights. If the Dealer Manager purchases the Rights, the sales price paid by the Dealer Manager will be based upon the then current market price for the Rights. The proceeds from each of such sales to the Dealer Manager will be remitted to the Subscription Agent, which will hold such proceeds in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to each selling Record Date Common Shareholder. It is expected that following each such sale of Rights to the Dealer Manager, the proceeds from each such sale will be received by the Subscription Agent within three (3) business days of the sale and that the proceeds will then be remitted to the selling Record Date Common Shareholder within three (3) business days of receipt by the Subscription Agent.

If the Dealer Manager declines to purchase the Rights of a Record Date Common Shareholder that have been duly submitted to the Subscription Agent for sale, the Subscription Agent will attempt to sell such Rights in the open market. If the Rights can be sold in such manner, all of such sales will be deemed to have been effected at the weighted-average price of all Rights sold by the Subscription Agent in such open market transactions throughout the subscription period. The proceeds from such sales will be held by the Subscription Agent in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds pending distribution to the selling Record Date Common Shareholders. It is expected that the proceeds of such open market sales will be remitted by the Subscription Agent to the selling Record Date Common Shareholders within five (5) business days following the Expiration Date.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Subscription Agent will also attempt to sell (either to the Dealer Manager or in open market transactions as described above) all Rights which remain unclaimed as a result of subscription certificates being returned by the postal authorities to the Subscription Agent as undeliverable as of the fourth (4th) business day prior to the Expiration Date. The Subscription Agent will hold the proceeds from those sales in an account segregated from the Subscription Agent's own funds for the benefit of such non-claiming Record Date Common Shareholders until such proceeds are either claimed or revert to the state.

There can be no assurance that the Subscription Agent will be able to sell any Rights, and neither the Fund nor the Subscription Agent has guaranteed any minimum sales price for the Rights. If a Record Date Common Shareholder does not utilize the services of the Subscription Agent and chooses to use another broker-dealer or other financial institution to sell Rights, then the other broker-dealer or financial institution may charge a fee to sell the Rights.

In the ordinary course of their businesses, the Dealer Manager and its affiliates may engage in investment banking or financial

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

transactions with the Fund, the Adviser and their affiliates. In addition, the Dealer Manager and its affiliates may, from time to time, own securities of the Adviser or its affiliates.

The Fund will bear the expenses of the Offer, which will be paid from the proceeds of the Offer. These expenses include, but are not limited to, the expense of preparation and printing of the prospectus for the Offer, the expense of counsel and auditors in connection with the Offer and the out-of-pocket expenses incurred by the officers of the Fund and others in connection with the Offer.

The principal business address of [ ] is [ ].

### Compensation to Dealer Manager

Pursuant to the Dealer Manager Agreement, the Fund has agreed to pay the Dealer Manager a fee for its financial structuring and solicitation services equal to [ ]% of the aggregate Subscription Price for Common Shares issued pursuant to the Offer. The Dealer Manager will reallocate to Selling Group Members in the Selling Group to be formed and managed by the Dealer Manager selling fees equal to [ ]% of the Subscription Price for each Common Share issued pursuant to the Offer or the Over-Subscription Privilege as a result of their selling efforts. In addition, the Dealer Manager will reallocate to Soliciting Dealers that have executed and delivered a Soliciting Dealer Agreement and have solicited the exercise of Rights, solicitation fees equal to [ ]% of the Subscription Price for each Common Share issued pursuant to the exercise of Rights as a result of their soliciting efforts, subject to a maximum fee based on the number of Common Shares held by such Soliciting Dealer through DTC on the Record Date. Fees will be paid to the broker-dealer designated on the applicable portion of the subscription certificates or, in the absence of such designation, to the Dealer Manager.

In addition, the Fund has agreed to pay the Dealer Manager an amount up to \$[ ] as a partial reimbursement of its expenses incurred in connection with the Offer. The fees described above are one-time fees payable on each date on which the Fund issues Common Shares after the Expiration Date with respect to the Dealer Manager, and on or before the tenth business day following the day the Fund issues Common Shares after the Expiration Date with respect to a Selling Group Member or Soliciting Dealer. The Fund will also pay expenses relating to the printing or other production, mailing and delivery expenses incurred in connection with materials related to the Offer, including all reasonable out-of-pocket fees and expenses, if any and not to exceed \$[ ], incurred by the Dealer Manager, Selling Group Members, Soliciting Dealers and other brokers, dealers and financial institutions in connection with their customary mailing and handling of materials related to the Offer to their customers. In connection with the purchase of Rights and sale of Common Shares by the Dealer Manager, the Dealer Manager may realize profits or losses in addition to and independent of any fees described above. While such profits or losses are difficult to quantify prior to the commencement of the subscription period, in no event will profits to the Dealer Manager from the purchase of Rights and sale of Common Shares acquired pursuant to the exercise of Rights exceed [ ]% of the gross proceeds of the Offer. No other fees will be payable by the Fund or the Adviser to the Dealer Manager in connection with the Offer. All of the costs of the Offer will be borne by the Fund's Common Shareholders whether or not they exercise their Rights.

### Custodian, dividend paying agent, transfer agent and registrar

State Street serves as Custodian for the Fund. The Custodian holds cash, securities, and other assets of the Fund as required by the 1940 Act and also provides certain Fund accounting services. Custody and accounting fees are payable monthly based on assets held in custody, investment purchases and sales activity and other factors, plus reimbursement for certain out of pocket expenses. The principal business address of the Custodian is State Street Financial Center, 1 Lincoln Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02111. State Street also acts as the Fund's dividend paying agent, transfer agent and the registrar for the Fund's Common Shares. The principal address of the transfer agent and dividend paying agent is

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

200 Clarendon Street, 16th Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02116.

### Legal opinions

Certain legal matters in connection with the Common Shares will be passed on for the Fund by Dechert LLP and, with respect to certain matters of Delaware law, by [ ], and for the Dealer Manager by [ ]. Dechert LLP may rely on the opinion of [ ] as to certain matters of Delaware law.

### Independent registered public accounting firm

The financial statements as of and for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013 incorporated by reference in the SAI have been so incorporated in reliance on the report of [ ], an independent registered public accounting firm, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting. The address of [ ] is [ ]. The audit services they provide include examination of the financial statements of the Fund, services relating to filings by the Fund with the SEC, and consultation on matters related to the preparation and filing of tax returns.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

### Additional information

The prospectus and the SAI do not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement that the Fund has filed with the SEC (file No. 333-[ ]). The complete registration statement may be obtained from the SEC upon payment of the fee prescribed by its rules and regulations. The SAI can be obtained without charge by calling 1-877-525-7330.

Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents of any contract or other documents referred to are not necessarily complete, and, in each instance, reference is made to the copy of such contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, each such statement being qualified in all respects by such reference. To the extent they would be material to an investor's decision to invest in the Offer, the terms of any such contract or other document are described in the prospectus.

### Table of contents for the statement of additional information

|                                                 |          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Investment objectives, policies and risks       | 2        |
| Investment restrictions                         | 10       |
| Management of the Fund                          | 11       |
| Portfolio transactions and brokerage allocation | 21       |
| Description of shares                           | 22       |
| Repurchase of Common Shares                     | 23       |
| Tax matters                                     | 24       |
| Proxy voting policy and proxy voting record     | 28       |
| Financial Statements                            | 28       |
| Legal counsel                                   | 28       |
| Additional information                          | 28       |
| Appendix A Description of securities ratings    | App. A-1 |
| Appendix B Proxy voting guidelines              | App. B-1 |

**Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund**

[       ] Common Shares

**Issuable Upon Exercise of Transferable Rights to**

**Subscribe for Common Shares**

**PROSPECTUS**

---

**The information in this statement of additional information is not complete and may be changed. The Fund may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

Subject to Completion Dated August 1, 2014

Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund

### **Statement of Additional Information**

Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund (the "Fund") is a non-diversified, closed-end management investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the "1940 Act"). The Fund's primary investment objective is to seek a high level of current income, with a secondary objective of capital appreciation.

### **Table of Contents**

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Investment objectives, policies and risks       | 2  |
| Investment restrictions                         | 10 |
| Management of the Fund                          | 11 |
| Portfolio transactions and brokerage allocation | 21 |
| Description of shares                           | 22 |
| Repurchase of Common Shares                     | 23 |
| Tax matters                                     | 24 |
| Proxy voting policy and proxy voting record     | 28 |
| Financial Statements                            | 28 |
| Legal counsel                                   | 28 |

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

|                                              |          |
|----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Additional information                       | 28       |
| Appendix A Description of securities ratings | App. A-1 |
| Appendix B Proxy voting guidelines           | App. B-1 |

**THIS STATEMENT OF ADDITIONAL INFORMATION IS DATED [      ].**

This Statement of Additional Information (the "SAI") is not a prospectus and is authorized for distribution to prospective investors only if preceded or accompanied by the prospectus for the Fund dated [      ], as supplemented from time to time, which is incorporated herein by reference. This SAI should be read in conjunction with such prospectus, a copy of which may be obtained without charge by contacting your financial intermediary or by calling the Fund at 1-877-525-7330. You may also obtain a copy of the prospectus on the Securities and Exchange Commission's (the "SEC") web site (<http://www.sec.gov>).

Capitalized terms used but not defined in this SAI have the meanings ascribed to them in the prospectus.

---

### **Investment objectives, policies and risks**

The following disclosure supplements the disclosure set forth under the caption "Investment Objectives and Principal Investment Strategy" in the prospectus and does not, by itself, present a complete or accurate explanation of the matters disclosed. Readers must refer also to this caption in the prospectus for a complete presentation of the matters disclosed below.

#### **Senior Loans**

##### ***The Senior Loan Process***

Senior Loans are generally negotiated between a borrower and several lenders represented by one or more lenders acting as agent of all the lenders. The agent is responsible for negotiating the loan agreement that establishes the terms and conditions of the Senior Loan and the rights of the borrower and the lenders. In addition, an institution, typically but not always the agent, holds any collateral on behalf of the lenders. The agent is paid a fee by the borrower for its services.

The agent generally is required to administer and manage the Senior Loan on behalf of other lenders. When evaluating Senior Loans, the Adviser may consider, and may rely in part on, analysis performed by the agent and other lenders. This analysis may include an evaluation of the value and sufficiency of collateral securing the Senior Loans. If the agent is also acting as collateral agent, it will be required to monitor the collateral. The agent may rely on independent appraisals of specific collateral. The agent need not, however, obtain an independent appraisal of assets pledged as collateral in all cases. The agent generally is also responsible for determining that the lenders have obtained a perfected security interest in the collateral securing a Senior Loan.

The Fund normally relies on the agent to collect principal of and interest on a Senior Loan. Furthermore, the Fund also relies in part on the agent to monitor compliance by the borrower with the restrictive covenants in the loan agreement and to notify the lenders, to the extent the agent becomes aware or receives notice thereof, of any adverse change in the borrower's financial condition. The Fund will not purchase interests in Senior Loans unless the agent, lender and any other person positioned between the Fund and the borrower has entered into an agreement that provides for the holding of assets in safekeeping for, or the prompt disbursement of assets to, the Fund. Insolvency of the agent or other persons positioned between the Fund and the borrower could result in losses for the Fund.

The Fund may be required to pay and may receive various fees in connection with purchasing, selling and holding of interests in Senior Loans. The fees normally paid by borrowers include three primary types: structuring fees, commitment fees and prepayment penalties. Structuring fees are paid to lenders when a Senior Loan is originated. Commitment fees are paid to lenders on an ongoing basis based on the unused portion of a Senior Loan commitment. Prepayment penalties are fees paid to lenders when a borrower prepays a Senior Loan under certain circumstances set forth in the loan process. If the Fund acts as a lender originating a Senior Loan (an "original lender"), it will receive these fees directly from the borrower. If the Fund subsequently becomes a lender through an assignment or novation (an "Assignment"), it will receive any commitment fees and prepayment penalties directly from the borrower. Whether the Fund receives a facility fee in the case of an Assignment, or any fees in the case of an investment in a Senior Loan through a participation (a "Participation"), depends on negotiations between the Fund and the lender selling such interests. When the Fund buys a loan through an Assignment, it may be required to pay a fee to the lender selling the loan, or to forgo a portion of interest and fees payable to the Fund. Occasionally, the assignor pays a fee to the assignee. A person selling a Participation to the Fund may deduct a portion of the interest and any fees payable to the Fund as an administrative fee. The Fund may be required to pass along to a person that buys a Senior Loan from the Fund a portion of any fees that the Fund is entitled to receive.

The Fund may have obligations under a loan agreement, including the obligation to make additional loans in certain circumstances. The Fund intends to reserve against such contingent obligations by segregating cash and/or liquid securities.

***Types of Senior Loan Investments***

The Fund may act as an original lender originating a Senior Loan, may purchase Senior Loans through Assignments and may invest in Senior Loans through Participations.

*Original Lender.* When the Fund acts as an original lender, it may participate in structuring the Senior Loan. When the Fund is an original lender, it will have a direct contractual relationship with the borrower, may enforce compliance of the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement and may have rights with respect to any funds acquired by other lenders through set-off. Lenders typically also have full voting and consent rights under loan agreements. Certain actions of the borrower typically requires the vote or consent of the holders of some specified percentage of the outstanding principal amount of the Senior Loan. Certain decisions, such as reducing the amount of interest on or principal of a Senior Loan, releasing collateral, changing the maturity of a Senior Loan or a change in control of the borrower, frequently require the unanimous vote or consent of all lenders affected. The Fund intends never to act as the agent or principal negotiator or administrator of a Senior Loan, except to the extent it might be considered to be the principal negotiator of a loan negotiated by the Adviser for the Fund and/or one or more other registered investment companies managed by the Adviser.

The Fund will not act as an original lender for a loan if, after making such loan, loans originated by the Fund would exceed 20% of the Fund's

**Managed Assets.** The Fund will generally only act as an original lender for a loan if, among other things, in the Adviser's judgment, the borrower can make timely payments on its loans and satisfy other credit standards established by the Adviser. The Adviser relies primarily on its own evaluation of the credit quality of such a borrower. As a result, the Fund is particularly dependent on the analytical abilities of the Adviser. The Fund will not originate a loan (i) to a borrower that is a portfolio company controlled by a fund managed by the Avenue Capital Group or (ii) where a member of the Avenue Capital Group or a fund managed by the Avenue Capital Group is the agent, principal negotiator or administrator of the loan, except to the extent that the Adviser or another registered investment company managed by the Adviser might be considered to be the principal negotiator of a loan it negotiates for the Fund and/or one or more other registered investment companies managed by the Adviser.

**Assignment.** The purchaser of a loan through an Assignment typically succeeds to all the rights and obligations under the loan agreement of the assigning lender and becomes a lender under the loan agreement. Assignments may, however, be arranged through private negotiations, and the rights and obligations acquired by the purchaser of an Assignment may differ from, and be more limited than, those held by the assigning lender.

**Participations.** When the Fund purchases an interest in a loan through a Participation, the Fund will usually have a contractual relationship only with the lender selling the Participation and not with the borrower. The Fund may have the right to receive payments of principal, interest and any fees to which it is entitled only from the lender selling the Participation and only upon receipt by the lender of such payments from the borrower. As a result, the Fund may assume the credit risk of both the borrower and the lender selling the Participation. In the event of insolvency of the lender selling a Participation, the Fund may be treated as a general creditor of the lender.

The Fund generally will not have the right to enforce compliance by the borrower with the loan agreement, nor rights to any funds acquired by other lenders through set-off against the borrower. In addition, when the Fund holds a Participation in a Senior Loan, it may not have the right to vote on whether to waive enforcement of any restrictive covenant breached by a borrower. Lenders voting in connection with a potential waiver of a restrictive covenant may have interests different from those of the Fund and may not consider the interests of the Fund. The Fund may not benefit directly from the collateral supporting a Senior Loan in which it has purchased the Participation, although lenders that sell Participations generally are required to distribute liquidation proceeds received by them pro rata among the holders of such Participations.

### **Lower Grade Loans and Debt**

The Fund's investments may include credit obligations with the lowest grade assigned by a NRSRO and unrated credit obligations of comparable quality. Credit obligations assigned the lowest grade ratings include those of companies that are in default or are in bankruptcy or reorganization. Credit obligations of such companies are regarded by the NRSROs as having extremely poor prospects of ever attaining any real investment standing and are usually available at deep discounts from the face values of the instruments. A security purchased at a deep discount may currently pay a very high effective yield. In addition, if the financial condition of the company improves, the underlying value of the obligation may increase, resulting in capital appreciation. If the company defaults on its credit obligations or remains in default, or if the plan of reorganization does not provide sufficient payments for debtholders, the deep discount credit obligations may stop generating income and lose value or become worthless.

The Adviser seeks to balance the benefits of deep discount credit obligations with the risks associated with investments in such obligations. While a diversified portfolio may reduce the overall impact of a deep discount obligation that is in default or loses its value, the risk cannot be eliminated.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Few lower-grade credit obligations are listed for trading on any national securities exchange, and issuers of lower-grade credit obligations may choose not to have a rating assigned to their credit obligations by any NRSRO. As a result, the Fund's portfolio may consist of a greater portion of unlisted or unrated credit obligations as compared with a fund that invests primarily in higher-grade credit obligations. Unrated credit obligations are usually not as attractive to as many buyers as are rated credit obligations, a factor which may make unrated credit obligations less marketable. These factors may have the effect of limiting the availability of the credit obligations for purchase by the Fund and may also limit the ability of the Fund to sell such credit obligations at their fair value either to raise cash for the repurchase of Common Shares, meet redemption requests or in response to changes in the economy or the financial markets. Further, to the extent the Fund owns or may acquire illiquid or restricted lower-grade credit obligations, these credit obligations may involve special registration responsibilities, liabilities and costs, and liquidity and valuation difficulties.

The markets for lower-grade loans and debt credit obligations may be less liquid than the markets for higher-grade credit obligations. Liquidity relates to the ability to sell an obligation in a timely manner at a price which reflects the value of that obligation. To the extent that there is no established retail market for some of the lower-grade securities in which the Fund may invest, trading in such securities may be relatively inactive. Prices of lower-grade credit obligations may decline rapidly in the event a significant number of holders decide to sell. Changes in expectations regarding an individual issuer of lower-grade credit obligations generally could reduce market liquidity for such credit obligations and make their sale by the Fund more difficult, at least in the absence of price concessions. The effects of adverse publicity and investor perceptions may be more pronounced for securities for which no established retail market exists as compared with the effects on securities for which such a market does exist. An economic downturn or an increase in interest rates, which currently are near historically low levels, could severely disrupt the market for such credit obligations and adversely affect the value of outstanding credit obligations or the ability of the issuers to repay principal and interest. Further, the Fund may have more difficulty selling such credit obligations in a timely manner and at their stated value than would be the case for credit obligations for which an established retail market does exist.

During periods of reduced market liquidity or in the absence of readily available market quotations for lower-grade or other credit obligations held in the Fund's portfolio, the ability of the Fund to value the Fund's investments becomes more difficult and the judgment of the Adviser may play a greater role in the valuation of the Fund's investments due to the reduced availability of reliable objective data.

The Fund will rely on the Adviser's judgment, analysis and experience in evaluating the creditworthiness of an issuer. The amount of available information about the financial condition of certain lower-grade issuers may be less extensive than other issuers. In their analysis, the Adviser may consider the credit ratings of NRSROs in evaluating credit obligations although the Adviser do not rely primarily on these ratings. Credit ratings of NRSROs evaluate only the safety of principal and interest payments, not the market risk. In addition, ratings are general and not absolute standards of quality, and credit ratings are subject to the risk that the creditworthiness of an issuer may change and the NRSROs may fail to change such ratings in a timely fashion. A rating downgrade does not require the Fund to dispose of a security. The Adviser continuously monitors the issuers of credit obligations held in their respective managed portions of the Fund. Additionally, since most non-U.S. income credit obligations are not rated, the Fund will invest in such credit obligations based on the analysis of the Adviser without any guidance from published ratings. Because of the number of investment considerations involved in investing in lower-grade credit obligations and foreign income credit obligations, achievement of the Fund's investment objectives may be more dependent upon the credit analysis of the Adviser than is the case with investing in higher-grade credit obligations.

New or proposed laws may have an impact on the market for lower-grade credit obligations. The Fund is unable at this time to predict what effect, if any, legislation may have on the market for lower-grade credit obligations.

### **Derivative Instruments**

The Fund may, but is not required to, use various transactions in derivative instruments to earn income, to facilitate portfolio management and to mitigate risks. Techniques and instruments may change over time as new instruments and strategies are developed or as regulatory changes occur. Although the Adviser seeks to use such transactions to further the Fund's investment objectives, no assurance can be given that the use of these transactions will achieve this result. The Fund's activities involving derivative instruments may be limited due to the Fund's intent to qualify under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), as a regulated investment company. Regulatory developments affecting the exchange-traded and over-the-counter ("OTC") derivatives markets may impair the Fund's ability to manage or hedge its investment portfolio through the use of derivatives. The Dodd-Frank Act and the rules promulgated thereunder may limit the ability of the Fund to enter into one or more exchange-traded or OTC derivatives transactions.

### **Call and Put Options**

The Fund may purchase and sell call or put options on securities, including U.S. Treasury and agency securities, foreign sovereign debt, mortgage-backed securities, corporate debt securities, Eurodollar instruments and foreign debt securities that are traded on U.S. and foreign securities exchanges and in the OTC markets and may also purchase related futures contracts on such securities, indices and currencies. All calls sold by the Fund must be "covered" (i.e., the Fund must own the securities or futures contract subject to the call) or must meet the asset segregation requirements described below as long as the call is outstanding. Even though the Fund will receive the option premium as compensation, a call sold by the Fund exposes the Fund during the term of the option to possible loss of opportunity to realize appreciation in the market price of the underlying security or instrument above the exercise price of the call and may require the Fund to hold a security or instrument which it might otherwise have sold. If a written call option is not covered, the Fund is exposed to the risk that it may have to purchase the underlying securities in the market upon exercise of the option (in order to deliver the securities to the option holder) at a price that is higher than the exercise price and premiums received by the Fund. In selling put options, there is a risk that the Fund may be required to buy the underlying security at a disadvantageous price above the market price.

## **Selling Call and Put Options**

*Purpose.* The principal reason for selling options is to obtain, through receipt of premiums, a greater current return than would be realized on the underlying securities alone. Such current return could be expected to fluctuate because premiums earned from an option selling program and dividend or interest income yields on portfolio securities vary as economic and market conditions change. Selling options on portfolio securities is likely to result in a higher portfolio turnover rate.

*Selling Options.* The purchaser of a call option pays a premium to the seller (*i.e.*, the writer) for the right to buy the underlying security from the seller at a specified price during a certain period. The Fund would write call options only on a covered basis or for cross-hedging purposes. A call option is covered if, at all times during the option period, the Fund owns or has the right to acquire securities of the type that it would be obligated to deliver if any outstanding option were exercised. An option is for cross-hedging purposes if it is not covered by the security subject to the option, but is designed to provide a hedge against another security which the Fund owns or has the right to acquire. In such circumstances, the Fund collateralizes the option by segregating cash and/or liquid securities in an amount at least equal to the market value of the underlying security, marked to market daily, while the option is outstanding.

The purchaser of a put option pays a premium to the seller (*i.e.*, the writer) for the right to sell the underlying security to the writer at a specified price during a certain period. The Fund would sell put options only on a secured basis, which means that, at all times during the option period, the Fund would segregate cash and/or liquid securities in an amount at least equal to the exercise price of the option, or would hold a put on the same underlying security at an equal or greater exercise price.

*Closing Purchase Transactions and Offsetting Transactions.* To terminate its position as a writer of a call or put option, the Fund could enter into a closing purchase transaction, which is the purchase of a call (put) on the same underlying security and having the same exercise price and expiration date as the call (put) previously sold by the Fund. The Fund would realize a gain (loss) if the premium plus commission paid in the closing purchase transaction is less (greater) than the premium it received on the sale of the option. The Fund would also realize a gain if an option it has written lapses unexercised.

The Fund could sell options that are listed on an exchange as well as options which are privately negotiated in OTC transactions. The Fund could close out its position as a seller of an option only if a liquid secondary market exists for options of that series, but there is no assurance that such a market will exist, particularly in the case of OTC options, since they can be closed out only with the other party to the transaction. Alternatively, the Fund could purchase an offsetting option, which would not close out its position as a seller, but would provide an asset of equal value to its obligation under the option sold. If the Fund is not able to enter into a closing purchase transaction or to purchase an offsetting option with respect to an option it has sold, it will be required to maintain the securities subject to the call or the collateral securing the option until a closing purchase transaction can be entered into (or the option is exercised or expires) even though it might not be advantageous to do so.

*Risks of Writing Options.* By selling a call option, the Fund loses the potential for gain on the underlying security above the exercise price while the option is outstanding; by selling a put option the Fund might become obligated to purchase the underlying security at an exercise price that exceeds the then current market price. If a written call option is not covered, the Fund is exposed to the risk that it may have to purchase the underlying securities in the market upon exercise of the option (in order to deliver the securities to the option holder) at a price that is higher than the exercise price and premiums received by the Fund.

### **Purchasing Call and Put Options**

The Fund could purchase call options to protect against anticipated increases in the prices of securities it wishes to acquire. Alternatively, call options could be purchased for capital appreciation. Since the premium paid for a call option is typically a small fraction of the price of the underlying security, a given amount of funds will purchase call options covering a much larger quantity of such security than could be purchased directly. By purchasing call options, the Fund could benefit from any significant increase in the price of the underlying security to a greater extent than had it invested the same amount in the security directly. However, the Fund would bear a risk of losing the entire premium if the price of the underlying security did not rise sufficiently, or if it did not do so before the option expired.

Put options may be purchased to protect against anticipated declines in the market value of either specific portfolio securities or of the Fund's assets generally. Alternatively, put options may be purchased for capital appreciation in anticipation of a price decline in the underlying security and a corresponding increase in the value of the put option. The purchase of put options for capital appreciation involves the same significant risk of loss as described above for call options. In any case, the purchase of options for capital appreciation would increase the Fund's volatility by increasing the impact of changes in the market price of the underlying securities on the Fund's NAV of the Common Shares.

### **OTC Options**

The Fund is authorized to purchase and sell OTC options. OTC options are purchased from or sold to securities dealers, financial institutions or other parties (Counterparties) through direct bilateral agreements with the Counterparty. OTC options expose the Fund to counterparty risk.

## Futures Contracts

The Fund may engage in transactions involving futures contracts and options on futures contracts in accordance with the rules and interpretations of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the "CFTC") under which the Fund would be exempt from registration as a commodity pool. An index futures contract is an agreement pursuant to which two parties agree to take and make delivery of an amount of cash equal to a specified dollar amount multiplied by the difference between the index value at a specified time and the price at which the futures contract originally was struck. No physical delivery of the underlying securities in the index is made. An interest rate futures contract is an agreement pursuant to which a party agrees to take or make delivery of a specified debt security (such as U.S. Treasury bonds or notes) or to take or make delivery of cash based upon the change in value of a basket or index of securities at a specified future time and at a specified price. Interest rate futures contracts also include cash settlement contracts based upon a specified interest rate such as the London interbank offered rate for dollar deposits or LIBOR.

*Initial and Variation Margin.* In contrast to the purchase or sale of a security, no price is paid or received upon the purchase or sale of a futures contract. Initially, the Fund is required to deposit an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to a percentage (which will normally range between 1% and 10%) of the contract amount with either a futures commission merchant pursuant to rules and regulations promulgated under the 1940 Act or with its custodian in an account in the broker's name. This amount is known as initial margin. The nature of initial margin in futures contract transactions is different from that of margin in securities transactions in that futures contract margin does not involve the borrowing of funds by the customer to finance the transaction. Rather, the initial margin is in the nature of a performance bond or good faith deposit on the contract, which is returned to the Fund upon termination of the futures contract and satisfaction of its contractual obligations. Subsequent payments to and from the initial margin account, called variation margin, are made on a daily basis as the price of the underlying securities or index fluctuates, making the long and short positions in the futures contract more or less valuable, a process known as marking to market. At any

time prior to expiration of the futures contract, the Fund may elect to terminate the position by taking an opposite position. A final determination of variation margin is then made, additional cash is required to be paid by or released to the Fund, and the Fund realizes a loss or a gain.

*Futures Contract Strategies.* When the Fund anticipates a significant market or market sector advance, the purchase of a futures contract affords a hedge against not participating in the advance at a time when the Fund is otherwise fully invested ( anticipatory hedge ). Such purchase of a futures contract would serve as a temporary substitute for the purchase of individual securities, which may be purchased in an orderly fashion once the market has stabilized. As individual securities are purchased, an equivalent amount of futures contracts could be terminated by offsetting sales. The Fund may sell futures contracts in anticipation of or in a general market or market sector decline that may adversely affect the market value of the Fund's securities ( defensive hedge ). To the extent that the Fund's portfolio of securities changes in value in correlation with the underlying security or index, the sale of futures contracts would substantially reduce the risk to the Fund of a market decline and, by so doing provides an alternative to the liquidation of securities positions in the Fund.

*Risks Associated with Futures Contract Transactions.* There are several risks connected with the use of futures contracts. These include the risk of imperfect correlation between movements in the price of the futures contracts and of the underlying securities or index; the risk of market distortion; the risk of illiquidity; and the risk of error in anticipating price movement. There may be an imperfect correlation (or no correlation) between movements in the price of the futures contracts and of the securities being hedged. The risk of imperfect correlation increases as the composition of the securities being hedged diverges from the securities or other reference value upon which the futures contract is based. If the price of the futures contract moves less than the price of the securities being hedged, the hedge will not be fully effective. To compensate for the imperfect correlation, the Fund could buy or sell futures contracts in a greater dollar amount than the dollar amount of securities being hedged if the historical volatility of the securities being hedged is greater than the historical volatility of the securities or other reference value underlying the futures contract. Conversely, the Fund could buy or sell futures contracts in a lesser dollar amount than the dollar amount of securities being hedged if the historical volatility of the securities being hedged is less than the historical volatility of the securities or other reference value underlying the futures contracts. It is also possible that the value of futures contracts held by the Fund could decline at the same time as portfolio securities being hedged; if this occurred, the Fund would lose money on the futures contract in addition to suffering a decline in value in the portfolio securities being hedged.

There is also the risk that the price of futures contracts may not correlate perfectly with movements in the securities or index underlying the futures contract due to certain market distortions. First, all participants in the futures contract market are subject to margin and maintenance requirements. Rather than meet additional margin requirements, investors may close out futures contracts through offsetting transactions, which could distort the normal relationship between the futures contract market and the securities or index underlying the futures contract. Second, from the point of view of speculators, the margin requirements in the futures contract market may be less onerous than margin requirements in the securities markets. Therefore, increased participation by speculators in the futures contract markets may cause temporary price distortions. Due to the possibility of price distortion in the futures contract markets and because of the imperfect correlation between movements in futures contracts and movements in the securities underlying them, a correct forecast of general market trends by the Adviser may still not result in a successful hedging transaction.

There is also the risk that futures contract markets may not be sufficiently liquid. Futures contracts may be closed out only on an exchange or board of trade that provides a market for such futures contracts. Although the Fund intends to purchase or sell futures contracts only on exchanges and boards of trade where there appears to be an active secondary market, there can be no assurance that an active secondary market will exist for any particular contract or at any particular time. In the event of such illiquidity, it might not be possible to close out a futures contract position and, in the event of adverse price movement, the Fund would continue to be required to make daily payments of variation margin. Since the securities being hedged would generally not be sold until the related futures contract is sold, an increase, if any, in the price of the securities may to some extent offset losses on the related futures contract. In such event, the Fund would lose the benefit of the appreciation in value of the securities.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Successful use of futures contracts is also subject to the Adviser's ability to correctly predict the direction of movements in the market. For example, if the Fund hedges against a decline in the market, and market prices instead advance, the Fund will lose part or all of the benefit of the increase in value of its securities holdings because it will have offsetting losses in futures contracts. In such cases, if the Fund has insufficient cash, it may have to sell portfolio securities at a time when it is disadvantageous to do so to meet the daily variation margin.

Although the Fund intends to enter into futures contracts only if there is an active market for such contracts, there is no assurance that an active market will exist for the contracts at any particular time. Most U.S. futures contract exchanges and boards of trade limit the amount of fluctuation permitted in futures contract prices during a single trading day. Once the daily limit has been reached in a particular contract, no trades may be made that day at a price beyond that limit. It is possible that futures contract prices could move to the daily limit for several consecutive trading days with little or no trading, thereby preventing prompt liquidation of futures contract positions and subjecting some futures contract traders to substantial losses. In such event, and in the event of adverse price movements, the Fund would be required to make daily cash payments of variation margin. In such circumstances, an increase in the value of the portion of the portfolio being hedged, if any, may partially or completely offset losses on the futures contract. However, there is no guarantee that the price of the securities being hedged will, in fact, correlate with the price movements in a futures contract and thus provide an offset to losses on the futures contract.

### **Options on Futures Contracts**

The Fund could also purchase and write options on futures contracts. An option on a futures contract gives the purchaser the right, in return for

the premium paid, to assume a position in a futures contract (a long position if the option is a call and a short position if the option is a put) at a specified exercise price at any time during the option period. As a writer of an option on a futures contract, the Fund would be subject to initial margin and maintenance requirements similar to those applicable to futures contracts. In addition, net option premiums received by the Fund are required to be included as initial margin deposits. When an option on a futures contract is exercised, delivery of the futures contract position is accompanied by cash representing the difference between the current market price of the futures contract and the exercise price of the option. The Fund could purchase put options on futures contracts in lieu of, and for the same purposes as the sale of a futures contract; at the same time, it could write put options at a lower strike price (a put bear spread) to offset part of the cost of the strategy to the Fund. The purchase of call options on futures contracts is intended to serve the same purpose as the actual purchase of the futures contracts.

*Risks of Transactions in Options on Futures Contracts.* In addition to the risks described above which apply to all options transactions, there are several risks relating to options on futures contracts. The Adviser will not purchase options on futures contracts on any exchange unless, in the Adviser's opinion, a liquid secondary exchange market for such options exists. Compared to the use of futures contracts, the purchase of options on futures contracts involves less potential risk to the Fund because the maximum amount at risk with purchased options is the premium paid for the options (plus transaction costs). However, there may be circumstances, such as when there is no movement in the price of the underlying security or index, when the use of an option on a future contract would result in a loss to the Fund when the use of a future contract would not.

### **Options on Foreign Currencies**

The Fund may purchase and write options on foreign currencies in a manner similar to that in which forward contracts or futures contracts on foreign currencies will be utilized. For example, a decline in the dollar value of a foreign currency in which portfolio securities are denominated will reduce the dollar value of such securities, even if their value in the foreign currency remains constant. To protect against such diminutions in the value of portfolio securities, the Fund may purchase put options on the foreign currency. If the value of the currency does decline, the Fund will have the right to sell such currency for a fixed amount in dollars and will thereby offset, in whole or in part, the adverse effect on its portfolio which otherwise would have resulted. Conversely, where a rise in the dollar value of a foreign currency in which securities to be acquired are denominated is projected, thereby increasing the cost of such securities, the Fund may purchase call options thereon. The purchase of such options could offset, at least partially, the effects of the adverse movements in exchange rates. As in the case of other types of options, however, the benefit to the Fund deriving from purchases of foreign currency options will be reduced by the amount of the premium and related transaction costs. In addition, where currency exchange rates do not move in the direction or to the extent anticipated, the Fund could sustain losses on transactions in foreign currency options which would require it to forego a portion or all of the benefits of advantageous changes in such rates.

The Fund may write options on foreign currencies for the same types of purposes. For example, where the Fund anticipates a decline in the dollar value of foreign currency denominated securities due to adverse fluctuations in exchange rates it could, instead of purchasing a put option, write a call option on the relevant currency. If the expected decline occurs, the option will most likely not be exercised, and the diminution in value of portfolio securities will be offset by the amount of the premium received. Similarly, instead of purchasing a call option to protect against an anticipated increase in the dollar cost of securities to be acquired, the Fund could write a put option on the relevant currency which, if rates move in the manner projected, will expire unexercised and allow the Fund to protect against such increased cost up to the amount of the premium. As in the case of other types of options, however, the writing of a foreign currency option will constitute only a partial hedge up to the amount of the premium, and only if rates move in the expected direction. If this does not occur, the option may be exercised and the Fund would be required to purchase or sell the underlying currency at a loss which may not be offset by the amount of the premium. Through the writing of options on foreign currencies, the Fund may also be required to forego all or a portion of the benefits which might otherwise have been obtained from favorable movements in exchange rates.

The value of a foreign currency option is dependent upon the value of the underlying foreign currency relative to the U.S. dollar. As a result, the price of the option position may vary with changes in the value of either or both currencies and has no relationship to the investment merits of a foreign security. Because foreign currency transactions occurring in the interbank market (conducted directly between currency traders, usually

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

large commercial banks, and their customers) involve substantially larger amounts than those that may be involved in the use of foreign currency options, investors may be disadvantaged by having to deal in an odd lot market (generally consisting of transactions of less than \$1 million) for the underlying foreign currencies at prices that are less favorable than for round lots.

There is no systematic reporting of last sale information for foreign currencies and there is no regulatory requirement that quotations available through dealers or other market sources be firm or revised on a timely basis. Quotation information available is generally representative of very large transactions in the interbank market and thus may not reflect relatively smaller transactions (i.e., less than \$1 million) where rates may be less favorable. The interbank market in foreign currencies is a global, around-the-clock market. To the extent that the U.S. options markets are closed while the markets for the underlying currencies remain open, significant price and rate movements may take place in the underlying markets that cannot be reflected in the options markets.

The Fund may write call options on foreign currencies for cross-hedging purposes. A call option on a foreign currency is for cross-hedging purposes if it is not covered, but is designed to protect against a decline in the U.S. dollar value of a security which the Fund owns or has the right to acquire and which is denominated in the currency underlying the option due to an adverse change in the exchange rate. In such circumstances, the Fund collateralizes the option by segregating cash and/or liquid securities in an amount not less than the value of the underlying foreign currency in U.S. dollars marked to market daily.

### **Combined Transactions**

The Fund may enter into multiple transactions, including multiple options transactions, multiple futures contracts transactions, multiple currency transactions (including forward currency contracts) and multiple interest rate transactions and any combination of futures contracts, options, currency and interest rate transactions (component transactions), instead of a single derivative instrument as part of a single or combined strategy when, in the opinion of the Adviser, it is in the best interests of the Fund to do so. A combined transaction will usually contain elements of risk that are present in each of its component transactions. Although combined transactions are normally entered into based on the Adviser's judgment that the combined strategies will reduce risk or otherwise more effectively achieve the desired portfolio management goal, it is possible that the combination will instead increase such risks or hinder achievement of the portfolio management objective.

### **Additional Risks of Other Derivative Instruments**

Each of the U.S. exchanges has established limitations governing the maximum number of call or put options on the same underlying security or futures contract (whether or not covered) which may be written by a single investor, whether acting alone or in concert with others (regardless of whether such options are written on the same or different exchanges or are held or written on one or more accounts or through one or more brokers). Option positions of all investment companies advised by the Adviser are combined for purposes of these limits. An exchange may order the liquidation of positions found to be in violation of these limits and it may impose other sanctions or restrictions. These position limits may restrict the number of listed options which the Fund may write.

In the event of the bankruptcy of a broker or futures commission merchant through which the Fund engages in transactions in options, futures contracts or options on futures contracts, the Fund could experience delays and/or losses in liquidating open positions purchased or incur a loss of all or part of its margin deposits. Transactions are entered into by the Fund only with brokers or financial institutions deemed creditworthy by the Adviser.

Unlike transactions entered into by the Fund in futures contracts, options on foreign currencies and forward contracts are not traded on contract markets regulated by the CFTC or (with the exception of certain foreign currency options) by the SEC. To the contrary, such instruments are traded through financial institutions acting as market-makers, although foreign currency options are also traded on certain national securities exchanges, subject to SEC regulation. Similarly, options on currencies may be traded OTC. In an OTC trading environment, many of the protections afforded to exchange participants will not be available. For example, there are no daily price fluctuation limits, and adverse market movements could, therefore, continue to an unlimited extent over a period of time. Although the purchaser of an option cannot lose more than the amount of the premium plus related transaction costs, this entire amount could be lost. Moreover, the option writer and a trader of forward contracts could lose amounts substantially in excess of their initial investments, due to the margin and collateral requirements associated with such positions.

Options on foreign currencies traded on national securities exchanges are within the jurisdiction of the SEC, as are other securities traded on such exchanges. As a result, many of the protections provided to traders on organized exchanges will be available with respect to such transactions. In particular, all foreign currency option positions entered into on a national securities exchange are cleared and guaranteed by the Options Clearing Corporation (OCC), thereby reducing the risk of counterparty default. Further, a liquid secondary market in options traded on a national securities exchange may be more readily available than in the OTC market, potentially permitting the Fund to liquidate open positions at a profit prior to exercise or expiration, or to limit losses in the event of adverse market movements.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The purchase and sale of exchange-traded foreign currency options, however, is subject to the risks of the availability of a liquid secondary market described above, as well as the risks regarding adverse market movements, margining of written options, the nature of the foreign currency market, possible intervention by governmental authorities and the effects of other political and economic events. In addition, exchange-traded options on foreign currencies involve certain risks not presented by the OTC market. For example, exercise and settlement of such options must be made exclusively through the OCC, which has established banking relationships in applicable foreign countries for this purpose. As a result, the OCC may, if it determines that foreign governmental restrictions or taxes would prevent the orderly settlement of foreign currency option exercises, or would result in undue burdens on the OCC or its clearing member, impose special procedures on exercise and settlement, such as technical changes in the mechanics of delivery of currency, the fixing of dollar settlement prices or prohibitions, on exercise.

In addition, futures contracts, options on futures contracts, forward contracts and options on foreign currencies may be traded on foreign exchanges. Such transactions are subject to the risk of governmental actions affecting trading in or the prices of foreign currencies or securities. The value of such positions also could be adversely affected by (i) other complex foreign political, legal, and economic factors; (ii) lesser availability than in the United States of data on which to make trading decisions; (iii) delays in the Fund's ability to act upon economic events occurring in foreign markets during nonbusiness hours in the United States; (iv) the imposition of different exercise and settlement terms and procedures and margin requirements than in the United States and (v) lesser trading volume.

### Swap Transactions

The Fund may enter into swap transactions including currency, credit default, total return and interest rate swap agreements, as well as options thereon, and may purchase or sell caps, floors and collars.

The Fund may enter into total return swaps. Total return swaps are used as substitutes for owning a particular physical security, or the

securities comprised by a given market index, or to obtain exposure in markets where no physical securities are available such as an interest rate index. Total return refers to the payment (or receipt) of the total return (*i.e.*, both price returns and dividends or distributions) on the security, index or other instrument underlying the swap, which is then exchanged for the receipt (or payment) of a floating interest rate. Total return swaps provide the Fund with the additional flexibility of gaining exposure to a particular security or index by using the most cost-effective vehicle available. Total return swaps provide the Fund with the opportunity to actively manage the cash maintained by the Fund as a result of not having to purchase the actual securities or other instruments underlying the swap. Similar to interest rate swaps, the cash backing total return swaps is actively managed to seek to earn a return in excess of the floating rate paid on the swap.

The Fund may enter into OTC or cleared credit default swap contracts or credit-linked notes for hedging purposes or to gain exposure to a credit security in which the Fund may otherwise invest. An OTC credit default swap is an agreement between two parties to exchange the credit risk of an issuer (reference entity). A buyer of a credit default swap is said to buy protection by paying periodic fees in return for a contingent payment from the seller if the reference entity has a credit event such as bankruptcy, a failure to pay outstanding obligations or deteriorating credit while the swap is outstanding. A seller of a credit default swap is said to sell protection and thus collects the periodic fees and profits if the credit of the reference entity remains stable or improves while the swap is outstanding but the seller in a credit default swap contract would be required to pay an agreed-upon amount to the buyer in the event of an adverse credit event of the reference entity. A credit-linked note is a synthetic security, typically issued by a special purpose vehicle or a bank, that trades like a bond issued by the reference entity but with the economics of the credit default swap. For this security, the buyer of protection sells the note. The buyer of protection (note seller) will typically make periodic payments to the note holder while the reference entity is not in default. If the reference entity defaults, the note seller may profit through the termination of its obligations to make periodic payments and to return the note holder's principal. Unlike the swap, the buyer of protection in a credit-linked note will receive money at the time of transaction from the sale of the note, and will return this money at the contract's maturity if no credit event occurs. Conversely, the seller of protection purchases the notes. As with a credit default swap, the note purchaser (protection seller) receives periodic payments. Unlike the swap transaction, the protection seller must pay for the note at the time of the transaction and will collect this money at the contract's maturity if no credit event occurs.

Interest rate swaps involve the exchange by the Fund with another party of their respective commitments to pay or receive interest, e.g., an exchange of floating rate payments for fixed rate payments with respect to a notional amount of principal. The purchase of an interest rate cap entitles the purchaser, to the extent that a specified index exceeds a predetermined interest rate, to receive payments of interest on a contractually-based principal amount from the party selling the interest rate cap. The purchase of an interest rate floor entitles the purchaser, to the extent that a specified index falls below a predetermined interest rate, to receive payments of interest on a contractually-based principal amount from the party selling the interest rate floor. An interest rate collar combines the elements of purchasing a cap and selling a floor. The collar protects the purchaser against an interest rate rise above the maximum amount but requires the purchaser to forego the benefit of an interest rate decline below the minimum amount.

The Fund has claimed an exclusion from the definition of the term "commodity pool operator" pursuant to notices of eligibility filed with the National Futures Association. The Fund may engage in transactions involving swap agreements and other derivatives in accordance with the rules and interpretations of the CFTC under which the Fund would be exempt from registration as a "commodity pool" as defined under CFTC Rule 4.5 under the Commodity Exchange Act. In order for the Fund to claim exclusions from CFTC Rule 4.5, the Fund must satisfy one of two CFTC trading limits and not be marketed as a fund for investing in commodities interests.

Under Rule 4.5, the Fund, for other than bona fide hedging transactions, must either:

- limit certain derivatives exposure so that the aggregate initial margin and premiums required to establish the Fund's derivatives positions will not exceed 5% of the Fund's liquidation value (after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses for those derivatives and excluding any in-the-money options that were in-the-money at the time of purchase); or

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

- ensure that the aggregate net notional value of the Fund's certain derivatives positions do not exceed the Fund's liquidation value (after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on the Fund's derivatives positions).

CFTC Rule 4.5 imposes limitations on the marketing activities of a fund seeking to rely on the exclusion. A fund claiming exclusion under Rule 4.5 may not market participations to the public in a commodity pool or any vehicle for trading in commodity futures, commodity options or swaps.

The Fund will enter into swap, cap or floor transactions only with counterparties approved by the Adviser in accordance with guidelines established by the Board. The Adviser will monitor the creditworthiness of counterparties to the Fund's swap, cap, floor and collar transactions on an ongoing basis. If there is a default by the counterparty to such a transaction, the Fund will have contractual remedies pursuant to the agreements related to the transaction. The Fund may enter into swaps, caps, floors and collars on either an asset-based or liability-based basis, and will usually enter into swaps on a net basis, *i.e.*, the two payment streams are netted out, with the Fund receiving or paying, as the case may be, only the net amount of the two payments. The net amount of the excess, if any, of the Fund's obligations over its entitlements with respect to each swap will be accrued on a daily basis and the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities having an aggregate net asset value at least equal to the accrued excess. If the Fund enters into a swap transaction on other than a net basis, the Fund would segregate the full amount accrued on a daily basis of the Fund's obligations with respect to the swap. To the extent the Fund sells (*i.e.*, writes) caps, floors and collars, it will segregate cash and/or liquid securities having an aggregate net asset value at least equal to the full amount, accrued on a daily basis, of the Fund's net obligations with respect to the caps, floors or collars.

A swap option, or swaption, is a contract that gives a counterparty the right (but not the obligation) to enter into a new swap agreement or to shorten, extend, cancel or otherwise modify an existing swap agreement, at some designated future time on specified terms. The Fund may write (sell) and purchase put and call swaptions.

The use of swaps is a highly specialized activity which involves investment techniques and risks different from those associated with ordinary portfolio securities transactions. If the Adviser is incorrect in its forecasts of the market values, interest rates and other applicable factors, the investment performance of the Fund would diminish compared with what it would have been if these investment techniques were not used. The use of swaps, caps, collars and floors may also have the effect of shifting the recognition of income between current and future periods.

### **Structured Notes**

Structured notes are derivative debt securities, the interest rate and/or principal of which is determined by an unrelated indicator. Indexed securities include structured notes as well as securities other than debt securities, the interest rate or principal of which is determined by an unrelated indicator. Indexed securities may include a multiplier that multiplies the indexed element by a specified factor and, therefore, the value of such securities may be very volatile. The terms of structured notes and indexed securities may provide that in certain circumstances no principal is due at maturity and therefore, may result in a loss of invested capital. Structured notes and indexed securities may be positively or negatively indexed, so that appreciation of the reference may produce an increase or a decrease in the interest rate or the value of the structured or indexed security at maturity may be calculated as a specified multiple of the change in the value of the reference; therefore, the value of such security may be very volatile. Structured notes and indexed securities may entail a greater degree of market risk than other types of debt securities because the investor bears the risk of the reference indicator. Structured notes or indexed securities may also be more volatile, less liquid, and more difficult to accurately price than less complex securities or more traditional debt securities.

### **Investment restrictions**

The following are fundamental investment restrictions of the Fund and may not be changed without the approval of the holders of a majority of the Fund's outstanding voting securities (which for this purpose and under the 1940 Act means the lesser of (i) 67% or more of the Fund's voting securities present at a meeting at which more than 50% of the Fund's outstanding voting securities are present or represented by proxy or (ii) more than 50% of the Fund's outstanding voting securities). Except as otherwise noted, all percentage limitations set forth below apply immediately after a purchase and any subsequent change in any applicable percentage resulting from market fluctuations does not require any action. With respect to the limitations on the issuance of senior securities and in the case of borrowings, the percentage limitations apply at the time of issuance and on an ongoing basis. The Fund may not:

1. Issue senior securities or borrow money, except the Fund may issue senior securities and/or borrow money (including through reverse repurchase agreements) to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time, and as modified or supplemented from time to time by (i) the rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC under the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time and (ii) an exemption or other relief applicable to the Fund from the provisions of the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time. The Fund does not have an investment policy limiting the amount of leverage that may be obtained through the use of covered reverse repurchase agreements.
2. Act as an underwriter of securities issued by others, except to the extent that, in connection with the disposition of loans or portfolio securities, it may be deemed to be an underwriter under applicable securities laws.

3. Invest in any security if as a result, 25% or more of the value of the Fund's total assets, taken at market value at the time of each investment, are in the securities of issuers in any particular industry except (a) securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government and its agencies and instrumentalities or securities of state and municipal governments or their political subdivisions (however, not including private purpose industrial development bonds issued on behalf of non-government issuers), or (b) as otherwise provided by the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time, and as modified or supplemented from time to time by (i) the rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC under the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time, and (ii) any exemption or other relief applicable to the Fund from the provisions of the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time. For purposes of this restriction, (i) an investment in a loan participation will be considered to be an investment in the securities or obligations of the issuer of the loan to which the participation relates and (ii) an investment in a repurchase agreement, reverse repurchase agreement, CLO, CBO, CDO or a swap or other derivative will be considered to be an investment in the industry (if any) of the underlying or reference security, instrument or asset. The Fund defines an industry by reference to Standard & Poor's GICS codes for industry classifications.

4. Purchase or sell real estate, except that the Fund may: (a) acquire or lease office space for its own use, (b) invest in securities and/or other instruments of issuers that invest in real estate or interests therein or that are engaged in or operate in the real estate industry, (c) invest in securities and/or other instruments that are secured by real estate or interests therein, (d) purchase and sell mortgage-related securities and/or other instruments, and (e) hold and sell real estate acquired by the Fund as a result of the ownership of securities and/or other instruments.

5. Purchase or sell physical commodities unless acquired as a result of ownership of securities or other instruments; provided that this restriction shall not prohibit the Fund from purchasing or selling options, futures contracts and related options thereon, forward contracts, swaps, caps, floors, collars and any other financial or derivative instruments or from investing in securities or other instruments backed by physical commodities.

6. Make loans of money or property to any person, except (a) to the extent that securities, instruments, credit obligations or interests (including Senior Loans) in which the Fund may invest, or which the Fund may originate, are considered to be loans, (b) through the loan of portfolio securities or (c) by engaging in repurchase agreements.

Thus, with respect to the foregoing restrictions 1 and 3, the Fund currently may not:

1. Issue senior securities or borrow money, except as permitted by the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder. Currently, the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder generally limit the extent to which the Fund may utilize uncovered reverse repurchase agreements and borrowings, together with any other senior securities representing indebtedness, to 33 1/3% of the Fund's total assets at the time utilized. In addition, the 1940 Act limits the extent to which the Fund may issue preferred shares to 50% of the Fund's total assets (less the Fund's obligations under uncovered reverse repurchase agreements and other senior securities representing indebtedness). Covered reverse repurchase agreements will not be counted against the foregoing limits under the 1940 Act. A reverse repurchase agreement will be considered covered if the Fund segregates an amount of cash and/or liquid securities equal to the Fund's obligations under such reverse repurchase agreement (or segregates such other amounts as may be permitted by the 1940 Act or SEC guidance from time to time); otherwise, a reverse repurchase agreement will be considered uncovered.

2. Invest in any security if, as a result 25% or more of the value of the Fund's total assets, taken at market value at the time of each investment, are in the securities of issuers in any particular industry except securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government and its agencies and instrumentalities or securities of state and municipal governments or their political subdivisions (however, not including private purpose industrial development bonds issued on behalf of non-government issuers).

The latter part of certain of the Fund's fundamental investment restrictions (*i.e.*, the references to as may otherwise be permitted by the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time and as modified or supplemented from time to time by (i) the rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC under the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time, and (ii) any exemption or other relief applicable to the Fund from the provisions of the 1940 Act, as amended from time to time ) provide the Fund with flexibility to change its limitations in connection with changes in applicable law, rules, regulations or exemptive relief. The language used in these restrictions provides the necessary flexibility to allow the Fund's Board to respond efficiently to these kinds of developments without the delay and expense of a shareholder meeting.

### Management of the Fund

#### Trustees and Officers

The business and affairs of the Fund are managed under the direction of the Board and the Fund's officers appointed by the Board. The tables below list the trustees and officers of the Fund and their present positions and principal occupations during the past five years. The business address of the Fund, its Board members and officers and the Adviser is 399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor, New York, NY 10022, unless specified otherwise below. The term Fund Complex includes each of the registered investment companies advised by the Adviser or its affiliates as of the date of this Statement of Additional Information. Trustees serve three year terms or until their successors are duly elected and qualified. Officers are annually elected by the trustees.

Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

*Interested Trustee*(1)(2)

| Name, Age and Address                                                      | Position(s)<br>Held<br>with Fund                           | Term of<br>Office<br>and Length<br>of<br>Service | Principal Occupation(s)<br>During Past Five Years and<br>Other Relevant Experience                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Number of<br>Portfolios in<br>Fund<br>Complex<br>Overseen by<br>trustee | Other<br>Directorships<br>Held by trustee<br>During the Last<br>Five Years                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Randolph Takian ( [ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022 | President,<br>Chief<br>Executive<br>Officer and<br>Trustee | Since<br>October 2010                            | President, Chief Executive<br>Officer and Trustee of<br>Avenue Mutual Funds Trust<br>(since 2012); Senior<br>Managing Director and Head<br>of Traditional Asset<br>Management of Avenue<br>Capital Group (since 2010);<br>President and Principal<br>Executive Officer of certain<br>open-end and closed-end<br>funds advised by Morgan<br>Stanley Investment<br>Management, Inc. ( MSIM ) or<br>an affiliated person of MSIM<br>(2008-2010); President and<br>Chief Executive Officer of<br>Morgan Stanley Services<br>Company Inc. (2008-2010);<br>Managing Director and Head<br>of Americas | 2                                                                       | Board Member and<br>member of<br>Executive<br>Committee of<br>Lenox Hill<br>Neighborhood<br>House, a non-profit |

distribution, product and marketing for MSIM (2009-2010); Head of Liquidity and Bank Trust business (2008-2010) and the Latin American Franchise (July 2008-2010) at MSIM, Managing Director, Director and/or Officer of MSIM and various entities affiliated with MSIM. Formerly, Head of Retail and Intermediary business, Head of Strategy and Product Development for the Alternatives Group and Senior Loan Investment

*Independent Trustees(1)*

| <b>Name, Age and Address</b>                                              | <b>Position(s) Held with Fund</b> | <b>Term of Office and Length of Service</b> | <b>Principal Occupation(s) During Past Five Years and Other Relevant Experience</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <b>Number of Portfolios in Fund Complex Overseen by trustee</b> | <b>Other Directorships Held by Trustee During the Last Five Years</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Joel Citron ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022     | Trustee<br>(Chairman)             | Since<br>December 2010                      | Chairman of the Board of Trustees of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since 2012); Chief Investment Officer/Managing Member of TAH Management/TAH Capital Partners, a private investment management firm (since 2009), and CEO of Tenth Avenue Holdings, a related holding company (since 2008).                        | 2                                                               | Director of Boulevard Acquisition Corp., a blank check company (since 2014); Director of Hello Products LLC, a consumer package goods company (since 2013); Chairman of Tenth Avenue Commerce, an e-commerce company (since 2010);; Director of Attivio, Inc., a software company (since 2009);; Chairman of Oasmia AB, a Swedish publicly traded biotech company (since 2011); Director of Starfall Education Foundation; President of the Board of The Heschel School;; Board of Councilors Member of Shoah Foundation at the University of Southern California. |
| Darren Thompson ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022 | Trustee                           | Since<br>December 2010                      | Trustee of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since 2012); Managing Member, RailField Partners, LLC (private investment and advisory firm) (since 2012); Self Employed Consultant (since 2010); Executive of American Express Company (2010); Chief Financial Officer of Revolution Money, Inc., a payment network (now a | 2                                                               | Director of Boulevard Acquisition Corp., a blank check company (since 2014).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

# Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

|                                                                             |         |                        |                                                                                               |   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
|                                                                             |         |                        | subsidiary of American Express Company)<br>(2006-2010).Express Company)                       |   |                                   |
| Julie Dien Ledoux ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022 | Trustee | Since<br>December 2010 | Trustee of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since 2012);<br>Analyst and Portfolio Manager of Avenue | 2 | Board Member and on the Executive |

Capital Group (1998-2007)

Committee of  
Treadwell Farms  
Historic District  
Association (f/k/a  
East Sixties Property  
Owners Association),  
a non-profit  
neighborhood group.

**Principal Officers who are not Trustees**

| <b>Name, Age and Address</b>                                                | <b>Position(s) Held<br/>with Fund</b>    | <b>Term of Office<br/>and Length of<br/>Service</b> | <b>Principal Occupation(s)<br/>During Past Five Years and Other<br/>Relevant Experience</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stephen M. Atkins ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022 | Treasurer and Chief Financial<br>Officer | Since September 2012                                | Treasurer and Chief Financial Officer of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since 2012); Controller of Avenue Capital Group, an investment management firm (since December 2010); Formerly with Morgan Stanley Investment Management Inc., a financial Management and advisory company (1996-2010), most recently as an Executive Director (2003-2010). |
| Ty Oyer ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022           | Secretary                                | Since December 2010                                 | Secretary of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since 2012); Deputy Chief Compliance Officer (since January 2011) and Compliance Manager (since 2008) of Avenue Capital Group, an investment management firm; Compliance Officer of D.B. Zwirn & Co., an investment management firm (2007-2008).                                                        |
| Jeffrey J. Gary ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022   | Vice President                           | Since September 2012                                | Vice President of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since September 2012); Portfolio Manager of Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund (November 2012); Senior Portfolio Manager of Avenue Capital Group (since 2012); Portfolio Manager of Third Avenue Management LLC (2009-2010); Portfolio Manager of Blackrock Financial (2003-2008).               |
| Eric Ross ([ ])<br>399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor<br>New York, NY 10022         | Chief Compliance Officer                 | Since December 2010                                 | Chief Compliance Officer of Avenue Mutual Funds Trust (since 2012); Chief Compliance Officer of Avenue Capital Group, an investment management firm (since 2006).                                                                                                                                                                               |

(1) Independent trustees are those trustees who are not interested persons (as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act) of the Fund, and interested trustees are those trustees who are interested persons of the Fund.

(2) Mr. Takian is an interested trustee due to his employment with the Adviser.

## **Risk Oversight**

As an integral part of its responsibility for oversight of the Fund in the interests of shareholders, the Board oversees risk management of the Fund's investment program and business affairs. The Board views risk management as an important responsibility of management. Service providers to the Fund, primarily the Adviser, have responsibility for the day-to-day management of the Fund, which includes responsibility for risk management. As an integral part of its responsibility for oversight of the Fund, the Board oversees risk management of the Fund's investment program and business affairs. Oversight of the risk management process is part of the Board's general oversight of the Fund and its service providers.

The Board exercises oversight of the risk management processes through oversight by the full Board. The Fund faces a number of risks, such as investment risk, counterparty risk, valuation risk, reputational risk, risk of operational failure or lack of business continuity and legal, compliance, conflict of interests and regulatory risk. Risk management seeks to identify and address risks, *i.e.*, events or circumstances that could have material adverse effects on the business, operations, shareholder services, investment performance or reputation of the Fund. Under the overall supervision of the Board, the Adviser and other service providers to the Fund employ a variety of processes, procedures and controls to seek to identify various of those possible events or circumstances, to seek to lessen the probability of their occurrence and/or to seek to mitigate the effects of such events or circumstances if they do occur. Different processes, procedures and controls are employed with respect to different

types of risks. Various personnel, including the Fund's chief compliance officer, as well as various personnel of the Adviser and other service providers such as the Fund's independent accountant, make reports to the Board with respect to various aspects of risk management, as well as events and circumstances that have arisen and responses thereto.

The Board recognizes that not all risks that may affect the Fund can be identified, that it may not be practical or cost effective to eliminate or mitigate certain risks, that it may be necessary to bear certain risks (such as investment related risks) to achieve the Fund's goals, and that the processes, procedures and controls employed to address certain risks may be limited in their effectiveness. Moreover, reports received by the trustees as to risk management matters are typically summaries of the relevant information. Furthermore, it is in the very nature of certain risks that they can be evaluated only as probabilities, and not as certainties. As a result of the foregoing and other factors, the Board's risk management oversight is subject to substantial limitations, and no risk management program can predict the likelihood or seriousness of, or mitigate the effects of, all potential risks.

### **Experience of Trustees**

The trustees were selected to join the Board based upon the following as to each trustee: his/her character and integrity; such person's business and/or financial experience; such person's willingness to serve and willingness and ability to commit the time necessary to perform the duties of a trustee. No factor, by itself, was controlling.

**Mr. Takian** brings to the Board of Trustees over 14 years of product development, marketing and management experience in the investment management industry. Prior to joining Avenue in 2010, Mr. Takian held various roles within Morgan Stanley's Asset Management Group (MSIM), most recently as Managing Director and Head of Americas for distribution, product and marketing as well as their Corporate Development team. In connection with his positions at Morgan Stanley, Mr. Takian also gained experience as an officer and director for registered open end funds. Prior to joining Morgan Stanley in 2006, Mr. Takian led the strategy and mergers and acquisitions group for the Global Wealth and Investment Management businesses at Bank of America. Mr. Takian brings to the Trust management, marketing and product development experience with respect to both alternative and retail investment products.

**Mr. Citron** brings to the Board of Trustees over 27 years of investment and managerial experience. Mr. Citron is Chief Investment Officer and Managing Member of a private investment firm, and Chief Executive Officer of an affiliated holding company. Mr. Citron has served also in similar capacities in the past for hedge funds and private equity firms. Further, Mr. Citron has served as Chairman of private and public companies in the United States and Europe. Mr. Citron also serves on the board of non-profit organizations. Mr. Citron offers the Trust a Chairman who thoroughly understands the operations of an investment vehicle, and also provides more general managerial and board oversight experience.

**Mr. Thompson** brings to the Board of Trustees over 27 years of management and financial experience. Mr. Thompson is the Managing Member of a private investment and advisory firm, RailField Partners, LLC. Mr. Thompson's prior positions include those of Managing Director and Principal, at the investment banks of Goldman Sachs and Morgan Stanley, respectively. In addition, Mr. Thompson held senior management positions at the Federal National Mortgage Association. Importantly, Mr. Thompson was also Chief Financial Officer of Revolution Money Inc., which was later acquired by American Express. In that capacity, Mr. Thompson, among other things, was in charge of accounting and control, capital raising and finance functions. Mr. Thompson also serves on the board of non-profit organizations. Mr. Thompson brings significant financial expertise to the Trust.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

**Ms. Dien Ledoux** brings to the Board of Trustees nearly 18 years of relevant investment and financial experience. Ms. Dien Ledoux was formerly an analyst and later portfolio manager with Avenue Capital Group, where she focused on distressed investing. During her tenure there, she was responsible for assisting with the direction of the investment activities of the multi-billion dollar Avenue U.S. strategy funds. Prior to joining Avenue, Ms. Dien Ledoux was a Vice President at Banco Santander/Santander Investment and a senior member of a group responsible for managing proprietary capital invested in high yield, distressed debt and special situations. Previously, she was also an analyst with several firms. Ms. Dien Ledoux brings to the Trust a keen understanding of its investments as well as of the operations of the Adviser.

The Board believes that each trustee's experience, qualifications, attributes or skills on an individual basis and in combination with those of the other trustees lead to the conclusion that the Board possesses the requisite attributes and skills. The Board also believes that the trustees' ability to review critically, evaluate, question and discuss information provided to them; to interact effectively with the Adviser, other service providers, counsel and the independent registered public accounting firm, and to exercise effective business judgment in the performance of their duties support this conclusion.

### Compensation

Each trustee who is not an employee of Avenue Capital Group is compensated by an annual retainer and meeting fees (including additional compensation for service as chairperson of the Board or chairperson of a Board committee).

Additional information regarding compensation and benefits for trustees is set forth below for the periods described in the notes accompanying the table.

**Compensation Table\***

| Name                        | Fund Complex                                                                    |                                                                     |                                                             |                                                          |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
|                             | Compensation from<br>the Fund for the<br>Fiscal Year ending<br>October 31, 2013 | Pension or<br>Retirement Benefits<br>Accrued as Part of<br>Expenses | Annual Benefits from<br>the Fund Complex<br>upon Retirement | Total Compensation<br>from Fund Complex<br>Paid to Board |
| <b>Independent Trustees</b> |                                                                                 |                                                                     |                                                             |                                                          |
| Joel Citron                 | \$ [ ]                                                                          | N/A                                                                 | N/A                                                         | \$ [ ]                                                   |
| Julie Dien Ledoux           | \$ [ ]                                                                          | N/A                                                                 | N/A                                                         | \$ [ ]                                                   |
| Darren Thompson             | \$ [ ]                                                                          | N/A                                                                 | N/A                                                         | \$ [ ]                                                   |
| <b>Interested Trustee</b>   |                                                                                 |                                                                     |                                                             |                                                          |
| Randolph Takian             | \$ 0                                                                            | N/A                                                                 | N/A                                                         | \$ 0                                                     |

\* The Fund has no employees. The Fund's officers and Mr. Takian are compensated by the Adviser and/or its affiliates.

**Board Committees**

The Board currently has two committees, an audit committee and a nominating committee. Each of the Board's committees are composed solely of independent trustees, which is defined for purposes hereof as trustees who: (1) are not interested persons of the Fund as defined by the 1940 Act and (2) are independent of the Fund as defined by the New York Stock Exchange listing standards.

The Board's audit committee consists of Mr. Citron, Ms. Dien Ledoux and Mr. Thompson. The audit committee makes recommendations to the Board concerning the selection of the Fund's independent registered public accounting firm, reviews with such independent registered public accounting firm the scope and results of the Fund's annual audit and considers any comments which the independent registered public accounting firm may have regarding the Fund's financial statements, accounting records or internal controls. The Board has adopted a formal written charter for the audit committee which sets forth the audit committee's responsibilities.

The Board's nominating committee consists of Mr. Citron, Ms. Dien Ledoux and Mr. Thompson. The nominating committee identifies individuals qualified to serve as independent trustees on the Board and on committees of the Board and advises the Board with respect to Board composition, procedures and committees. The independent trustees of the Fund select and nominate any other nominee independent trustees for the Fund. While the nominating committee is solely responsible for the selection and nomination of the Board, the nominating committee shall review and consider nominations for the office of trustee made by management and by Fund shareholders who have sent nominations (which include the biographical information and the qualifications of the proposed nominee) to the chief executive officer of the Fund, as the trustees deem appropriate.

The Board may establish additional committees as it deems necessary or convenient.

## Shareholder Communications

Shareholders may send communications to the Board. Shareholders should send communications intended for the Board by addressing the communication directly to the Board (or individual Board members) and/or otherwise clearly indicating in the salutation that the communication is for the Board (or individual Board members) and by sending the communication to either the Fund's office or directly to such Board member(s) at the address specified for such trustee above. Other shareholder communications received by the Fund not directly addressed and sent to the Board will be reviewed and generally responded to by management, and will be forwarded to the Board only at management's discretion based on the matters contained therein.

## Share Ownership

The following table shows the dollar range of equity securities owned by the trustees in the Fund and in other investment companies overseen by the trustee within the same family of investment companies as of December 31, 2012. Investment companies are considered to be in the same family if they share the same investment adviser or principal underwriter and hold themselves out to investors as related companies for purposes of investment and investor services.

## 2013 Trustee Beneficial Ownership of Securities

As of the date of this SAI, the Fund's trustees and executive officers, as a group, owned less than 1% of the Fund's outstanding Common Shares. The information as to ownership of securities which appears below is based on statements furnished to the Fund by its trustees and executive officers.

As of December 31, 2013, the dollar range of equity securities owned beneficially by each trustee in the Fund and in all registered investment

# Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

companies overseen by the trustee within the same family of investment companies as the Fund was as follows:

## Independent Trustees

| Name of Trustee   | Dollar Range of<br>Equity Securities<br>in the Fund | Aggregate Dollar Range of Equity<br>Securities Overseen by Trustees in<br>the Family of Registered<br>Investment Companies(*) |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Joel Citron       | [None]                                              | [None]                                                                                                                        |
| Julie Dien Ledoux | [None]                                              | [None]                                                                                                                        |
| Darren Thompson   | [None]                                              | [None]                                                                                                                        |

\* The term family of investment companies means any two or more registered investment companies that (i) share the same investment adviser or principal underwriter, and (ii) hold themselves out to investors as related companies for purposes of investment and investor services.

## Interested Trustee

| Name of Trustee | Dollar Range of<br>Equity Securities<br>in the Fund | Aggregate Dollar Range of Equity<br>Securities Overseen by Trustees in<br>the Family of Investment<br>Companies(*) |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Randolph Takian | [None]                                              | [None]                                                                                                             |

\* The term family of investment companies means any two or more registered investment companies that (i) share the same investment adviser or principal underwriter, and (ii) hold themselves out to investors as related companies for purposes of investment and investor services.

For independent trustees and their family members, the following table provides information regarding each class of securities owned beneficially in an investment adviser or principal underwriter of the Fund, or a person (other than a registered investment company) directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with an investment adviser or principal underwriter of the Fund as of December 31, 2013.

| Name               | Name of owners<br>and relationships<br>to trustees | Company                                            | Title of Class                        | Value of<br>Securities | Percent of Class                                                                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Joel Citron        | None                                               | N/A                                                | N/A                                   | N/A                    | N/A                                                                                         |
| Julie Dien Ledoux* | Self                                               | MAGS Capital VI,<br>LLC; MAGS Capital<br>VIII, LLC | limited liability<br>company interest | Less than              | [Approximately<br>4.4% in MAGS<br>Capital VI, LLC;<br>Approximately 9.5%<br>in MAGS Capital |

# Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

|                 |        |                                                                                                |                              |          |                                   |
|-----------------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|
|                 |        | Avenue Special Situations Fund IV, L.P. and Avenue Special Situations Fund IV (Parallel), L.P. | limited partnership interest | \$10,000 | VIII, LLC<br>Approximately 0.20%] |
|                 |        |                                                                                                |                              | \$28,968 |                                   |
| Darren Thompson | [None] | N/A                                                                                            | N/A                          | N/A      | N/A                               |

\* Ms. Dien Ledoux, a former employee of Avenue Capital Management II, L.P., is an investor in MAGS Capital VI, LLC and MAGS Capital VIII, LLC, which are investment entities formed by affiliates of Avenue Capital Group for the acquisition of certain trade claims. Ms. Dien Ledoux became an investor in both investment entities prior to 2005. Ms. Dien Ledoux's current investments in MAGS Capital VI, LLC and MAGS Capital VIII, LLC total less than \$10,000. Ms. Dien Ledoux has no control over MAGS Capital VI, LLC or MAGS Capital VIII, LLC. Ms. Dien Ledoux also received contractual payments from private funds that are advised by affiliates of Avenue Capital Group as follows. For the year ended December 31, 2008, Ms. Dien Ledoux received payments of \$2,257 from Avenue Special Situations Fund II, L.P., Avenue Special Situations Fund II (Parallel), L.P., Avenue Special Situations Fund III, L.P. and Avenue Special Situations Fund III (Parallel), L.P. For the years ended December 31, 2009, December 31, 2010, December 31, 2011, December 31, 2012 and December 31, 2013, Ms. Dien Ledoux neither received nor accrued any payments from these funds. For the year ended December 31, 2013, Ms. Dien Ledoux received payments of \$292,378 from Avenue Special Situations Fund IV, L.P. and Avenue Special Situations Fund IV (Parallel), L.P. Ms. Dien Ledoux has received aggregate payments of \$1,417,233 from Avenue Special Situations Fund II, L.P., Avenue Special Situations Fund II (Parallel), L.P., Avenue Special Situations Fund III, L.P., Avenue Special Situations Fund III (Parallel), L.P., Avenue Special Situations IV, L.P. and Avenue Special Situations IV (Parallel), L.P. from inception to December 31, 2013. As of December 31, 2013, Ms. Dien Ledoux has accrued \$28,968 in carried interest in connection with Avenue Special Situations Fund IV, L.P. and Avenue Special Situations Fund IV (Parallel), L.P.. The majority of such amount is

*expected to be paid prior to the end of 2014.*

## **Codes of Ethics**

The Fund, the Adviser has adopted a Code of Ethics (the "Codes of Ethics") that sets forth general and specific standards relating to the securities trading activities of their employees. The Codes of Ethics are intended to ensure that all employees conduct their personal transactions in a manner that does not interfere with the portfolio transactions of the Fund or other Avenue Capital Group funds and that such employees do not take unfair advantage of their relationship with the Fund. The Codes of Ethics limit the types of securities that employees may trade for their personal accounts, and all employees must submit regular reports regarding their securities transaction activities. Exceptions to these and other provisions of the Codes of Ethics may be granted in particular circumstances after review by appropriate personnel. The Codes of Ethics can be reviewed and copied at the SEC's public reference room in Washington, DC (call 1-202-551-8090 for information on the operation of the public reference room); on the EDGAR Database on the SEC's Internet site <http://www.sec.gov>; or, upon payment of copying fees, by writing the SEC's public reference section, Washington, DC 20549-0102, or by electronic mail at [publicinfo@sec.gov](mailto:publicinfo@sec.gov).

## **Beneficial Ownership**

[No shareholder, to the knowledge of the Fund, other than (i) First Trust Portfolios L.P., First Trust Advisors L.P. and The Charger Corporation (together, "First Trust"), 120 East Liberty Drive, Suite 400, Wheaton, Illinois 60187; (ii) Morgan Stanley and Morgan Stanley Smith Barney LLC (together, "MS"), 1585 Broadway, New York, New York 10036; and (iii) Guggenheim Capital, LLC, Guggenheim Partners, LLC, GI Holdco, LLC, GI Holdco II, LLC, Guggenheim Partners Investment Management Holdings, LLC, Guggenheim Funds Services Holdings, LLC, Guggenheim Funds Services, LLC and Guggenheim Funds Distributors, LLC, (together, "Guggenheim"), 227 West Monroe Street, Chicago, IL 60606, 330 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10017 and 2455 Corporate West Dr., Lisle, IL 60532, beneficially owned more than five percent of the Fund's Common Shares as of July 16, 2014. According to Schedule 13G/A filings with the SEC, First Trust, MS and Guggenheim owned 20.53%, 12.3% and 7.25%, respectively, of the Fund's Common Shares.]

## **Adviser**

The Fund's investment adviser is Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. The Adviser's principal office is located at 399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor, New York, New York 10022.

## **Advisory Agreement**

The Fund and the Adviser are parties to an advisory agreement (the "Advisory Agreement"). Under the Advisory Agreement, the Fund retains the Adviser to act as the investment adviser for and to manage the investment and reinvestment of the assets of the Fund in accordance with the Fund's investment objectives and policies and limitations, and to manage the day-to-day business and affairs of the Fund (except with respect to matters in the charge of the Fund's chief compliance officer or other service providers retained by the Fund), for the period and on the terms set forth in the Advisory Agreement.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Under the terms of the Advisory Agreement, the Adviser will (i) supervise the investment activities of the Fund, including advising and consulting with the Board as the Board may reasonably request; (ii) continuously manage the assets of the Fund in a manner consistent with the investment objectives and policies of the Fund; (iii) determine the securities to be purchased, sold or otherwise disposed of by the Fund and the timing of such purchases, sales and dispositions, including the placing of purchase and sale orders on behalf of the Fund, as necessary or appropriate; (iv) furnish offices, facilities and equipment to the Fund to the extent necessary for the management of the Fund; and (v) render periodic reports to the Board as the Board may reasonably request regarding the Fund's investment program and the services provided by the Adviser hereunder.

The Fund will pay all of its other expenses, including, among others, legal fees and expenses of counsel to the Fund and the Fund's independent trustees; insurance (including trustees' and officers' errors and omissions insurance); auditing and accounting expenses; taxes and governmental fees; listing fees; dues and expenses incurred in connection with membership in investment company organizations; fees and expenses of the Fund's custodians, administrators, transfer agents, registrars and other service providers; expenses for portfolio pricing services by a pricing agent, if any; other expenses in connection with the issuance, offering and underwriting of shares or debt instruments issued by the Fund or with the securing of any credit facility or other loans for the Fund; expenses relating to investor and public relations; expenses of registering or qualifying securities of the Fund for public sale; brokerage commissions and other costs of acquiring or disposing of any portfolio holding of the Fund; expenses of preparation and distribution of reports, notices and dividends to shareholders; expenses of the dividend reinvestment plan (except for brokerage expenses paid by participants in such plan); compensation and expenses of trustees; costs of stationery; any litigation expenses; and costs of shareholders' and other meetings.

For services under the Advisory Agreement, the Adviser is paid a fee computed daily and payable monthly at an annual rate of 1.25% of the Fund's Managed Assets. A discussion of the basis for the Board's approval of the renewal of the advisory agreement is included in the Fund's Semi-Annual Report to shareholders for the period ended April 30, 2014.

Under the Advisory Agreement, the Adviser is permitted to provide investment advisory services to other clients.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

The Advisory Agreement will continue for an initial term of two (2) years and may be continued thereafter from year to year provided such continuance is specifically approved at least annually in the manner required by the 1940 Act. The Advisory Agreement may be terminated at any time without payment of penalty by the Fund or by the Adviser upon 60 days' written notice. The Advisory Agreement will automatically terminate in the event of its assignment, as defined under the 1940 Act.

The Advisory Agreement provides that the Adviser will not be liable for any error of judgment or mistake of law, or for any act or omission or any loss suffered by the Fund in connection with matters to which the Advisory Agreement relates, except for a loss resulting from willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence on the part of the Adviser in the performance of its duties ( "disabling conduct" ) and provides for indemnification by the Fund of the Adviser for any and all losses, claims, damages, liabilities or expenses (including reasonable counsel fees and expenses) not resulting from disabling conduct by the Adviser, subject to certain limitations and conditions.

### **Administrator**

State Street Bank and Trust Company ( "State Street" ), located at State Street Financial Center, 1 Lincoln Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02111, serves as administrator to the Fund. Under the administration agreement, State Street is generally responsible for managing the administrative affairs of the Fund.

For administration related services, State Street is entitled to receive an annual fee of \$[ ], plus certain out-of-pocket expenses.

During periods when the Fund is using leverage, the fee paid to State Street (for various services) will be higher than if the Fund did not use leverage because the fees paid are calculated on the basis of the Fund's Managed Assets, which includes the assets purchased through leverage.

The Fund will indemnify State Street, as administrator, and its directors, officers, employees and agents harmless from all loss, cost, damage and expenses, including reasonable fees and expenses for counsel, incurred by State Street resulting from any claim, demand, action or suit in connection with any action or omission by State Street in the performance of its duties under the administration agreement, or as a result of acting upon any instructions reasonably believed by it to have been duly authorized by the Fund or upon reasonable reliance on information or records given or made by the Fund or the Adviser, provided that this indemnification does not apply to actions or omissions of State Street, its officers or employees in cases of its or their own negligence, willful misfeasance or willful misconduct.

### **Custodian, Dividend Paying Agent, Transfer Agent and Registrar**

State Street will serve as custodian (the "Custodian" ) for the Fund. State Street also provides accounting services to the Fund. State Street will serve together as the Fund's dividend paying agent, transfer agent and registrar. See "Custodian, Dividend Paying Agent, Transfer Agent and Registrar."

The Fund will indemnify the Custodian from and against any and all costs, expenses, losses, damages, charges, counsel fees, payments and liabilities which may be asserted against the Custodian in connection with its duties under the custodian agreement, except as may arise from the

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Custodian's own negligence, willful misfeasance or willful misconduct.

The Fund will indemnify State Street as transfer agent from any against from and against, any and all losses, damages, costs, charges, counsel fees (including the defense of any lawsuit in which the transfer agent or affiliate is a named party), payments, expenses and liability arising out of or attributable to its actions taken pursuant to the transfer agency and service agreement, provided that such actions are taken in good faith without negligence, willful misfeasance or willful misconduct.

### Portfolio Management

#### *Other Accounts Managed by the Portfolio Managers*

Unless otherwise indicated, the information below is provided as of the date of this Statement of Additional Information.

As of October 31, 2013, the Portfolio Manager was also primarily responsible for the day-to-day management of certain types of other portfolios and/or accounts, as indicated in the table below:

| Type of Accounts                 | Number of<br>Accounts | Total<br>Assets (\$ in<br>millions) | Advisory Fee Based<br>on Performance |                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                  |                       |                                     | Number of<br>Accounts                | Total<br>Assets |
| Jeffrey Gary                     |                       |                                     |                                      |                 |
| Registered Investment Companies  | [ ]                   | [ ]                                 | [ ]                                  | [ ]             |
| Other Pooled Investment Vehicles | [ ]                   | \$ [ ]                              | [ ]                                  | \$ [ ]          |
| Other Accounts                   | [ ]                   | [ ]                                 | [ ]                                  | [ ]             |

### **Portfolio Manager Compensation**

The Adviser's financial arrangements with its portfolio managers, its competitive compensation and its career path emphasis at all levels reflect the value senior management places on key resources. Compensation may include a variety of components and may vary from year to year based on a number of factors. The principal components of compensation include a base salary and a bonus.

*Base Compensation.* Generally, portfolio managers receive base compensation based on their individual seniority and/or their position with the firm.

*Bonus.* Mr. Gary also receives additional compensation based on a percentage of the Adviser's net profits derived from the Fund, to begin accruing after the Adviser has recouped its start-up cost associated with the Fund.

### **Securities Ownership of Portfolio Managers**

The Fund is a recently organized investment company. Accordingly, as of the date of this Statement of Additional Information, none of the portfolio managers beneficially owned any securities issued by the Fund.

### **Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Adviser**

Because the Adviser manages assets for other investment companies, pooled investment vehicles and/or other accounts (including institutional clients, pension plans and certain high net worth individuals), certain conflicts of interest are present. For instance, the Adviser receives fees from certain accounts that are higher than the fees received from the Fund, or receives a performance-based fee on certain accounts. In those instances, the Adviser has an incentive to favor the higher and/or performance-based fee accounts over the Fund. In addition, a conflict of interest exists to the extent the Adviser has proprietary investments in certain accounts or where the portfolio manager or other employees of the Adviser have personal investments in certain accounts. The Adviser has an incentive to favor these accounts over the Fund. Because the Adviser manages accounts that engage in short sales of (or otherwise take short positions in) securities or other instruments of the type in which the Fund invests, the Adviser could be seen as harming the performance of the Fund for the benefit of the accounts taking short positions, if such short positions cause the market value of the securities to fall. The Adviser has adopted trade allocation and other policies and procedures that it believes are reasonably designed to address these and other conflicts of interest. These policies and procedures will have the effect of foreclosing certain investment opportunities for the Fund from time to time. The 20% overlap limit, discussed above, may have the same effect.

The Adviser manages assets for accounts other than the Fund, including private funds. The Adviser also currently serves as investment adviser to a registered, open-end management investment company, the Avenue Mutual Funds Trust, including its series, Avenue Credit Strategies Fund. The expected risk and return profile for the Fund is generally lower than for most of the other Avenue funds. The Fund may invest in the same credit obligations as the Avenue funds, although their investments may include different obligations of the same issuer. For example, the Fund might invest in Senior Loans issued by a borrower and one or more Avenue Funds might invest in the borrower's junior debt. In addition, the Adviser also manages certain accounts (including CLOs) that invest in certain types of credit obligations in which the Fund may also invest. Investment opportunities appropriate for both the Fund and another Avenue fund generally will be allocated between the Fund and the other Avenue Fund in a manner that the Adviser believes to be fair and equitable under the circumstances, in accordance with the Adviser's trade

allocation policies.

Conflicts of interest may arise where the Fund and other Avenue funds simultaneously hold securities representing different parts of the capital structure of a stressed or distressed issuer. In such circumstances, decisions made with respect to the securities held by one Avenue fund may cause (or have the potential to cause) harm to the different class of securities of the issuer held by other Avenue funds (including the Fund). For example, if such an issuer goes into bankruptcy or reorganization, becomes insolvent or otherwise experiences financial distress or is unable to meet its payment obligations or comply with covenants relating to credit obligations held by the Fund or by the other Avenue funds, such other Avenue funds may have an interest that conflicts with the interests of the Fund. If additional financing for such an issuer is necessary as a result of financial or other difficulties, it may not be in the best interests of the Fund to provide such additional financing, but if the other Avenue funds were to lose their respective investments as a result of such difficulties, the Adviser may have a conflict in recommending actions in the best interests of the Fund. In such situations, the Adviser will seek to act in the best interests of each of the Avenue funds (including the Fund) and will seek to resolve such conflicts in accordance with its compliance policies and procedures.

In addition, the 1940 Act limits the Fund's ability to enter into certain transactions with certain affiliates of the Adviser. As a result of these restrictions, the Fund may be prohibited from buying or selling any security directly from or to any portfolio company of a fund managed by the Adviser or one of its affiliates. Nonetheless, the Fund may under certain circumstances purchase any such portfolio company's loans or securities in the secondary market, which could create a conflict for the Adviser between the interests of the Fund and the portfolio company, in that the ability of the Adviser to recommend actions in the best interest of the Fund might be impaired. The 1940 Act also prohibits certain joint transactions with certain of the Fund's affiliates (which could include other Avenue funds), which could be deemed to include certain types of investments, or restructuring of investments, in the same portfolio company (whether at the same or different times). These limitations may limit the scope of investment opportunities that would otherwise be available to the Fund. The Board has approved policies and procedures reasonably designed to monitor potential conflicts of interest. The Board will review these procedures and any conflicts that may arise.

Although the professional staff of the Adviser will devote as much time to the management of the Fund as the Adviser deems appropriate to perform their duties in accordance with the investment advisory agreement and in accordance with reasonable commercial standards, the professional staff of the Adviser may have conflicts in allocating their time and services among the Fund and other Avenue funds. The Adviser and its affiliates are not restricted from forming additional investment funds, from entering into other investment advisory relationships or from

engaging in other business activities, even though such activities may be in competition with the Fund and/or may involve substantial time and resources of the Adviser and its professional staff. These activities could be viewed as creating a conflict of interest in that the time and effort of the members of the Adviser and its officers and employees will not be devoted exclusively to the business of the Fund but will be allocated between the business of the Fund and the management of the assets of other clients of the Adviser.

The Adviser or its respective members, officers, directors, employees, principals or affiliates may come into possession of material, non-public information. The possession of such information may limit the ability of the Fund to buy or sell a security or otherwise to participate in an investment opportunity. Situations may occur where the Fund could be disadvantaged because of the investment activities conducted by the Adviser for other clients, and the Adviser will not employ information barriers with regard to its operations on behalf of its registered and private funds, or other accounts. In certain circumstances, employees of the Adviser may serve as board members or in other capacities for portfolio or potential portfolio companies, which could restrict the Fund's ability to trade in the securities of such companies.

#### **Portfolio transactions and brokerage allocation**

The Adviser has responsibility for decisions to buy and sell securities and other instruments for the Fund, the selection of brokers and dealers to effect the transactions and the negotiation of prices and any brokerage commissions on such transactions. While the Adviser will be primarily responsible for the placement of the Fund's portfolio business, the policies and practices in this regard are subject to review by the Board.

With respect to interests in Senior Loans, the Fund generally will engage in privately negotiated transactions for purchase or sale in which the Adviser, as applicable, will negotiate on behalf of the Fund (although a more developed market may exist for certain Senior Loans). The Fund may be required to pay fees, or give up a portion of interest and any fees payable to the Fund, to the lender selling Participations or Assignments to the Fund. The Adviser will determine the lenders from whom the Fund will purchase Assignments and Participations by considering their professional ability, level of service, relationship with the borrower, financial condition, credit standards and quality of management. The illiquidity of many Senior Loans may restrict the ability of the Adviser to locate in a timely manner persons willing to purchase the Fund's interests in Senior Loans at a fair price should the Fund desire to sell such interests. See "Risk factors" "Risks Relating to Investing in the Fund's Common Shares" "Risks of Senior Loans" in the prospectus. Affiliates of the Adviser may participate in the primary and secondary market for Senior Loans. Because of certain limitations imposed by the 1940 Act, this may restrict the Fund's ability to acquire some Senior Loans. The Adviser does not believe that this will have a material effect on the Fund's ability to acquire Senior Loans consistent with its investment policies.

As most transactions made by the Fund are principal transactions at net prices, the Fund generally incurs little or no brokerage costs. The portfolio securities in which the Fund invests are normally purchased directly from the issuer or in the OTC market from an underwriter or market maker for the securities. Purchases from underwriters of portfolio securities include a commission or concession paid by the issuer to the underwriter and purchases from dealers serving as market makers include a spread or markup to the dealer between the bid and asked price. Sales to dealers are effected at bid prices.

The Fund may also purchase certain money market instruments directly from an issuer, in which case no commissions or discounts are paid (although the Fund may indirectly bear fees and expenses of any money market funds in which it invests), or may purchase and sell listed securities on an exchange, which are effected through brokers who charge a commission for their services.

In effecting securities transactions, the Adviser will seek to obtain the best execution of orders. Commission rates are a component of price and are considered along with other relevant factors. In determining the broker or dealer to be used and the commission rates to be paid, the Adviser will consider the utility and reliability of brokerage services, including execution capability and performance, financial responsibility,

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

investment information, market insights, other research provided by such brokers, and access to analysts, management and idea generation. Accordingly, the commissions charged by any such broker may be greater than the amount another firm might charge if the Adviser determine in good faith that the amount of such commissions is reasonable in relation to the value of the brokerage services and research information provided by such brokers. Consistent with the requirements of best execution, brokerage commissions on accounts may be directed to brokers in recognition of investment research and information furnished as well as for services rendered in execution of orders by such brokers. By allocating transactions in this manner, the Adviser may be able to supplement their research and analysis with the views and information of brokerage firms. The Adviser may also allocate a portion of its brokerage business to firms whose employees participate as brokers in the introduction of investors to the Avenue Manager or who agree to bear the expense of capital introduction, marketing or related services by third parties. Eligible research or brokerage services provided by brokers through which portfolio transactions for the Adviser are executed may include research reports on particular industries and companies, economic surveys and analyses, recommendations as to specific securities, online quotations, news and research services, financial publications and other products and services ( *e.g.* , software based applications for market quotes and news, database programs providing portfolio company and industry data) providing lawful and appropriate assistance to the portfolio managers and their designees in the performance of their investment decision-making responsibilities on behalf of the Adviser and other accounts which their affiliates manage (collectively, Soft Dollar Items ). The Adviser and its affiliates generally use such products and services (if any) for the benefit of all of their accounts. Soft Dollar Items may be provided directly by brokers, by third parties at the direction of brokers or purchased on behalf of the Fund and its affiliates with credits or rebates provided by brokers. Any Soft Dollar Items obtained in connection with portfolio transactions for the Fund are intended to fall within the safe harbor of Section 28(e) of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the Exchange Act ). As noted above, because most of the Fund s transactions will likely be principal transactions, the Fund will likely not incur significant brokerage commissions (although it will be subject to mark ups and mark downs imposed by dealers). Section 28(e) generally only applies with respect to brokerage commissions; as such, the Fund may not benefit from any significant amount of Soft Dollar Items.

The Adviser may also place portfolio transactions, to the extent permitted by law, with brokerage firms affiliated with the Fund or the Adviser if they reasonably believe that the quality of execution and the commission are comparable to that available from other qualified firms. Similarly, to the extent permitted by law and subject to the same considerations on quality of execution and comparable commission rates, the Adviser may direct an executing broker to pay a portion or all of any commissions, concessions or discounts to a firm supplying research or other services.

The Adviser may place portfolio transactions at or about the same time for other advisory accounts, including other investment companies. The Avenue Manager will seek to allocate portfolio transactions equitably whenever concurrent decisions are made to purchase or sell securities for the Fund and another advisory account. In some cases, this procedure could have an adverse effect on the price or the amount of securities available to the Fund. In making such allocations among the Fund and other advisory accounts, the main factors considered by the Adviser are the respective sizes of the Fund and other advisory accounts, the respective investment objectives, the relative size of portfolio holdings of the same or comparable securities, the availability of cash for investment, the size of investment commitments generally held and opinions of the persons responsible for recommending the investment. Purchases and sales of securities for the Fund may be bunched or aggregated with orders for other advisory accounts, including other investment companies. The Adviser, however, is not required to bunch or aggregate orders if portfolio management decisions for different accounts are made separately, or if it determines that bunching or aggregating is not practicable, required or in the best interests of its clients. Prevailing trading activity frequently may make impossible the receipt of the same price or execution on the entire volume of securities purchased or sold. When this occurs, the various prices may be averaged, and the Fund will be charged or credited with the average price. Thus, the effect of the aggregation may operate on some occasions to the disadvantage of the Fund. In addition, under certain circumstances, the Fund will not be charged the same commission or commission equivalent rates in connection with a bunched or aggregated order. See Management of the Fund Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Adviser.

The placing and execution of orders for the Fund also is subject to restrictions under U.S. securities laws, including certain prohibitions against trading among the Fund and its affiliates (including the Adviser or their affiliates). Certain broker-dealers, through which the Fund may effect securities transactions, may be affiliated persons (as defined in the 1940 Act) of the Fund or affiliated persons of such affiliates. The Board has adopted certain policies incorporating the standards of Rule 17e-1 issued by the SEC under the 1940 Act which require that the commissions paid to affiliates of the Fund be reasonable and fair compared to the commissions, fees or other remuneration received or to be received by other brokers in connection with comparable transactions involving similar securities during a comparable period of time. The rule and procedures also contain review requirements and require the Adviser to furnish reports to the trustees and to maintain records in connection with such reviews. In addition, the Fund may purchase securities in a placement for which affiliates of the Adviser have acted as agent to or for issuers, consistent with applicable rules adopted by the SEC or regulatory authorization, if necessary. The Fund will not purchase securities from or sell securities to any affiliate of the Adviser acting as principal. The Adviser are prohibited from directing brokerage transactions on the basis of the referral of clients or the sale of shares of advised investment companies.

### **Portfolio Turnover**

The Adviser will effect portfolio transactions without regard to holding period, if, in their judgment, such transactions are advisable in light of a change in circumstance in general market, economic or financial conditions. As a result of its investment policies, the Fund may engage in a substantial number of portfolio transactions. Accordingly, while the Fund anticipates that its annual turnover rate should not exceed 100% under normal conditions, it is impossible to predict portfolio turnover rates. The portfolio turnover rate is calculated by dividing the lesser of the Fund's annual sales or purchases of portfolio securities (exclusive of purchases or sales of securities whose maturities at the time of acquisition were one year or less) by the monthly average value of the securities in the portfolio during the year. High portfolio turnover involves correspondingly greater transaction costs in the form of dealer spreads and brokerage commissions, which are borne directly by the Fund. In addition, a high rate of portfolio turnover may result in certain tax consequences, such as increased capital gain dividends and/or ordinary income dividends.

The rate of portfolio turnover in the [fiscal year ended October 31, 2013 was 89%].

### **Description of shares**

#### **Common Shares**

The Fund's Common Shares are described in the prospectus. The Fund intends to hold annual meetings of shareholders so long as the Common Shares are listed on a national securities exchange and such meetings are required as a condition to such listing. An investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer after the Record Date for a meeting of shareholders will not be entitled to vote such shares, or otherwise participate with respect to such shares, at such meeting. It is expected that an investor who acquires Common Shares in the Offer will not be entitled to vote such shares, or otherwise participate with respect to such shares, at the Fund's 2013 annual meeting of shareholders.

#### **Preferred Shares**

The terms of any preferred shares issued by the Fund, including their dividend rate, voting rights, liquidation preference and redemption provisions, will be determined by the Board (subject to applicable law and the Fund's Agreement and Declaration of Trust) if and when it authorizes an offering of preferred shares.

If the Board determines to proceed with an offering of preferred shares, the terms of the preferred shares may be the same as, or different from,

the terms described in the prospectus, subject to applicable law and the Fund's Agreement and Declaration of Trust. The Board, without the approval of the Common Shareholders, may authorize an offering of preferred shares or may determine not to authorize such an offering, and may fix the terms of the preferred shares to be offered.

#### **Other Shares**

The Board (subject to applicable law and the Fund's Agreement and Declaration of Trust) may authorize an offering, without the approval of the holders of either Common Shares or preferred shares, of other classes of shares, or other classes or series of shares, as they determine to be necessary, desirable or appropriate, having such terms, rights, preferences, privileges, limitations and restrictions as the Board sees fit. The Fund currently does not expect to issue any other classes of shares, or series of shares, except for the Common Shares, and possibly, the preferred shares.

#### **Repurchase of Common Shares**

The Fund is a closed-end management investment company and as such its shareholders will not have the right to cause the Fund to redeem their shares. Instead, the Fund's Common Shares trade in the open market at a price that will be a function of several factors, including dividend levels (which are in turn affected by expenses), NAV, call protection, dividend stability, relative demand for and supply of such shares in the market, general market and economic conditions and other factors. Because shares of a closed-end investment company may frequently trade at prices lower than NAV, the Board may consider actions that might be taken to reduce or eliminate any material discount from NAV in respect of Common Shares, which may include the repurchase of such shares in the open market or in private transactions, the making of a tender offer for such shares or the conversion of the Fund to an open-end investment company. The Board has authorized repurchases of Common Shares through open market transactions if deemed necessary or desirable in reducing the discount from NAV in the market price of Common Shares, provided that the Fund may not repurchase more than 10% of its outstanding Common Shares in any calendar year. The Board may decide not to take any of the other aforementioned actions. In addition, there can be no assurance that share repurchases or tender offers, if undertaken, will reduce market discount.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, at any time when the Fund has preferred shares outstanding, the Fund may not purchase, redeem or otherwise acquire any of its Common Shares unless (1) all accrued preferred share dividends have been paid and (2) at the time of such purchase, redemption or acquisition, the net asset value of the Fund's portfolio (determined after deducting the acquisition price of the Common Shares) is at least 200% of the liquidation value of the outstanding preferred shares (expected to equal the original purchase price per share plus any accrued and unpaid dividends thereon). Any service fees incurred in connection with any tender offer made by the Fund will be borne by the Fund and will not reduce the stated consideration to be paid to tendering shareholders.

Subject to its investment restrictions, the Fund may borrow to finance the repurchase of shares or to make a tender offer. Interest on any borrowings to finance share repurchase transactions or the accumulation of cash by the Fund in anticipation of share repurchases or tenders will reduce the Fund's net income. Any share repurchase, tender offer or borrowing that might be approved by the Board would have to comply with the Exchange Act, the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder.

The Board currently has no intention to take any other action in response to a discount from NAV. Further, it is the Board's intention not to authorize repurchases of Common Shares or a tender offer for such shares if: (1) such transactions, if consummated, would (a) result in the delisting of the Common Shares from the New York Stock Exchange or (b) impair the Fund's status as a regulated investment company under the Code (which would make the Fund a taxable entity, causing the Fund's income to be taxed at the trust level in addition to the taxation of

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

shareholders who receive dividends from the Fund) or as a registered closed-end investment company under the 1940 Act; (2) the Fund would not be able to liquidate portfolio securities in an orderly manner and consistent with the Fund's investment objectives and policies in order to repurchase shares; or (3) there is, in the Board's judgment, any (a) material legal action or proceeding instituted or threatened challenging such transactions or otherwise materially adversely affecting the Fund, (b) general suspension of or limitation on prices for trading securities on the New York Stock Exchange, (c) declaration of a banking moratorium by Federal or state authorities or any suspension of payment by U.S. or New York banks, (d) material limitation affecting the Fund or the issuers of its portfolio securities by Federal or state authorities on the extension of credit by lending institutions or on the exchange of foreign currency, (e) commencement or continuation of war, armed hostilities or other international or national calamity directly or indirectly involving the United States or (f) other event or condition which would have a material adverse effect (including any adverse tax effect) on the Fund or its shareholders if shares were repurchased. Even in the absence of such conditions, the Board may decline to take action in response to a discount from NAV of the Common Shares. The Board may in the future modify these conditions in light of experience.

The repurchase by the Fund of its shares at prices below net asset value will result in an increase in the net asset value of those shares that remain outstanding. However, there can be no assurance that share repurchases or tender offers at or below net asset value will result in the Fund's shares trading at a price equal to their net asset value.

In addition, a purchase by the Fund of its Common Shares will decrease the Fund's Managed Assets which would likely have the effect of increasing the Fund's expense ratio. Any purchase by the Fund of its Common Shares at a time when preferred shares are outstanding will increase the leverage applicable to the outstanding Common Shares then remaining.

Before deciding whether to take any action if the Common Shares trade below NAV, the Board would likely consider all relevant factors,

including the extent and duration of the discount, the liquidity of the Fund's portfolio, the impact of any action that might be taken on the Fund or its shareholders and market considerations. Based on these considerations, even if the Fund's shares should trade at a discount, the Board may determine that, in the interest of the Fund and its shareholders, no action should be taken.

### **Tax matters**

The following is a description of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations affecting the Fund and the material U.S. federal income tax consequences of owning and disposing of Common Shares. The discussion below provides general tax information related to an investment in Common Shares, but this discussion does not purport to be a complete description of the U.S. federal income tax consequences of an investment in the Common Shares. It is based on the Code and Treasury regulations thereunder and administrative pronouncements, all as of the date hereof, any of which is subject to change, possibly with retroactive effect. In addition, it does not describe all of the tax consequences that may be relevant in light of a Common Shareholder's particular circumstances, including alternative minimum tax consequences and tax consequences applicable to Common Shareholders subject to special tax rules, such as certain financial institutions; dealers or traders in securities who use a mark-to-market method of tax accounting; persons holding Common Shares as part of a hedging transaction, wash sale, conversion transaction or integrated transaction or persons entering into a constructive sale with respect to the Common Shares; entities classified as partnerships or other pass-through entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes; real estate investment trusts; insurance companies; U.S. holders (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar; or tax-exempt entities, including individual retirement accounts or Roth IRAs. Unless otherwise noted, the following discussion applies only to a Common Shareholder that holds Common Shares as a capital asset and is a U.S. holder. A U.S. holder is a holder who, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is a beneficial owner of Common Shares and is (i) an individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States; (ii) a corporation, or other entity taxable as a corporation, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state therein or the District of Columbia; (iii) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or (iv) a trust if it (x) is subject to the primary supervision of a court within the United States and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (y) has a valid election in effect under applicable United States Treasury regulations to be treated as a U.S. person. Tax laws are complex and often change, and Common Shareholders should consult their tax advisors about the U.S. federal, state, local or non-U.S. tax consequences of an investment in the Fund.

Record Date Common Shareholders should review the discussion in the prospectus of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences of the Offer under "Tax matters" The Offer.

### **Taxation of the Fund**

The Fund has elected to be treated as, and intends to continue to qualify in each taxable year as, a regulated investment company (a "RIC") under Subchapter M of the Code. To qualify as a RIC for any taxable year, the Fund must, among other things, satisfy both an income test and an asset test for such taxable year. Specifically, (i) at least 90% of the Fund's gross income for such taxable year must consist of dividends; interest; payments with respect to certain securities loans; gains from the sale or other disposition of stock, securities or foreign currencies; other income (including, but not limited to, gains from options, futures or forward contracts) derived with respect to its business of investing in such stock, securities or currencies; and net income derived from interests in qualified publicly traded partnerships (such income, "Qualifying RIC Income") and (ii) the Fund's holdings must be diversified so that, at the end of each quarter of such taxable year, (a) at least 50% of the value of the Fund's total assets is represented by cash and cash items, securities of other RICs, U.S. government securities and other securities, with such other securities limited, in respect of any one issuer, to an amount not greater than 5% of the value of the Fund's total assets and not greater than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer and (b) not more than 25% of the value of the Fund's total assets is invested (x) in securities (other than U.S. government securities or securities of other RICs) of any one issuer or of two or more issuers that the Fund controls and that are engaged in the same, similar or related trades or businesses or (y) in the securities of one or more qualified publicly traded partnerships. The Fund's share of income derived from a partnership other than a qualified publicly traded partnership will be treated as Qualifying RIC Income only to the extent that such income would have constituted Qualifying RIC Income if derived directly by the Fund. A qualified publicly traded partnership is generally defined as an entity that is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes if (i) interests in such entity are

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

traded on an established securities market or are readily tradable on a secondary market or the substantial equivalent thereof and (ii) less than 90% of its gross income for the relevant taxable year consists of Qualifying RIC Income. The Code provides that the Treasury Department may by regulation exclude from Qualifying RIC Income foreign currency gains that are not directly related to the RIC's principal business of investing in stock or securities (or options and futures with respect to stock or securities). The Fund anticipates that, in general, its foreign currency gains will be directly related to its principal business of investing in stock and securities.

As a RIC, the Fund generally is not subject to U.S. federal income tax on its investment company taxable income and net capital gain (that is, the excess of net long-term capital gains over net short-term capital losses) that it distributes (including amounts that are reinvested pursuant to the Plan, as described below) to its shareholders, provided that it distributes on a timely basis with respect to each taxable year at least 90% of its investment company taxable income and its net tax-exempt interest income for such taxable year. In general, a RIC's investment company taxable income for any taxable year is its taxable income, determined without regard to net capital gain and with certain other adjustments. The Fund distributes, and intends to continue to distribute, all or substantially all of its investment company taxable income, net tax-exempt interest income (if any) and net capital gain on an annual basis. Any taxable income, including any net capital gain, that the Fund does not distribute to its shareholders in a timely manner will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at regular corporate rates.

If the Fund retains any net capital gains for reinvestment, it may elect to treat such capital gains as having been distributed to its shareholders. If the Fund makes such an election, each shareholder will be required to report its share of such undistributed net capital

gain as long-term capital gain and will be entitled to claim its share of the U.S. federal income taxes paid by the Fund on such undistributed net capital gain as a credit against its own U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, and to claim a refund on a properly-filed U.S. federal income tax return to the extent that the credit exceeds such liability. In addition, each shareholder will be entitled to increase the adjusted tax basis of its Common Shares by the difference between its share of such undistributed net capital gain and the related credit. There can be no assurance that the Fund will make this election if it retains all or a portion of its net capital gain for a taxable year.

A RIC will be subject to a nondeductible 4% excise tax on certain amounts that it fails to distribute during each calendar year. In order to avoid this excise tax, a RIC must distribute during each calendar year an amount at least equal to the sum of (i) 98% of its ordinary taxable income (taking into account certain deferrals and elections) for the calendar year; (ii) 98.2% of its capital gain net income for the one-year period ended on October 31 of the calendar year and (iii) any ordinary income and capital gains for previous years that were not distributed during those years. For purposes of determining whether the Fund has met this distribution requirement, (i) certain ordinary gains and losses that would otherwise be taken into account for the portion of the calendar year after October 31 will be treated as arising on January 1 of the following calendar year and (ii) the Fund will be deemed to have distributed any income or gains on which it paid U.S. federal income tax in the taxable year ending within the relevant calendar year. The Fund intends generally to make distributions sufficient to permit it to avoid the imposition of this excise tax, but there can be no assurance in this regard.

If the Fund failed to qualify as a RIC or failed to satisfy the 90% distribution requirement in any taxable year, the Fund would be subject to U.S. federal income tax at regular corporate rates on its taxable income, including its net capital gain, even if such income were distributed to its shareholders, and all distributions out of earnings and profits would be taxed to shareholders as ordinary dividend income. Such distributions generally would be eligible for the dividends-received deduction in the case of corporate shareholders and may also be eligible for treatment by non-corporate shareholders as qualified dividend income. In addition, the Fund could be required to recognize unrealized gains, pay taxes and make distributions (any of which could be subject to interest charges) before re-qualifying for taxation as a RIC. If the Fund fails to satisfy the income test or diversification test described above, however, it may be able to avoid losing its status as a RIC by timely providing notice of such failure to the Internal Revenue Service, curing such failure and possibly paying an additional tax.

Some of the investments that the Fund is expected to make, such as investments in debt securities that are treated as issued with original issue discount, will cause the Fund to recognize income or gain for U.S. federal income tax purposes prior to the receipt of any corresponding cash or other property. Because the distribution requirements described above will apply to this income, the Fund may be required to borrow money or dispose of other securities at disadvantageous times in order to make the relevant distributions.

If the Fund utilizes leverage through the issuance of preferred shares or borrowings, it will be prohibited from declaring a distribution or dividend if it would fail the applicable asset coverage test(s) under the 1940 Act after the payment of such distribution or dividend. In addition, certain covenants in credit facilities or indentures may impose greater restrictions on the Fund's ability to declare and pay dividends on Common Shares. See "Investment objectives and principal investment strategy" and "Use of leverage and related risks" for a description of the leverage utilized by the Fund. Limits on the Fund's ability to pay dividends on Common Shares may prevent the Fund from meeting the distribution requirements described above, and may therefore jeopardize the Fund's qualification for taxation as a RIC and subject the Fund to the 4% excise tax. The Fund will endeavor to avoid restrictions on its ability to make dividend payments. If the Fund is precluded from making distributions on the Common Shares because of any applicable asset coverage requirements, the terms of the preferred shares (if any) may provide that any amounts so precluded from being distributed, but required to be distributed for the Fund to meet the distribution requirements for qualification as a RIC, will be paid to the holders of the preferred shares as a special distribution. This distribution can be expected to decrease the amount that holders of preferred shares would be entitled to receive upon redemption or liquidation of the shares.

Certain of the Fund's investments are expected to be subject to special U.S. federal income tax provisions that may, among other things, (i) disallow, suspend or otherwise limit the allowance of certain losses or deductions; (ii) convert lower-taxed long-term capital gain into higher-taxed short-term capital gain or ordinary income; (iii) convert an ordinary loss or a deduction into a capital loss, the deductibility of which is more limited; (iv) adversely affect when a purchase or sale of stock or securities is deemed to occur; (v) adversely alter the intended

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

characterization of certain complex financial transactions; (vi) cause the Fund to recognize income or gain without a corresponding receipt of cash and (vii) produce income that will not constitute Qualifying RIC Income. The application of these rules could cause the Fund to be subject to U.S. federal income tax or the nondeductible 4% excise tax and, under certain circumstances, could affect the Fund's status as a RIC. The Fund monitors its investments and may make certain tax elections in order to mitigate the effect of these provisions. Moreover, there may be uncertainty as to the appropriate treatment of certain of the Fund's investments for U.S. federal income tax purposes. In particular, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of investments in debt securities that are rated below investment grade is uncertain in various respects.

### Distributions

Distributions of the Fund's ordinary income and net short-term capital gains will, except as described below with respect to distributions of qualified dividend income, generally be taxable to the Common Shareholders as ordinary income to the extent such distributions are paid out of the Fund's current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Distributions (or deemed distributions, as described above), if any, of net capital gains will be taxable as long-term capital gains, regardless of the length of time the Common Shareholder has owned Common Shares. The ultimate tax characterization of the Fund's distributions made in a taxable year cannot be determined until after the end of the taxable year. As a result, there is a possibility that the Fund may make total distributions during a taxable year in an amount that exceeds the current and accumulated earnings and profits of the Fund. A distribution of an amount in excess of the Fund's current and accumulated earnings and profits will be treated by a Common Shareholder as a return of capital that will be applied against and

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

reduce the Common Shareholder's basis in its Common Shares. To the extent that the amount of any such distribution exceeds the Common Shareholder's basis in its Common Shares, the excess will be treated as gain from a sale or exchange of the Common Shares.

It is expected that a very substantial portion of the Fund's income will consist of ordinary income. For example, interest and original issue discount derived by the Fund will constitute ordinary income. In addition, gain derived by the Fund from the disposition of debt securities with market discount (generally, securities purchased by the Fund at a discount to their stated redemption price) will be treated as ordinary income to the extent of the market discount that has accrued, as determined for U.S. federal income tax purposes, at the time of such disposition unless the Fund makes an election to accrue market discount on a current basis. In addition, certain of the Fund's investments will be subject to special U.S. federal income tax provisions that may affect the character, increase the amount and/or accelerate the timing of income earned by the fund.

Dividends distributed by the Fund to a corporate Common Shareholder will qualify for the dividends-received deduction only to the extent that the dividends consist of distributions of qualifying dividends received by the Fund. In addition, any such dividends-received deduction will be disallowed or reduced if the corporate Common Shareholder fails to satisfy certain requirements, including a holding period requirement, with respect to its Common Shares. Distributions of qualified dividend income to an individual or other non-corporate Common Shareholder made or deemed made by the Fund will be subject to tax at a maximum rate of 15% or 20% (depending on whether the shareholder's income exceeds certain threshold amounts), provided that the shareholder meets certain holding period and other requirements with respect to its Common Shares. Qualified dividend income generally includes dividends from domestic corporations and dividends from foreign corporations that meet certain specified criteria. Given the Fund's investment strategy, it is not expected that a large portion of the distributions made by the Fund will be eligible for the dividends-received deduction (in the case of corporate shareholders) or for treatment as qualified dividend income (in the case of individual shareholders).

Distributions will be treated in the manner described above regardless of whether such distributions are paid in cash or invested in additional Common Shares pursuant to the Plan. If the Common Shares are trading below NAV, Common Shareholders receiving distributions in the form of additional Common Shares will be treated as receiving a distribution in the amount of cash that they would have received if they had elected to receive the distribution in cash. If the Fund issues additional Common Shares with a fair market value equal to or greater than NAV, however, Common Shareholders will be treated as receiving a distribution in the amount of the fair market value of the distributed Common Shares.

Although dividends generally will be treated as distributed when paid, dividends declared in October, November or December, payable to Common Shareholders of record on a specified date in one of those months, and paid during the following January, will be treated as having been distributed by the Fund (and received by Common Shareholders) on December 31 of the year in which declared.

The Internal Revenue Service currently requires that a RIC that has two or more classes of stock allocate to each class proportionate amounts of each type of its income (such as ordinary income, capital gains and dividends qualifying for the dividends-received deduction) based upon the percentage of total dividends paid to each class for the tax year. Accordingly, if the Fund issues preferred shares, the Fund will allocate capital gain dividends and dividends qualifying for the dividends-received deduction, if any, between its Common Shares and shares of preferred stock in proportion to the total dividends paid to each class with respect to such tax year.

Common Shareholders will be notified annually as to the U.S. federal tax status of distributions, and Common Shareholders receiving distributions in the form of additional Common Shares will receive a report as to the NAV of those Common Shares.

### Medicare Tax

An additional 3.8% Medicare tax is imposed on certain net investment income (including ordinary dividends and capital gain distributions received from the Fund and net gains from redemptions or other taxable dispositions of Fund shares) of U.S. individuals, estates and trusts to the extent that such person's modified adjusted gross income (in the case of an individual) or adjusted gross income (in the case of an estate or trust) exceed certain threshold amounts.

### **Sale or Exchange of Common Shares**

A Common Shareholder may recognize capital gain or loss on the sale or other disposition of Common Shares. The amount of the gain or loss will be equal to the difference between the amount realized and the Common Shareholder's adjusted tax basis in the relevant Common Shares. Such gain or loss generally will be a long-term gain or loss if the Common Shareholder's holding period for such Common Shares is more than one (1) year. Under current law, net capital gains recognized by non-corporate Common Shareholders are generally subject to a maximum rate of either 15% or 20%, depending on whether the shareholder's income exceeds certain threshold amounts.

Losses realized by a Common Shareholder on the sale or exchange of Common Shares held for six months or less will be treated as long-term capital losses to the extent of any distribution of long-term capital gain received (or deemed received, as discussed above) with respect to such Common Shares. In addition, no loss will be allowed on a sale or other disposition of Common Shares if the Common Shareholder acquires (including pursuant to the Plan), or enters into a contract or option to acquire, Common Shares within 30 days before or after the disposition. In such a case, the basis of the securities acquired will be adjusted to reflect the disallowed loss.

Reporting of adjusted cost basis information for covered securities, which generally include shares of a regulated investment company acquired after January 1, 2012, is required to the Internal Revenue Service and to taxpayers. Common Shareholders should contact their financial intermediaries with respect to reporting of cost basis and available elections for their accounts.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Under U.S. Treasury regulations, if a Common Shareholder recognizes losses with respect to Common Shares of \$2 million or more for an individual Common Shareholder or \$10 million or more for a corporate Common Shareholder, the Common Shareholder must file with the Internal Revenue Service a disclosure statement on Internal Revenue Service Form 8886. Direct shareholders of portfolio securities are in many cases excepted from this reporting requirement, but under current guidance, shareholders of a RIC are not excepted. Future guidance may extend the current exception from this reporting requirement to shareholders of most or all RICs. The fact that a loss is reportable under these regulations does not affect the legal determination of whether the taxpayer's treatment of the loss is proper. Shareholders should consult their tax advisors to determine the applicability of these regulations in light of their individual circumstances.

### Backup Withholding and Information Reporting

Information returns will be filed with the Internal Revenue Service in connection with payments on the Common Shares and the proceeds from a sale or other disposition of the Common Shares. A Common Shareholder will be subject to backup withholding (currently, at a rate of 28%) on all such payments if it fails to provide the payor with its correct taxpayer identification number (generally on an Internal Revenue Service form W-9) and to make required certifications or otherwise establish an exemption from backup withholding. Corporate Common Shareholders and certain other Common Shareholders generally are exempt from backup withholding. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld pursuant to these rules may be credited against the applicable Common Shareholder's U.S. federal income tax liability, provided the required information is timely furnished to the Internal Revenue Service.

### Non-U.S. Common Shareholders

The U.S. federal income taxation of a Common Shareholder that is a nonresident alien individual, a foreign trust or estate or a foreign corporation, as defined for U.S. federal income tax purposes (a non-U.S. Common Shareholder) depends on whether the income that the Common Shareholder derives from the Fund is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business carried on by the Common Shareholder.

If the income that a non-U.S. Common Shareholder derives from the Fund is not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business carried on by such non-U.S. Common Shareholder, distributions of investment company taxable income will generally be subject to a U.S. federal withholding tax at a rate of 30% (or a lower rate under an applicable treaty).

For taxable years beginning before January 1, 2014 (unless further extended by Congress), properly designated dividends received by a nonresident alien or foreign entity are generally exempt from U.S. federal withholding tax when they (a) are paid in respect of the Fund's qualified net interest income (generally, the Fund's U.S. source interest income, reduced by expenses that are allocable to such income), or (b) are paid in connection with the Fund's qualified short-term capital gains (generally, the excess of the Fund's net short-term capital gain over the Fund's long-term capital loss for such taxable year). However, depending on the circumstances, the Fund may designate all, some or none of the Fund's potentially eligible dividends as such qualified net interest income or as qualified short-term capital gains, and a portion of the Fund's distributions (e.g. interest from non-U.S. sources or any foreign currency gains) would be ineligible for this potential exemption from withholding. There can be no assurance as to whether or not legislation will be enacted to extend this exemption.

A non-U.S. Common Shareholder whose income from the Fund is not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business (or, if an income tax treaty is applicable, is not attributable to a permanent establishment maintained by the non-U.S. Common Shareholder in the United States) will generally be exempt from U.S. federal income tax on capital gain dividends, any amounts retained by the Fund that are designated as undistributed capital gains and any gains realized upon the sale or exchange of shares of the Fund. If, however, such a non-U.S. Common Shareholder is a nonresident alien individual and is physically present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year and

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

meets certain other requirements such capital gain dividends, undistributed capital gains and gains from the sale or exchange of Common Shares will be subject to a 30% U.S. tax.

If the income from the Fund is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business carried on by a non-U.S. Common Shareholder (and, if an income tax treaty is applicable, is attributable to a permanent establishment maintained by the non-U.S. Common Shareholder in the United States), any distributions of investment company taxable income, any capital gain dividends, any amounts retained by the Fund that are designated as undistributed capital gains and any gains realized upon the sale or exchange of shares of the Fund will be subject to U.S. income tax, on a net income basis, in the same manner, and at the graduated rates applicable to, U.S. persons. If such a non-U.S. Common Shareholder is a corporation, it may also be subject to the U.S. branch profits tax.

A non-U.S. Common Shareholder other than a corporation may be subject to backup withholding on net capital gain distributions that are otherwise exempt from withholding tax or on distributions that would otherwise be taxable at a reduced treaty rate if such Common Shareholder does not certify its non-U.S. status under penalties of perjury or otherwise establish an exemption.

A non-U.S. Shareholder may also be subject to U.S. estate tax with respect to their Fund shares.

The tax consequences to a non-U.S. Common Shareholder entitled to claim the benefits of an applicable tax treaty may differ from those described herein. Non-U.S. Common Shareholders are advised to consult their tax advisors with respect to the particular tax consequences to them of an investment in the Fund.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Effective July 1, 2014, the Fund will be required to withhold U.S. tax (at a 30% rate) on payments of taxable dividends and (effective January 1, 2017) redemption proceeds and certain capital gain dividends made to certain non-U.S. entities that fail to comply (or be deemed compliant) with extensive new reporting and withholding requirements designed to inform the U.S. Department of the Treasury of U.S.-owned foreign investment accounts. Shareholders may be requested to provide additional information to the Fund to enable the Fund to determine whether withholding is required.

### Other Taxes

Common Shareholders may be subject to state, local and non U.S. taxes on their Fund distributions. Common Shareholders are advised to consult their tax advisors with respect to the particular tax consequences to them of an investment in the Fund.

### Proxy voting policy and proxy voting record

The Board has delegated the day-to-day responsibility to the Adviser to vote the Fund's proxies. Proxies are voted by the Adviser pursuant to the Board approved proxy guidelines, a copy of which as currently in effect as of the date of this Statement of Additional Information is attached hereto as Appendix B.

Information on how the Fund voted proxies (if any) relating to portfolio securities during the most recent 12 month period ending June 30 is available on the Fund's website at <http://www.avenuecapital.com>, or on the Securities and Exchange Commission's website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

### Financial Statements

The Fund's financial statements for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013, together with the report thereon of [ ], an independent registered public accounting firm, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting, are incorporated in this Statement of Additional Information by reference to the Fund's [ ] Annual Report. The address of [ ] is [ ]. The audit services they provide include examination of the financial statements of the Fund, services relating to filings by the Fund with the SEC, and consultation on matters related to the preparation and filing of tax returns.

A copy of the Fund's [ ] Annual Report and Semi-Annual Report is available at the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). Copies may also be obtained free of charge upon written or oral request from the Fund's Information Agent, [ ] at [ ] or for banks and brokers, at [ ].

### Legal counsel

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Counsel to the Fund is Dechert LLP.

### **Additional information**

A registration statement on Form N-2, including amendments thereto, relating to the Offer, has been filed by the Fund with the SEC. The Prospectus and this Statement of Additional Information do not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement, including any exhibits and schedules thereto. For further information with respect to the Fund, the Common Shares and the Rights, reference is made to the registration statement. A copy of the registration statement may be reviewed and copied at the SEC's Public Reference Room in Washington, DC or on the EDGAR database on the SEC's internet site (<http://www.sec.gov>). Information on the operation of the SEC's Public Reference Room may be obtained by calling the SEC at (202) 551-8090. You can also request copies of these materials, upon payment of a duplicating fee, by electronic request at the SEC's e-mail address ([publicinfo@sec.gov](mailto:publicinfo@sec.gov)) or by writing the Public Reference Section of the SEC, Washington, DC 20549-0102.

## Appendix A Description of securities ratings

**Moody's Investors Service Inc.** A brief description of the applicable Moody's Investors Service, Inc. (Moody's) rating symbols and their meanings (as published by Moody's) follows:

### 1. Long-Term Obligation Ratings

Moody's long-term obligation ratings are opinions of the relative credit risk of fixed-income obligations with an original maturity of one year or more. They address the possibility that a financial obligation will not be honored as promised. Such ratings reflect both the likelihood of default on contractually promised payments and the expected financial loss suffered in the event of default.

#### Moody's Long-Term Rating Definitions:

- Aaa: Obligations rated Aaa are judged to be of the highest quality, subject to the lowest level of credit risk.
- Aa: Obligations rated Aa are judged to be of high quality and are subject to very low credit risk.
- A: Obligations rated A are judged to be upper-medium grade and are subject to low credit risk.
- Baa: Obligations rated Baa are judged to be medium-grade and subject to moderate credit risk as such may possess certain speculative characteristics.
- Ba: Obligations rated Ba are judged to be speculative and are subject to substantial credit risk.
- B: Obligations rated B are considered speculative and are subject to high credit risk.
- Caa: Obligations rated Caa are judged to be speculative of poor standing and are subject to very high credit risk.
- Ca: Obligations rated Ca are highly speculative and are likely in, or very near, default, with some prospect of recovery of principal and interest.
- C: Obligations rated C are the lowest rated and are typically in default, with little prospect for recovery of principal or interest.
- Note: Moody's appends numerical modifiers 1, 2, and 3 to each generic rating classification from Aa through Caa. The modifier 1 indicates that the obligation ranks in the higher end of its generic rating category; the modifier 2 indicates a mid-range ranking; and the modifier 3 indicates a ranking in the lower end of that generic rating category.

#### Short-Term Debt Ratings

There are three rating categories for short-term municipal obligations that are considered investment grade. These ratings are designated as Municipal Investment Grade (MIG) and are divided into three levels MIG 1 through MIG 3. In addition, those short-term obligations that are of speculative quality are designated SG, or speculative grade. MIG ratings expire at the maturity of the obligation.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

- MIG 1. This designation denotes superior credit quality. Excellent protection is afforded by established cash flows, highly reliable liquidity support, or demonstrated broad-based access to the market for refinancing.
- MIG 2. This designation denotes strong credit quality. Margins of protection are ample, although not as large as in the preceding group.
- MIG 3. This designation denotes acceptable credit quality. Liquidity and cash-flow protection may be narrow, and market access for refinancing is likely to be less well-established.
- SG. This designation denotes speculative-grade credit quality. Debt instruments in this category may lack sufficient margins of protection.

### Appendix A-1

---

## Demand Obligation Ratings

In the case of variable rate demand obligations (VRDOs), a two-component rating is assigned; a long or short-term debt rating and a demand obligation rating. The first element represents Moody's evaluation of risk associated with scheduled principal and interest payments. The second element represents Moody's evaluation of risk associated with the ability to receive purchase price upon demand (demand feature), using a variation of the MIG rating scale, the Variable Municipal Investment Grade or VMIG rating.

When either the long- or short-term aspect of a VRDO is not rated, that piece is designated NR, *e.g.*, Aaa/NR or NR/VMIG 1.

VMIG rating expirations are a function of each issue's specific structural or credit features.

VMIG 1. This designation denotes superior credit quality. Excellent protection is afforded by the superior short-term credit strength of the liquidity provider and structural and legal protections that ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

VMIG 2. This designation denotes strong credit quality. Good protection is afforded by the strong short-term credit strength of the liquidity provider and structural and legal protections that ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

VMIG 3. This designation denotes acceptable credit quality. Adequate protection is afforded by the satisfactory short-term credit strength of the liquidity provider and structural and legal protections that ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

SG. This designation denotes speculative-grade credit quality. Demand features rated in this category may be supported by a liquidity provider that does not have an investment grade short-term rating or may lack the structural and/or legal protections necessary to ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

## 2. Short-Term Ratings

Moody's short-term ratings reflect the likelihood of a default on contractually promised payments. Ratings may be assigned to issuers, short-term programs or to individual short-term debt instruments. Such obligations generally have an original maturity not exceeding thirteen months.

Moody's employs the following designations to indicate the relative repayment ability of rated issuers:

P-1 Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Prime-1 have a superior ability to repay short-term debt obligations.

P-2 Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Prime-2 have a strong ability to repay short-term debt obligations.

P-3 Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Prime-3 have an acceptable ability to repay short-term obligations.

NP Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Not Prime do not fall within any of the Prime rating categories.

NOTE:

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Canadian issuers rated P-1 or P-2 have their short-term ratings enhanced by the senior-most long-term rating of the issuer, its guarantor or support-provider.

### **Standard & Poor's**

A brief description of the applicable Standard & Poor's (S&P) rating symbols and their meanings (as published by S&P) follows:

### **Issuer Credit Rating Definitions**

A S&P issue credit rating is a current opinion of the creditworthiness of an obligor with respect to a specific financial obligation, a specific class of financial obligations, or a specific financial program (including ratings on medium-term note programs and commercial paper programs). It takes into consideration the creditworthiness of guarantors, insurers, or other forms of credit enhancement on the obligation and takes into account the currency in which the obligation is denominated.

The issue credit rating is not a recommendation to purchase, sell, or hold a financial obligation, inasmuch as it does not comment as to market price or suitability for a particular investor.

Issue credit ratings are based on current information furnished by the obligors or obtained by S&P from other sources it considers reliable. S&P does not perform an audit in connection with any credit rating and may, on occasion, rely on unaudited financial information. Credit ratings may be changed, suspended, or withdrawn as a result of changes in, or unavailability of, such information, or based on other circumstances.

Issue credit ratings can be either long-term or short-term. Short-term ratings are generally assigned to those obligations considered short-term in the relevant market. In the U.S., for example, that means obligations with an original maturity of no more than 365 days including commercial paper. Short-term ratings are also used to indicate the creditworthiness of an obligor with respect to put features on long-term obligations. The result is a dual rating, in which the short-term rating addresses the put feature, in addition to the usual long-term rating. Medium-term notes are assigned long-term ratings.

## Long-Term Issue Credit Ratings

Issue credit ratings are based, in varying degrees, on the following considerations:

- Likelihood of payment-capacity and willingness of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on an obligation in accordance with the terms of the obligation;
- Nature of and provisions of the obligation;
- Protection afforded by, and relative position of, the obligation in the event of bankruptcy, reorganization, or other arrangement under the laws of bankruptcy and other laws affecting creditors' rights.

The issue ratings definitions are expressed in terms of default risk. As such, they pertain to senior obligations of an entity. Junior obligations are typically rated lower than senior obligations, to reflect the lower priority in bankruptcy, as noted above. (Such differentiation applies when an entity has both senior and subordinated obligations, secured and unsecured obligations, or operating company and holding company obligations.) Accordingly, in the case of junior debt, the rating may not conform exactly with the category definition.

**AAA:** An obligation rated AAA has the highest rating assigned by S&P. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is extremely strong.

**AA:** An obligation rated AA differs from the highest-rated obligations only to a small degree. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is very strong.

**A:** An obligation rated A is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher-rated categories. However, the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is still strong.

**BBB:** An obligation rated BBB exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.

**BB, B, CCC, CC, and C:** Obligations rated BB, B, CCC, CC, and C are regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. BB indicates least degree of speculation and C the highest. While such obligations will likely have some quality and protective characteristics, these may be outweighed by large uncertainties or major exposures to adverse conditions.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

- BB:** An obligation rated **BB** is less vulnerable to nonpayment than other speculative issues. However, it faces major ongoing uncertainties or exposure to adverse business, financial, or economic conditions which could lead to the obligor's inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- B:** An obligation rated **B** is more vulnerable to nonpayment than obligations rated **BB**, but the obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation. Adverse business, financial, or economic conditions will likely impair the obligor's capacity or willingness to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- CCC:** An obligation rated **CCC** is currently vulnerable to nonpayment, and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation. In the event of adverse business, financial, or economic conditions, the obligor is not likely to have the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- CC:** An obligation rated **CC** is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment.
- C:** A subordinated debt or preferred stock obligation rated **C** is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment. The **C** rating may be used to cover a situation where a bankruptcy petition has been filed or similar action taken, but payments on this obligation are being continued. A **C** also will be assigned to a preferred stock issue in arrears.

Appendix A-3

---

## Short-Term Issue Credit Ratings

- A-1: A short-term obligation rated A-1 is rated in the highest category by Standard & Poor's. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is strong. Within this category, certain obligations are designated with a plus sign (+). This indicates that the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on these obligations is extremely strong.
- A-2: A short-term obligation rated A-2 is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher rating categories. However, the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is satisfactory.
- A-3: A short-term obligation rated A-3 exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- B: A short-term obligation rated B is regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. Ratings of B-1, B-2, and B-3 may be assigned to indicate finer distinctions within the B category. The obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation; however, it faces major ongoing uncertainties which could lead to the obligor's inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- B-1: A short-term obligation rated B-1 is regarded as having significant speculative characteristics, but the obligor has a relatively stronger capacity to meet its financial commitments over the short-term compared to other speculative-grade obligors.
- B-2: A short-term obligation rated B-2 is regarded as having significant speculative characteristics, and the obligor has an average speculative-grade capacity to meet its financial commitments over the short-term compared to other speculative-grade obligors.
- B-3: A short-term obligation rated B-3 is regarded as having significant speculative characteristics, and the obligor has a relatively weaker capacity to meet its financial commitments over the short-term compared to other speculative-grade obligors.
- C: A short-term obligation rated C is currently vulnerable to nonpayment and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- D: A short-term obligation rated D is in payment default. The D rating category is used when payments on an obligation are not made on the date due even if the applicable grace period has not expired, unless Standard & Poor's believes that such payments will be made during such grace period. The D rating also will be used upon the filing of a bankruptcy petition or the taking of a similar action if payments on an obligation are jeopardized.

**Appendix B Proxy voting guidelines****PROXY VOTING POLICY AND PROCEDURES****A. General**

This policy is designed to ensure that the Fund fulfills its obligations and complies with the requirements under the Investment Company Act, the Securities Act and the Exchange Act with respect to proxy voting, disclosure, and recordkeeping. This policy is also designed to ensure that all corporate actions are voted in the best interest of the Fund, to provide disclosure of the Fund's corporate action voting record and to ensure that certain documentation is retained.

Pursuant to delegation by the Fund, the Adviser has authority to make proxy and corporate action decisions on behalf of the Fund. The Adviser's objective is to ensure that its proxy voting and corporate action activities on behalf of the Fund are conducted in a manner consistent, under all circumstances, with the best interest of the Fund.

**B. Proxy Voting Policies**

It is the policy of the Adviser to vote proxies in accordance with the following guidelines (to the extent each is applicable):

| <b>Proxy Proposal Issue</b>                             | <b>Adviser's Voting Policy</b> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Routine Election of Directors                           | For                            |
| Issuance of Authorized Common Stock                     | For                            |
| Stock Repurchase Plans                                  | For                            |
| Reincorporation                                         | For                            |
| Director Indemnification                                | For                            |
| Require Shareholder approval to issue Preferred Stock   | For                            |
| Require Shareholder approval to issue Golden Parachutes | For                            |
| Require Shareholder approval of Poison Pill             | For                            |
| Shareholders' Right to Call Special Meetings            | For                            |
| Shareholders' Right to Act by Written Consent           | For                            |

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Shareholder Ability to Remove Directors With or Without Cause   | For |
| Shareholders Electing Directors to Fill Board Vacancies         | For |
| Majority of Independent Directors                               | For |
| Board Committee Membership exclusively of Independent Directors | For |

Appendix B-1

---

# Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

| Proxy Proposal Issue                         | Adviser's Voting Policy |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 401(k) Savings Plans for Employees           | For                     |
| Anti-greenmail Charter or By-laws Amendments | For                     |
| Corporate Name Change                        | For                     |
| Ratification of Auditors                     | For                     |
| Supermajority Vote Requirement               | Against                 |
| Blank Check Preferred                        | Against                 |
| Dual Classes of Stock                        | Against                 |
| Staggered or Classified Boards               | Against                 |
| Fair Price Requirements                      | Against                 |
| Limited Terms for Directors                  | Against                 |
| Require Director Stock Ownership             | Against                 |
| Accept Plan of Reorganization                | Case by Case            |
| Reprice Management Options                   | Case by Case            |
| Adopt/Amend Stock Option Plan                | Case by Case            |
| Adopt/Amend Employee Stock Purchase Plan     | Case by Case            |
| Approve Merger/Acquisitions                  | Case by Case            |
| Spin-offs                                    | Case by Case            |
| Corporate Restructurings                     | Case by Case            |
| Asset Sales                                  | Case by Case            |
| Liquidations                                 | Case by Case            |
| Adopt Poison Pill                            | Case by Case            |
| Golden Parachutes                            | Case by Case            |
| Executive/Director Compensation              | Case by Case            |
| Social Issues                                | Case by Case            |
| Contested Election of Directors              | Case by Case            |
| Stock Based compensation for Directors       | Case by Case            |

| Proxy Proposal Issue       | Adviser's Voting Policy |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Increase authorized shares | Case by Case            |
| Tender Offers              | Case by Case            |
| Exchange Offers            | Case by Case            |
| Preemptive Rights          | Case by Case            |
| Debt Restructuring         | Case by Case            |
| Loan Waivers and Consents  | Case by Case            |

**C. Proxy and Corporate Action Voting Procedures**

The Adviser will have the responsibility of voting proxies and corporate actions that it receives on behalf of the Fund. Proxy proposals received by the Adviser and designated above in the proxy voting policies as For or Against will be voted by the Adviser in accordance with the proxy voting policies. Proxy proposals received by the Adviser and designated above in the proxy voting policies as Case by Case (or not addressed in the proxy voting policies) and all corporate actions will be reviewed by the Adviser, and voted in the best interests of the Fund. In accordance with Rule 204-2 of the Advisers Act, with respect to Case by Case issues, the Adviser will document the basis for the Adviser's voting decisions with the assistance of the analyst who is in charge of the issuer.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Adviser may vote a proxy contrary to the proxy voting guidelines if the Adviser with the assistance of the analyst who is in charge of the issuer determines that such action is in the best interest of the Fund. In the event that the Adviser votes contrary to the proxy voting guidelines, the Adviser with the assistance of the analyst who is in charge of the issuer will document the basis for the Adviser's contrary voting decision.

In addition, the Adviser may choose not to vote proxies or corporate actions in certain situations, such as (i) where the Fund has informed the Adviser that it wishes to retain the right to vote the proxy or corporate action; (ii) where the Adviser deems the cost of voting would exceed any anticipated benefit to the Fund or (iii) where a proxy or corporate action is received by the Adviser for a security it no longer manages on behalf of the Fund. The Adviser with the assistance of the analyst who is in charge of the issuer will document the basis for the Adviser's decision not to vote.

The Adviser has developed procedures for handling the receipt and voting of Fund proxies and corporate actions..

**D. Conflicts of Interest**

The Adviser may occasionally be subject to conflicts of interest in the voting of proxies due to business or personal relationships it maintains with persons having an interest in the outcome of certain votes. The Adviser, its affiliates and/or its employees may also occasionally have business or personal relationships with the proponents of proxy proposals, participants in proxy contests, corporate directors and officers or candidates for directorships.

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

If at any time, the Adviser becomes aware of an actual conflict of interest relating to a particular proxy proposal, the Adviser will notify the Fund's Board of trustees (the Board) and will handle the proposal as follows:

- If the proposal is designated in proxy voting policies above as For or Against, the proposal will be voted by the Adviser in accordance with the proxy voting policies; or
- If the proposal is designated in the proxy voting policies above as Case by Case (or not addressed in the proxy voting policies) or is a corporate action, the Adviser will notify the Fund of such conflict and will vote on behalf of the Fund in accordance with the Fund's instructions. The Board may designate a committee of the Board to vote such proxy or corporate action proposals.
- If the proposal is designated in the proxy voting policies above as Case by Case (or not addressed in the proxy voting policies) or is a corporate action, the Adviser will notify the Fund of such conflict and will vote on behalf of the Fund in accordance with the Fund's instructions. The Board may designate a committee of the Board to vote such proxy or corporate action proposals.

### E. Proxy Voting Records

In accordance with Rule 204-2, the Adviser will maintain the following records in connection with the Adviser's proxy voting policies

Appendix B-3

---

and procedures:

- a copy of the proxy voting policies and procedures;
- a copy of all proxy statements received regarding Fund securities;
- a record of each vote the Adviser casts on behalf of the Fund;
- records of Fund shareholder requests for proxy voting information, including a copy of each written request for information on how the Adviser voted proxies on behalf of the Fund, and a copy of any written response by the Adviser to any Fund shareholder request for information on how the Adviser voted proxies on behalf of the Fund; and
- any documentation prepared by the Adviser that was material to making a decision on how to vote, or that memorialized the basis for the voting decision.

The Adviser will also maintain similar records in connection with corporate actions.

The foregoing records will be maintained and preserved in the office of the Adviser for a period of two (2) years from the end of the fiscal year during which the last entry was made on such record. Thereafter, the records will be maintained and preserved, in an easily accessible place, for an additional three years.

#### **F. Disclosure**

The Adviser will provide all the information necessary for the Fund to make the required disclosures regarding proxy voting in its Statement of Additional Information, as well as on SEC Forms N-CSR and N-PX. In addition, information regarding how the Fund's proxies and corporate actions were voted by the Adviser will be provided to Fund shareholders upon their written request.

#### **G. Changes to the Proxy Voting Rules**

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

Changes may be made by the Adviser to the proxy rules as long as such changes are not expected to materially adversely affect the Fund. Upon a material change, the Fund will be made aware of such material change to the proxy rules and the reasons for the change.

### **H. Disclosure**

The Adviser will provide all the information necessary for the Fund to make the required disclosures regarding proxy voting in its Statement of Additional Information, as well as on Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) s Forms N-CSR and N-PX. In addition, information regarding how the Fund s proxies and corporate actions were voted by the Adviser will be provided to Fund shareholders upon their written request.

Appendix B-4

---

**Part C**

**Other information**

**Item 25. Financial Statements and Exhibits**

**(1) Financial Statements**

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm\*  
 Schedule of Investments as of October 31, 2013\*  
 Statement of Assets and Liabilities as of October 31, 2013\*  
 Statement of Operations for the fiscal period ended October 31, 2013\*  
 Statement to Change in Net Assets for the fiscal period ended October 31, 2013\*  
 Notes to Financial Statements\*  
 Financial Highlights for Common Shares outstanding during the fiscal period ended October 31, 2013\*\*

---

\* Set forth in the Fund's Annual Report to shareholders for the year ended October 31, 2013, which was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on January 8, 2014 pursuant to Rule 30b2-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940 and incorporated by reference herein.

\*\* Filed herewith and included in the Prospectus.

**(2) Exhibits**

- (a)(1) Agreement and Declaration of Trust(1)
- (a)(2) Amended and Restated Agreement and Declaration of Trust(2)
- (b) By-Laws(2)
- (c) Inapplicable
- (d)(1) Articles 6, 7, 8 and 9 of the registrant's Amended and Restated Agreement and Declaration of Trust and Articles 1, 6 and 7 of the registrant's By-Laws are incorporated herein by reference
- (d)(2) Form of Subscription Certificate(6)
- (d)(3) Form of Notice of Guaranteed Delivery and Form of Beneficial Owner Certification Form(6)
- (e) Terms and Conditions of Dividend Reinvestment Plan(2)
- (f) Inapplicable
- (g) Form of Advisory Agreement(2)
- (h) Form of Dealer Manager Agreement, including form of Selling Group Agreement and Soliciting Dealer Agreement(7)
- (i) Inapplicable
- (j)(1) Master Custodian and Fund Accounting Services Agreement, dated December 15, 2010(2)
- (j)(2) Amended and Restated Master Custodian and Fund Accounting Services Agreement, dated May 23, 2012(5)
- (k)(1) Transfer Agency and Service Agreement(2)
- (k)(2) Administration Agreement, dated December 15, 2010(2)
- (k)(3) Amended and Restated Administration Agreement, dated May 31, 2012(5)
- (k)(4) Form of Distribution Agreement with TS Capital, LLC and ABAX Brokerage Services, Inc.(2)
- (k)(5) Form of Information Agent Agreement(7)
- (k)(6) Form of Subscription Agent Agreement(7)
- (k)(7) Credit Agreement, dated as of March 11, 2011, between Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund and The Bank of Nova Scotia(3)
- (k)(8) Amendment No. 1 to the Credit Agreement, dated as of March 9, 2012 between Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund and The Bank of Nova Scotia(5)
- (k)(9) Amendment No. 2 to the Credit Agreement, dated as of March 8, 2013 between Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund and The Bank of Nova Scotia(5)

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

- (k)(10) Form of Expense Reimbursement Agreement, dated as of January 1, 2011, between Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. and Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund(3)
  - (k)(11) Form of Expense Reimbursement Agreement, dated as of December 8, 2011, between Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. and Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund(3)
  - (k)(12) Form of Expense Reimbursement Agreement, dated as of December 13, 2012, between Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. and Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund(4)
  - (k)(13) Form of Expense Reimbursement Agreement, dated as of April 12, 2013, between Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. and Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund(5)
-

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

- (k)(14) Form of Expense Reimbursement Agreement, dated as of December 12, 2013, between Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. and Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund(6)
- (l) Opinion and Consent of Richards, Layton & Finger, P.A.(7)
- (m) Inapplicable
- (n) Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm(7)
- (o) Inapplicable
- (p) Subscription Agreement(2)
- (q) Inapplicable
- (r) Code of Ethics of the Fund and the Adviser(4)
- (s)(1) Power of Attorney for Joel Citron(6)
- (s)(2) Power of Attorney for Julie Dien Ledoux(6)
- (s)(3) Power of Attorney for Stephen M. Atkins(6)
- (s)(4) Power of Attorney for Randolph Takian(6)
- (s)(5) Power of Attorney for Darren Thompson(6)

---

(1) Filed on October 19, 2010 with registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File Nos. 333-170030 and 811-22485) and incorporated by reference herein.

(2) Filed on December 27, 2010 with registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File Nos. 333-170030 and 811-22485) and incorporated by reference herein.

(3) Filed on February 16, 2012 with registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File Nos. 333-170030 and 811-22485) and incorporated by reference herein.

(4) Filed on March 8, 2013 with registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File Nos. 333-187149 and 811-22485) and incorporated by reference herein.

(5) Filed on April 12, 2013 with registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File Nos. 333-187149 and 811-22485) and incorporated by reference herein.

(6) Filed herewith.

(7) To be filed by amendment.

### Item 26. Marketing Arrangements

Not Applicable.

### Item 27. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution

The following table sets forth the estimated expenses to be incurred in connection with the offering described in this registration statement:

## Edgar Filing: Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund - Form N-2

|                                                            |    |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----|-----|
| Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee        | \$ | [•] |
| New York Stock Exchange listing fee                        | \$ | [•] |
| Printing and postage (including subscription certificates) | \$ | [•] |
| Accounting fees and expenses                               | \$ | [•] |
| Legal fees and expenses                                    | \$ | [•] |
| Financial Industry Regulatory Authority fees               | \$ | [•] |
| Reimbursement of Dealer Manager expenses                   | \$ | [•] |
| Subscription Agent fees and expenses                       | \$ | [•] |
| Information Agent fees and expenses                        | \$ | [•] |
| Miscellaneous                                              | \$ | [•] |
| Total                                                      | \$ | [•] |

### Item 28. Persons Controlled by or Under Common Control with the Registrant

None.

**Item 29. Number of Holders of Shares**

The following table shows the number of holders of securities of the registrant as of [●].

| Title of Class                                                   | Number of Record Holders |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Common shares of beneficial interest, par value \$.001 per share | [●]                      |

**Item 30. Indemnification**

Article VIII of the Fund's Amended and Restated Agreement and Declaration of Trust provides as follows:

**SECTION 8.03 *Indemnification of Trustees, Officers, etc.*** Subject to the limitations, if applicable, hereinafter set forth in this Section 8.03, the Trust shall, upon the determination described in the immediately following sentence, indemnify each of its trustees, officers, and employees, and any Investment Adviser and any investment subadviser (hereinafter, together with such Person's heirs, executors, administrators or personal representative, referred to as a "Covered Person") against all liabilities, including but not limited to amounts paid in satisfaction of judgments, in compromise or as fines and penalties, and expenses, including reasonable accountants' and counsel fees, incurred by any Covered Person in connection with the defense or disposition of any action, suit or other proceeding, whether civil or criminal, before any court or administrative or legislative body, in which such Covered Person may be or may have been involved as a party or otherwise or with which such Covered Person may be or may have been threatened, while in office or thereafter, by reason of being or having been a trustee, officer, director, employee or agent, except with respect to any matter as to which it has been determined that such Covered Person (i) did not act in good faith in the reasonable belief that such Covered Person's action was in or not opposed to the best interests of the Trust; (ii) had acted with willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of such Covered Person's office; or (iii) for a criminal proceeding, had reasonable cause to believe that such Covered Person's conduct was unlawful (the conduct described in (i), (ii) and (iii) being referred to hereafter as "Disabling Conduct"). A determination that the Covered Person is entitled to indemnification may be made by (i) a final decision on the merits by a court or other body before whom the proceeding was brought that the Covered Person to be indemnified had not engaged in Disabling Conduct, (ii) dismissal of a court action or an administrative proceeding against a Covered Person for insufficiency of evidence of Disabling Conduct, or (iii) a reasonable determination, based upon a review of the facts, that the indemnitee had not engaged in Disabling Conduct by (a) a vote of a majority of a quorum of trustees who are neither "interested persons" of the Trust as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act nor parties to the proceeding (the "Disinterested Trustees"), or (b) an independent legal counsel in writing. Notwithstanding the foregoing, expenses, including reasonable fees of counsel and accountants incurred by any such Covered Person (but excluding amounts paid in satisfaction of judgments, in compromise or as fines or penalties), may be paid from time to time by the Trust in advance of the final disposition of any action, suit or proceeding; *provided* that the Covered Person shall have undertaken to repay to the Trust the amounts so paid if it is ultimately determined that indemnification is not authorized under this Article 8 and either (i) the Covered Person shall have provided security for such undertaking, (ii) the Trust shall be insured against losses arising by reason of any lawful advances, or (iii) a majority of a quorum of the Disinterested Trustees, or an independent legal counsel in writing, shall have determined, based on a review of readily available facts (as opposed to a full trial type inquiry), that there is reason to believe that the Covered Person ultimately will be found entitled to indemnification.

The Fund and the Adviser have agreed to indemnify the Dealer Manager or contribute to losses arising out of certain liabilities, including liabilities under the 1933 Act. The Dealer Manager Agreement also provides that the Dealer Manager will not be subject to any liability to the Fund in rendering the services contemplated by the Dealer Manager Agreement except for any act of willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence of the Dealer Manager in the performance of its duties or reckless disregard by the Dealer Manager of its obligations and duties under the Dealer Manager Agreement.

The Advisory Agreement provides that the Adviser will not be liable for any error of judgment or mistake of law, or for any act or omission or any loss suffered by the Fund in connection with matters to which the Advisory

C-3

---

Agreement relates, except for a loss resulting from willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence on the part of the Adviser in the performance of its duties and provides for indemnification by the Fund of the Adviser for any and all losses, claims, damages, liabilities or expenses (including reasonable counsel fees and expenses) not resulting from disabling conduct by the Adviser, subject to certain limitations and conditions.

Insofar as indemnification for liability arising under the 1933 Act, may be permitted to trustees, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a trustee, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such trustee, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

### **Item 31. Business and Other Connections of the Adviser**

The descriptions of the Adviser under the caption "Management of the Fund" in the prospectus and Statement of Additional Information of this registration statement are incorporated by reference herein. For information as to the business, profession, vocation or employment of a substantial nature of each of the officers and directors of the Adviser in the last two (2) years, reference is made to the Adviser's current Form ADV (File No. 801-57734) filed under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended, incorporated herein by reference.

### **Item 32. Location of Accounts and Records**

All accounts, books and other documents required by Section 31(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder to be maintained (i) by the registrant, will be maintained at its offices located at 399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor, New York, New York 10022, or at State Street Bank and Trust Company at State Street Financial Center, 1 Lincoln Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02111 and (ii) by the Adviser, will be maintained at its offices located at 399 Park Avenue, 6th Floor, New York, New York 10022.

### **Item 33. Management Services**

Not Applicable.

### **Item 34. Undertakings**

(1) The registrant hereby undertakes to suspend the offering of shares until the prospectus is amended, if (a) subsequent to the effective date of its registration statement, the NAV declines more than ten percent from its NAV as of the effective date of the registration statement or (b) the NAV increases to an amount greater than its net proceeds as stated in the prospectus.

(2) Not applicable.

(3) Not applicable.

(4) Not applicable.

(5)(a) For the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of a registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in the form of prospectus filed by the registrant under Rule 497(h) under the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.

C-4

---

(b) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of the securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(6) The registrant undertakes to send by first class mail or other means designed to ensure equally prompt delivery, within two business days of receipt of a written or oral request, any Statement of Additional Information.

C-5

---

**Signatures**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933 and the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, the registrant has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of New York, and State of New York, on the 1st day of August, 2014.

AVENUE INCOME CREDIT STRATEGIES FUND

By: /s/ Randolph Takian  
Randolph Takian  
Trustee, Chief Executive Officer and President  
(Principal Executive Officer)

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed below by the following persons in the capacities and on the date indicated.

| Signature                                   | Title                                                                           | Date           |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| /s/ Randolph Takian<br>Randolph Takian      | Trustee, Chief Executive Officer and President<br>(Principal Executive Officer) | August 1, 2014 |
| /s/ Stephen M. Atkins<br>Stephen M. Atkins  | Treasurer and Chief Financial Officer<br>(Principal Financial Officer)          | August 1, 2014 |
| /s/ Joel Citron*<br>Joel Citron             | Trustee                                                                         | August 1, 2014 |
| /s/ Julie Dien Ledoux*<br>Julie Dien Ledoux | Trustee                                                                         | August 1, 2014 |
| /s/ Darren Thompson*<br>Darren Thompson     | Trustee                                                                         | August 1, 2014 |

\*This filing has been signed by each of the persons so indicated by the undersigned Attorney-in-Fact pursuant to powers of attorney filed herewith or heretofore.

/s/ Randolph Takian  
Randolph Takian  
Attorney-in-Fact  
August 1, 2014

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

- (d)(2) Form of Subscription Certificate
  - (d)(3) Form of Notice of Guaranteed Delivery and Form of Beneficial Owner Certification Form
  - (k)(14) Form of Expense Reimbursement Agreement, dated December 12, 2013, between Avenue Capital Management II, L.P. and Avenue Income Credit Strategies Fund
  - (s)(1) Power of Attorney for Joel Citron
  - (s)(2) Power of Attorney for Julie Dien Ledoux
  - (s)(3) Power of Attorney for Stephen Atkins
  - (s)(4) Power of Attorney for Randolph Takian
  - (s)(5) Power of Attorney for Darren Thompson
-